

INFANTRY
TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

CHAPTER 11
FORMAL SCHOOLS

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

FORMAL SCHOOLS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION	11001	11-3
APPLICATION	11002	11-3
TRAINING AND READINESS EVENT ELEMENTS	11003	11-3
EVENT CODE	11004	11-3
EVENT DESCRIPTION	11005	11-4
CONDITION	11006	11-4
STANDARD	11007	11-4
PERFORMANCE STEPS	11008	11-4
CONCEPT OF TASK	11009	11-5
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS	11010	11-5
EXTERNAL SUPPORT	11011	11-5
WEAPONS AND AMMUNITION	11012	11-5
REFERENCE(S)	11013	11-5
RESERVE APPLICABILITY	11014	11-5

Figure

11-1 FORMAL SCHOOL EVENT CODE	11-3
-------------------------------------	------

Appendix

A INFANTRY OFFICERS COURSE	11-A-1
B SMALL ARMS WEAPONS INSTRUCTOR COURSE	11-B-1
C INFANTRY RIFLEMAN COURSE	11-C-1
D INFANTRY MACHINE GUNNER COURSE	11-D-1
E INFANTRY MORTARMAN COURSE	11-E-1
F INFANTRY ASSAULTMAN COURSE	11-F-1
G INFANTRY ANTITANK ASSAULT GUIDED MISSILEMAN COURSE	11-G-1

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

H	SCOUT SNIPER BASIC COURSE	11-H-1
I	INFANTRY PLATOON SERGEANTS COURSE	11-I-1
J	CAREER LEVEL PROFESSIONAL MILITARY EDUCATION	11-J-1
K	INFANTRY SQUAD LEADERS COURSE	11-K-1
L	ADVANCED MACHINE GUN LEADERS COURSE	11-L-1
M	ADVANCED MORTAR LEADERS COURSE	11-M-1
N	ADVANCED ANTIARMOR LEADERS COURSE	11-N-1
O	SCOUT SNIPER ADVANCED COURSE	11-O-1
P	INFANTRY OPERATIONS CHIEF COURSE	11-P-1
Q	INTERMEDIATE/TOP LEVEL PME	11-Q-1

11001. INTRODUCTION. This chapter contains the events designated for formal school instruction. The courses in the chapter, organized into separate appendixes, support the career progression within the occupational field.

11002. APPLICATION

1. The formal schools will apply the information from the appropriate appendix to develop courses that support the training progression. By publishing the course description and prerequisites, the course can begin with a minimum of refresher training.

2. The formal school chapter and the MOS progression enable leaders and individuals in the operating forces to build upon and to prepare for formal school training. By knowing and understanding the events trained and the standards achieved in a particular course, the leader and the individual can continue the training progression where the school left off. Additionally, by applying the course prerequisites, the leader and the individual can better prepare for a course to ensure more effective and efficient training at the school.

11003. TRAINING AND READINESS EVENT ELEMENTS. Although the events in the formal school chapter differ slightly from the operating force equivalent, the information contained in each event enables the school to develop standards based training with adequate resources.

11004. EVENT CODE

1. The event code is a unique three part alphanumeric designation assigned to each event. For individual formal school events, the event code reflects the actual course that is responsible for the instruction.

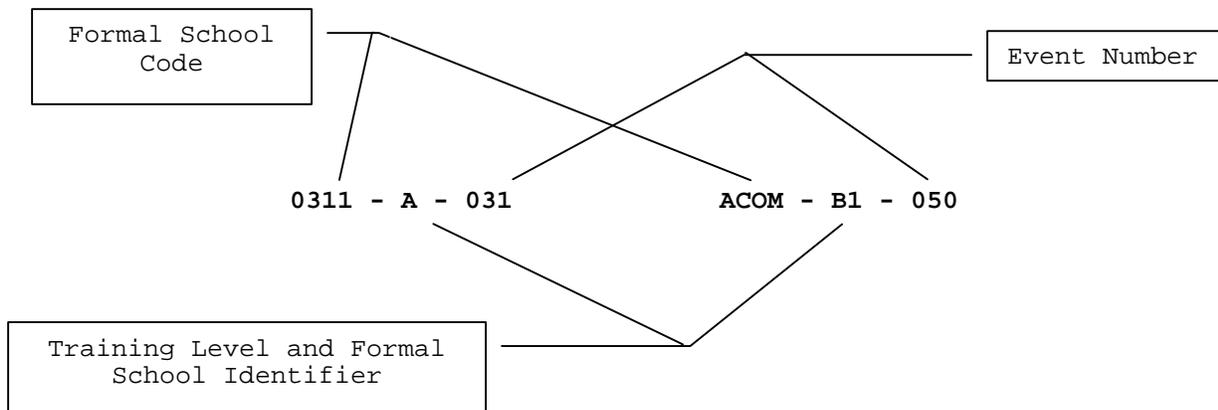


Figure 11-1.--Formal School Event Code.

2. In Figure 11-1, the Formal School Code depicted on the left, (0311) indicates that by completing the school the individual is awarded the MOS. The school is a Level A School, entry level, and the event number is 031. The Formal School Event Code on the right indicates an event for a Marine who has completed the first level of progressive training and is attending one of

the next level of courses available. The Formal School Code indicates that this course is taught in the advanced communication course (ACOM). The Letter "B" within the Training Level and Formal School Identifier indicates that this event occurs after the first level of progressive training is complete. The number "1" indicates that there are at least two required courses which are contained in the B level of training. 050 represents the event number. Formal School events do not contain CRP values or sustainment intervals.

2. Although each event has a numerical designation, the number does not indicate the sequence in which each event is taught at the formal school. The event sequence does, where appropriate, correspond to the same event that is trained to or sustained in the operating forces.

3. Events within the formal schools chapter can also be either demonstration or knowledge based. Knowledge based events are coded to aid in determining the level at which the instruction must occur.

- a. KB - Demonstrate basic facts and concepts
- b. KD - Demonstrate detailed understanding
- c. KM - Demonstrate mastery; serve as subject matter expert

11005. EVENT DESCRIPTION. The event description describes the specific and necessary behavior expected of an individual. It is a clearly stated, performance-oriented action requiring a learned skill or knowledge.

11006. CONDITION

1. The condition identifies the constraints that affect the performance of the event. The greatest possible latitude will be provided in the development of the condition without degradation to the accomplishment of the event.

2. The condition will not contain a list of specific equipment, materials, or references unless those items are necessary to accomplish the event. Except where noted in the condition or administrative instructions, the event can be performed in any lighting or weather conditions.

11007. STANDARD. The standard is the basis for judging the effectiveness of event performance. It identifies the proficiency level for the event performance in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, and adherence to procedural guidelines. It is not guidance; it is inviolate.

11008. PERFORMANCE STEPS. The performance steps represent the logical sequence of actions required of the Marine to perform the event to standard. These actions are typically detailed in the applicable references rather than the T&R Manual. A single source standard (reference) generally supplies detailed performance steps relating to the T&R event. However, performance steps will be included as an element to the T&R Manual if no standard (reference) exists for the T&R event.

11009. CONCEPT OF TASK. The concept of task is a descriptive paragraph used to amplify the required action of the event. This paragraph may contain information further explaining the event, its condition, or standard. The use of the amplifying guidance contained within the concept of task must accompany a well-defined event. For knowledge-based events, this paragraph outlines the scope and depth to which the event is measured with respect to the standard.

11010. ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS. Administrative instructions provide the training manager/instructor/evaluator with special, required, or recommended circumstances, including safety precautions, relating to the training or execution of the event.

11011. EXTERNAL SUPPORT. The external support section lists special resources required to conduct the training. Due to the variety of available training areas (wooded, desert, mountainous), the requirements do not contain specific details of training area size. It is necessary for the school to adjust needs, based on the type of training area.

11012. WEAPONS AND AMMUNITION. This section defines the weapons and ammunition required to conduct the training

11013. REFERENCE(S). This section contains a listing of doctrinal or reference publications, which may assist the individual in satisfying the performance standards and the trainer or evaluator in evaluating the effectiveness of event completion.

11014. RESERVE APPLICABILITY. Realizing the limited time allowed for reserve Marines to train, the Formal School events contained in the T&R Manual have been reviewed to identify the events which require Formal School instruction. Those events which are required to be included in Reserve curriculum are coded "RFS" (Reserve Formal School). The remaining events may be incorporated into the reserve unit's training plan.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX A

INFANTRY OFFICERS COURSE

Description

Conducted at The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA.

Purpose

Provide the graduate with the skills necessary to perform as a Rifle Platoon Commander, Weapons Platoon Commander, Rifle Company Executive Officer, Heavy Machinegun Platoon Commander, 81mm Mortar Platoon Commander, and Anti-armor Platoon Commander.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

The Officer will have completed The Basic School, Quantico, VA.

EVENT: 0302 - A - 007

RFS:

Inspect an M9 Pistol

Condition: Given an M9 pistol, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 1005A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is clear.
2. Hold the pistol in the right hand with the muzzle slightly elevated with the forefinger press disassembly lever release button and with the thumb rotate the disassembly lever downward until it stops.
3. Pull the slide and barrel assembly forward and remove.
4. Compress the recoil spring and spring guide, while at the same time lifting and removing the recoil spring and spring guide.
5. Separate the recoil spring from the spring guide.
6. Push in on the locking block plunger while pushing the barrel forward. Lift and remove the locking block and barrel assembly from the slide.
7. Grasp the magazine firmly with the floor plate up and the back of the magazine tube against the palm of the hand.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Release the floor plate by pushing down on the floor plate retainer stud in the center of the floor plate, while at the same time sliding the floor plate forward for a short distance using the thumb.
9. While maintaining the magazine spring pressure with the thumb, remove the floor plate from the magazine.
10. Remove the floor plate retainer and magazine spring and follower from the magazine tube.
11. Remove floor plate retainer from the magazine spring.
12. Inspect slide assembly for free movement of decocking/safety lever
13. Ensure rear sight is not loose.
14. Check for cracks in locking block retaining slot.
15. Inspect bore and chamber for pitting or obstructions.
16. Check locking block plunger for free movement of locking block.
17. Inspect locking lugs and barrel lugs for cracks and burrs.
18. Inspect recoil spring for damage.
19. Inspect recoil spring guide for straightness and smoothness.
20. Ensure recoil spring guide is free of cracks and burrs.
21. Inspect receiver assembly for bends, chips and cracks.
22. Check slide stop for free movement.
23. Magazine catch assembly for free movement.
24. Check guide rails for excessive wear, burrs, cracks or chips.
25. Check magazine spring and follower for damage.
26. Inspect the lips of the magazine for cracks, burrs, dents, and bends.
27. Inspect the magazine for excessive dirt.
28. Inspect slide assembly for excessive dirt and carbon.
29. Inspect the decocking/safety lever, breech face, slide guides, and extractor for excess dirt and residue.
30. Inspect barrel and chamber area for residue and carbon deposits.
31. Inspect bore for carbon deposits.
32. Inspect the locking block for carbon deposits.
33. Inspect the recoil spring and recoil spring guide for excessive dirt.
34. Inspect the receiver assembly for excessive dirt and carbon deposits.
35. Inspect the magazine tube and follower for excessive dirt and carbon deposits.
36. Inspect the magazine spring, floor plate retainer, and floor plate for excessive dirt and carbon deposits.
37. Grasp the slide with the bottom facing up and with the other hand grasp the barrel assembly with the locking block facing up.
38. Insert the muzzle of the barrel assembly into the forward open end of the slide, while at the same time lowering the rear of the barrel assembly by aligning the extractor cutout with the extractor.
39. Insert the recoil spring onto the recoil spring guide.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

40. Insert the end of the recoil spring and recoil spring guide into the slide recoil spring housing, while at the same time compressing the recoil spring and lower the spring guide until fully seated onto the locking block cutaway.
41. Grasp the slide and barrel assembly, sights up, and align the slide onto the receiver assembly guide rails.
42. Push until the rear of the slide is a short distance beyond the rear of the receiver assembly and hold. At the same time, rotate the disassembly latch lever upward.
43. Insert the follower into the top coil of the magazine spring.
44. Insert the magazine spring with follower into the magazine tube.
45. Turn the magazine bottom up with the back side against the palm of the hand.
46. Attach and center the floor plate retainer to the bottom spring coil.
47. Push and hold the magazine spring and floor plate retainer down, while at the same time sliding the floor plate over the side walls until fully seated.
48. Insert the magazine into the magazine well of the pistol.
49. Depress the slide stop and ensure the slide goes home.
50. Retract the slide and release it. Ensure the magazine follower should push up on the slide stop, locking the slide to the rear.
51. Depress the magazine release button allowing the magazine to fall free.
52. Ensure the decocking/safety lever is in the SAFE position. Depress the slide stop allowing the slide to return fully forward and ensure the hammer falls to the full forward position.
53. Squeeze and release the trigger. Ensure the firing pin block moves up and down and that the hammer does not move.
54. Place the decocking/safety lever in the fire position.
55. Squeeze the trigger and ensure the hammer cocks and falls.
56. Squeeze trigger and hold to the rear. Manually retract and release the slide while holding the trigger to the rear. Release the trigger. A click will be heard and the hammer does not fall.
57. Squeeze the trigger and the hammer will fall.

REFERENCES

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 025

RFS:

Inspect an M16A2 service rifle

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 05538C-10/1A.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the rifle.
2. Unsnap the sling.
3. Place the rifle on the butt stock, press down on the slip ring, and remove the hand guards.
4. Push the takedown pin as far as it will go and pivot the upper receiver from the lower receiver.
5. Push the receiver pivot pin and separate the upper and lower receivers.
6. Pull back on the charging handle and bolt carrier to remove the bolt carrier group.
7. Remove the charging handle.
8. Remove the firing pin retaining pin.
9. Put the bolt assembly in the locked position.
10. Drop the firing pin out of the rear of the bolt carrier.
11. Remove the bolt cam pin and then remove the bolt assembly from the carrier.
12. Remove the extractor pin and then remove the extractor and spring.
13. Press in on the buffer, depress retainer, and release the buffer. Then remove the buffer and the action spring.
14. Swab out the bore with a patch moistened with CLP.
15. Pull a bore brush through the bore and out the muzzle several times.
16. Pull a patch moistened with CLP through the bore and out the muzzle several times.
17. Thoroughly clean all areas of powder fouling on the upper receiver with CLP to include the chamber, locking lugs, and the gas tube.
18. Thoroughly clean the bolt carrier group with CLP to include the outer and inner surfaces, carrier key, firing pin recess and firing pin firing pin hole, locking lugs, ejector, and areas behind the bolt ring and upper lip of extractor.
19. Thoroughly clean all areas of powder fouling, corrosion, and dirt on the lower receiver group to include the trigger mechanism, buffer, action spring, and inside lower receiver extension.
20. Inspect the bolt for cracks, fractures, and pits.
21. Inspect the firing pin to ensure it is not bent, cracked, or blunted.
22. Inspect the firing pin retaining pin to ensure it is not bent or badly worn.
23. Inspect the cam pin to ensure it is not cracked or chipped.
24. Inspect the extractor and extractor spring to ensure it is not chipped or broken and that the rubber insert is inside the extractor spring.
25. Lightly lubricate the inside of the upper receiver, bore and chamber, outer surfaces of barrel and front sight, and the surfaces under the hand guard with CLP.
26. Apply several drops of CLP to the front sight detent and depress several times to work the CLP into the spring.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

27. Generously lube the bolt to include the cam pin area, bolt rings, and the outside of the bolt body with CLP. Use only a light coat of CLP on the firing pin recess of the bolt.
28. Lightly lube the firing pin, charging handle, and inner and outer surfaces of the bolt carrier with CLP.
29. Generously lube the slide and cam pin area of the bolt carrier with CLP.
30. Lightly lube the inside lower receiver extension, buffer, and action spring with CLP.
31. Generously lube the takedown and pivot pins, detents, and the moving parts inside of the lower receiver and their pins.
32. Apply several drops of CLP to the moving parts of the adjustable rear sight to include the elevation knob, elevation screw shaft, windage knob, windage screw, and detent holes.
33. Ensure the correct windage and battle sight zero is reset on the weapon.
34. Insert action spring and buffer.
35. Insert extractor and spring, and then push in the extractor pin.
36. Slide bolt into carrier and replace the bolt cam pin.
37. Drop in and seat the firing pin.
38. Pull bolt out and replace the firing pin retaining pin.
39. Engage, then push the charging handle part way.
40. Slide in the bolt carrier group, then push the charging handle and bolt carrier group together.
41. Join the upper and lower receivers and engage the receiver pivot pin.
42. Close the upper and lower receiver groups and push in the takedown pin.
43. Place the rifle on the butt stock and press down on the slip ring. Then install the hand guards and release the ring.
44. Snap on the sling.
45. Pull the charging handle to the rear and release. Place the selector lever on SAFE, pull the trigger, and ensure the hammer does not fall.
46. Place the selector lever on Semi, pull the trigger and hold to the rear. Hammer should fall.
47. Pull the charging handle to the rear and release. Release the trigger and pull again. Hammer should fall.
48. Place the selector lever on Burst. Pull the charging handle to the rear and release.
49. Pull the trigger and hold to the rear. Hammer should fall.
50. Pull the charging handle to the rear 3 times and release. Release trigger and pull again. Hammer should fall.

REFERENCES

1. TM 05538C-10/1A Operator's Manual, Rifle, 5.56mm, M16A2 W/E
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0302 - A - 050

RFS:

Inspect an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08671A-10/1

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is clear.
2. Raise the cover assembly and pull the upper retaining pin at the rear of the receiver to the left.
3. Lower the butt pivot downward so that the rear opening on the receiver is completely free.
4. Hold the weapon with one hand on the butt stock and push in and upward on the rear end of the operating rod assembly with the thumb of the other hand.
5. Remove the operating rod assembly (spring, guide rod, and buffer).
6. Pull the cocking handle to the rear and slide the moving parts out of the rear of the receiver.
7. Rotate the bolt to disengage the lug and pull it out of the slide assembly.
8. Separate the slide assembly from the piston by pressing the retaining pin at the rear to the left and lifting off the slide assembly.
9. Close the cover.
10. Depress the locking lever of the barrel with the left hand. Hold the carrying handle with the right hand, and lift up and push the barrel forward.
11. Position the gas regulator lever between Normal and Max.
12. Place the tip of the spring guide rod in the notch in the front left of the gas block and hold the guide firmly in the notch.
13. Holding the guide rod in position, turn the collar back and beyond the Normal position until the collar can be removed.
14. Remove the gas regulator from the gas block.
15. Push the hand guard retaining pin to the left using the spring guide rod, then remove the hand guard downward.
16. Using the spring guide rod, push the lower most retaining pin to the left and remove the butt stock and shoulder assembly by pulling it rearward, while supporting the trigger assembly.
17. Using the spring guide rod, push the lower most retaining pin to the left and remove the butt stock and shoulder assembly by pulling it rearward, while supporting the trigger assembly.
18. Turn the gas cylinder to the left or right to release the locking spring, then pull forward.
19. Remove the bipod from the receiver.
20. Inspect the bore and chamber.
21. Inspect bore and chamber for carbon.
22. Inspect barrel for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on flash hider, barrel extension, and barrel release.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

23. Check front sight for looseness.
24. Check the cover assembly for smooth operation, spring tension, bent parts, or excessive wear and lightly oil moving parts.
25. Check for bends and cracks, free movement of the cocking assembly, and excessively worn, burred or chipped rails.
26. Check barrel locking latch and cover detent springs for spring tension.
27. Check for broken pistol grip, and chipped or cracked trigger housing holding lugs.
28. Check tripping lever and sear for burrs, cracks, chips, and wear.
29. Check cocking action by pushing back on the tripping lever and ensuring that the sear raises. Pull the trigger and ensure the sear lowers. Push back on tripping lever.
30. With the safety pushed to the right, pull the trigger and ensure the sear will not lower.
31. With the safety pushed to the left, pull the trigger and ensure the sear lowers.
32. Lightly lubricate tripping lever and sear surfaces, ends of the trigger pin, safety shaft, and sear pivot pin.
33. Check the bolt and operating rod for burrs, cracks, broken pins, or a frozen roller.
34. Push down on the roller to make sure it will retract.
35. Check driving spring for broken strands.
36. Check bipod legs for operation and excessive dirt.
37. Check rear sight assembly for azimuth and elevation, and excessive dirt.
38. Clean the gas vent hole of the regulator body using the scraper tool.
39. Check central hole of the regulator for cleanliness.
40. Inspect the 2 grooves of the regulator body.
41. Inspect the front of the gas cylinder for cleanliness.
42. Inspect the exterior grooves and the hole on the front of the piston for cleanliness.
43. Place the bipod on the receiver.
44. Push the gas cylinder through the bipod yoke into the receiver.
45. Push the cylinder to the rear while countering the pressure of the locking spring and guiding the end of the cylinder into the receiver with the other hand.
46. Turn the cylinder until the spring clicks into the recess at the rear of the gas cylinder.
47. Replace all cleaning equipment removed from stowage areas.
48. Replace the hand guard on the receiver and slide it backwards until it stops, then push the hand guard retaining pin to the right.
49. Holding the barrel in one hand with the muzzle up, insert the gas regulator body into the lower end of the gas block and align the notch in the regulator body with the notch in the gas block.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

50. Place the gas collar regulator lever on the protruding end of the body and align the spring with the stud. Firmly push downward and rotate the collar clockwise into the "N" position.
51. Depress the locking lever of the barrel backward with the left hand. Holding the carrying handle with the right hand, pull the barrel rearward, push downward and lock by releasing the locking lever.
52. Push the retaining pin to the left and install the trigger mechanism.
53. Align the lower hole in the butt stock and shoulder assembly with the rear hole in the trigger mechanism and push the lower pin to the right.
54. Assemble the bolt carrier to the piston and secure by pushing the retaining pin from left to right.
55. Place the spring on the firing pin.
56. Insert the bolt into the bolt carrier, pressing in order to compress the firing pin spring, then rotate the bolt and hook its driving lug into the bolt carrier.
57. Put the moving parts into the receiver with the feed cover open. Locate the bolt lugs in the rails. At the same time, locate the piston into the rear of the gas cylinder. Press the trigger with the forefinger of the other hand so that the sear does not prevent the moving parts from going forward.
58. Hold the pistol grip with one hand and push the operating rod assembly into its housing in the rear of the piston with the other hand. Press in and down on the rear of the operating rod assembly until its 2 lugs are positioned in the receiver grooves.
59. Pivot the butt upward into position and push the retaining pin to the right.
60. Close the cover assembly.
61. Grasp the cocking handle palm up with the right hand and pull the bolt to the rear locking it in place.
62. While continuing to hold resistance on the cocking handle, use the left hand to move the safety to the SAFE position.
63. Push the cocking handle forward into the forward lock position.
64. Pull the trigger and ensure the weapon does not fire.
65. Grasp the cocking handle palm up with the right hand and pull and hold it to the rear.
66. Move the safety to the FIRE position.
67. While continuing to hold resistance on the cocking handle, use the left hand to pull the trigger and ease the bolt forward.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08671A-10/1 Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 5.56mm, M249
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 067

RFS:

Inspect an M203 grenade launcher

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle with a mounted M203 grenade

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

launcher, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1010-221-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the rifle is clean.
2. Ensure the M203 grenade launcher is clear.
3. Inspect the launcher assembly for missing or damaged components.
4. Inspect bore and chamber for cleanliness.
5. Inspect area around breech insert and firing pin hole for cleanliness.
6. Inspect exterior of weapon for excessive dirt.
7. Inspect the locator slot.
8. Check the leaf and quadrant sight for damage and functioning.
9. Ensure the launcher is firmly attached to the rifle.
10. With the launcher on FIRE, cock the launcher and squeeze the trigger. Firing pin releases.
11. Hold the trigger to the rear and cock the launcher. Release the trigger and then squeeze the trigger. Firing pin releases.
12. With the launcher on SAFE, cock the launcher and squeeze the trigger. Firing pin does not release.
13. Hold the trigger to the rear and cock the launcher. Release the trigger and then squeeze the trigger. Firing pin does not release.
14. Move the barrel forward and back to be sure the barrel stop and barrel latch function.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1010-221-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Cl 1&2)
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 101

RFS:

Inspect an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08670A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is clear.
2. Depress the barrel locking latch and hold.
3. Turn the carrying handle to upright position.
4. Remove the barrel and pull straight out.
5. Rotate the collar until it releases, then pull it out.
6. Pull the plug from the gas regulator.
7. Inspect the center hole of the plug for carbon and cleanliness.
8. Inspect the groove on the plug for carbon and cleanliness.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Inspect the surfaces of the plug for carbon and cleanliness.
10. Inspect the gas inlet holes of the plug for carbon and cleanliness
11. Inspect the gas port hole in the barrel for carbon and cleanliness
12. Place the plug with gas inlet setting number 1 hole facing the barrel.
13. Install the collar on the plug and rotate until the collar slips onto the plug. Press and rotate to lock in place.
14. Inspect the bore and chamber for dirt, carbon, and corrosion.
15. Inspect for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on the flash hider, barrel adapter, and carrying handle.
16. Depress the cover latches and raise the cover assembly.
17. Check the cover assembly for smooth operation, spring tension, bent parts, or excessive wear.
18. Inspect the cover assembly.
19. Depress the spring and remove the trigger housing spring pin.
20. Pull the trigger housing assembly down and back to remove.
21. Inspect the trigger assembly, looking for broken grips, bent, cracked, or broken trigger actuating assembly, loose nut or bolt, and chipped or cracked trigger housing holding lug.
22. Check the tripping lever and sear for burrs, cracks, chips, and wear.
23. Check cocking action by pushing back on tripping lever, sear will rise. Pull trigger, sear will lower.
24. Check safety functions. When safety is placed to "S," pull trigger, sear will not lower. When safety is placed to "F," pull trigger, sear will lower.
25. Depress the butt stock latch and lift the butt stock and buffer assembly to remove.
26. Inspect the butt stock and the buffer assembly for cleanliness.
27. Press the drive spring in, up, and pull out.
28. Inspect the driving spring for broken strands and the drive spring rod for bends or breaks.
29. Pull the cocking handle to the rear and remove the bolt and operating rod assembly.
30. Check the bolt and operating rod assembly for cleanliness, burrs, cracks, broken pins, or frozen roller.
31. Push down on the roller to ensure it will retract.
32. Check for bends and cracks, free movement of the cocking handle, and excessively worn, burred, or chipped rails.
33. Check the barrel locking latch and the cover detent for proper tension.
34. Set the bolt and operating rod assembly on top of top of rails.
35. Extend the bolt to the unlocked position and push the assembly all the way in the receiver.
36. Close the cover assembly and lock it.
37. Insert the drive spring into the operating rod assembly.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

38. Push it in fully and lower it to seat the stud in the hole of the receiver.
39. Install the butt stock and buffer assembly, ensuring it locks.
40. Position the trigger housing into place and insert the trigger housing spring pin.
41. Insert the barrel fully into the socket and push the carrying handle to the right as far as it will go to lock while counting clicks. There should be between 2 to 7 clicks.
42. Place the safety to "F."
43. Pull the cocking handle to the rear to lock the bolt back.
44. Place the safety to "S."
45. Depress the trigger, nothing should happen.
46. Place the safety to "F."
47. Hold the cocking handle to the rear.
48. Depress the trigger and ease the bolt forward to close and lock.
49. Inspect for dirt and rust on the traversing and elevation mechanism and the flex mount.
50. Rotate the traversing hand-wheel and check the traversing screw.
51. Inspect the traversing and elevation mechanism for; scales can be read without difficulty, far ends of the traversing and elevation screw for cleanliness and perform function check by testing for dead clicks.
52. Grasp the stock and pull back and forth to test for inordinate play in the M122 mount.
53. Inspect the tripod and flex mount for rust and dirt.
54. Inspect the pintle and pintle bushing, ensuring it locks in place.
55. Inspect the gun bag and spare barrel bag for dirt, signs of deterioration and wear.
56. On the spare barrel, rotate the gas collar until it releases, then pull it out.
57. Pull the plug from the gas regulator.
58. Inspect the center hole of plug for carbon and cleanliness.
59. Inspect the groove on the plug for carbon and cleanliness.
60. Inspect the surfaces of the plug for carbon and cleanliness.
61. Inspect the gas inlet holes of the plug for carbon and cleanliness.
62. Inspect the gas port hole in the barrel for carbon and cleanliness.
63. Place the plug with gas inlet setting number 1 hole facing the barrel.
64. Install the collar on the plug and rotate until collar slips onto plug. Press and rotate to lock in place.
65. Inspect the bore and chamber for dirt, carbon, and corrosion.
66. Inspect for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on flash hider, barrel adapter, and carrying handle.
67. Ensure the spare barrel bag contains all required SL-3 components.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 121

RFS:

Inspect an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun.

Standard: In accordance with TM 02498A-10/1, TM 08686A-13&P/1, and FM 23-65.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is clear.
2. Retract bolt far enough for barrel locking spring lug to center in the 3/8 inch hole on right hand side of receiver.
3. Unscrew and remove barrel assembly.
4. Inspect the bore and chamber for cleanliness.
5. Inspect barrel locking notches for wear or breakdown.
6. Inspect barrel for rust.
7. Inspect bore for bulges, missing bands, or large pits.
8. Inspect chamber for bulges or large pits.
9. Pull back plate latch lock straight back, while lifting up on back plate latch. Raise back plate assembly straight up and remove from receiver. Place spade grips down, to prevent damage.
10. Inspect back plate guides for burrs or bent conditions.
11. Check back plate latch and back plate latch lock for proper functioning.
12. Ensure locking pins are in place.
13. Check trigger for proper functioning.
14. Check bolt latch release for proper functioning.
15. Ensure handle grips do not move freely and are not cracked.
16. Check bolt latch release lock for proper functioning.
17. Push rear of driving spring rod assembly forward and to the left until free from the side of the receiver.
18. Remove driving spring rod assembly.
19. Inspect driving spring rod assembly for flat spots on springs, ensuring springs operate freely and rod and pin are not bent or broken.
20. Retract bolt assembly far enough to align bolt stud with bolt stud hole in receiver. Remove bolt stud.
21. Install pointed end of M4 cleaning rod into hole in receiver, and depress buffer body lock. At the same time, apply rearward pressure on barrel extension assembly.
22. Remove barrel buffer assembly, barrel extension assembly, and the bolt group from the receiver.
23. Remove bolt assembly from the barrel extension assembly.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

24. Separate the barrel buffer body group and the barrel extension group by pushing forward on tips of buffer accelerator.
25. Check movement of cartridge extractor in bolt. Cartridge extractor should raise and lower without binding.
26. Check movement of cartridge ejector, observing for cracks and/or burrs.
27. Inspect bolt switch, cocking lever pin, cocking lever, accelerator stop lock, accelerator stop, and sear slide for cracks, bends, and burr
28. Inspect sear for cracks and burrs. Inspect sear notch for wear, chips, or burrs. Inspect sear spring for breaks or lack of tension.
29. Inspect firing pin for cracks and chipped or sharp tip. Ensure th tip is smooth and well rounded.
30. Check firing pin extension for cracks, burrs, and free movement in bolt. Ensure shoulder engages sear has a sharp angle and is free of chips and burrs.
31. Ensure bolt is free of burrs and cracks. Firing pin hole must not be visibly out of round.
32. Inspect buffer body lock for tension, staking, and retention in barrel buffer body.
33. Inspect buffer accelerator for broken claws or tips.
34. Inspect accelerator pin assembly for broken or missing spring.
35. Inspect buffer spring for cracks or breaks.
36. Breech lock depressors must have a slight vertical (up and down) movement, but not a lateral (side to side) movement.
37. Inspect barrel extension assembly to ensure it is not bent. Ensur the bolt guide ways are smooth and free of burrs.
38. Visually inspect threads of barrel extension assembly for any damage.
39. Ensure barrel locking spring is staked and fully seated in its groove. Ensure the locking end of the spring has good tension and the lug is not damaged.
40. Inspect breech lock pin assembly for broken or missing spring.
41. Check breech lock for smooth movement in guide ways of barrel extension assembly.
42. Inspect retracting slide handle for cracks or other visible damage observing for weak or broken retracting springs.
43. Ensure cotter pins are present and in good condition.
44. Ensure safety wire is in place and properly laced.
45. Inspect belt holding pawl brackets for looseness, bends, or cracks
46. Inspect side plates for bends that would effect movement of any internal components.
47. Inspect for cracks and burrs at back plate grooves.
48. Check operating rear sight, ensuring free-movement of the windage and elevation screws.
49. Ensure leaf assembly has good spring tension and sight assembly is secured tightly to receiver.
50. Ensure bolt stop is present and in good condition.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

51. Ensure trigger lever moves freely, without binding.
52. Ensure trigger lever pin locks in place.
53. Ensure cotter pin is in place on extractor switch.
54. Install bolt assembly into barrel extension and buffer assembly.
55. Install barrel buffer assembly, barrel extension assembly, and bolt assembly into the receiver.
56. Align hole in bolt assembly with stud assembly hole in receiver, and install bolt stud in hole in bolt assembly.
57. Raise bolt latch, and push bolt assembly into receiver.
58. Align hole in bolt assembly with stud assembly hole in receiver, and install bolt stud in hole in bolt assembly.
59. Place bolt in forward position.
60. Install driving spring rod assembly in upper right hand corner of bolt. Push forward, and to the right, until drive spring rod assembly engages in hole in side plate of receiver, and not in the groove for the back plate.
61. Install back plate assembly in receiver grooves. Pull back plate latch lock, while lifting up on back plate latch. Lower back plate assembly down, until engaged in receiver.
62. Retract bolt far enough for barrel locking spring lug to center in barrel locking spring hole, on right side of receiver.
63. Install and screw barrel assembly completely into receiver. Unscrew barrel assembly until 2 clicks are heard.
64. Place the weapon in the single-shot mode.
65. Open the cover and lock the bolt to the rear. The bolt should stay to the rear in single-shot mode.
66. Hold the retractor slide handle. Press bolt latch release, and ride the bolt forward.
67. Press down on the trigger; weapon should fire. Check T-slot to ensure the firing pin does protrude.
68. Place the weapon in AUTOMATIC fire mode.
69. Pull the retractor slide handle to the rear and hold; bolt should not lock to the rear.
70. Release the pressure on the retractor slide handle, and ride the bolt forward.
71. Make sure firing pin does not protrude.
72. Press trigger; weapon should fire.
73. Make sure the firing pin does protrude.
74. Inspect for dirt and rust on traversing and elevation mechanism.
75. Inspect the traversing and elevation mechanism for readability of scales and cleanliness of far ends of the traversing and elevating mechanism screws. Perform function check by testing for dead clicks.
76. Inspect for dirt and rust on the M3 tripod.
77. Visually inspect the tripod components for wear, cracks, dents, and damage. Ensure springs are free of rust, corrosion, and deformation.
78. Ensure all parts are properly installed and are in working condition.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

79. Insert pintle into pintle bushing ensuring it locks in place.
80. Inspect all surfaces of the MK64 carriage and cradle assembly for dirt and corrosion.
81. Inspect the MK64 for binding. Check for damaged or missing retaining pins, chains, cotter pins, self locking screws, pintle, pintle lock assembly, and bolts. Check all welded areas for cracks. If paint is removed from the assembly, touch up or repaint.
82. Inspect all surfaces of the pintle adapter assembly for dirt and corrosion.
83. Inspect for missing or damage screw, cable, pintle, and quick release pin.
84. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
85. Inspect the train and elevation assembly for dirt and corrosion.
86. Inspect for missing or broken screws, washers, nuts, handles, and the chain.
87. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
88. Inspect the 50. cal pintle and MK64 mounting adapter for dirt and corrosion.
89. Inspect pintle and mounts for cracks and damage. Check for missing bolts, cotter pins, and washers.
90. Inspect the ammunition mount assemblies for dirt and corrosion.
91. Inspect the ammunition mount assemblies for missing screws, chains, cotter pins, retaining pins, welded pins, and straight pins. Check all welds for cracks. Check for binding or broken springs.
92. Inspect the barrel bag for broken zipper, excessive wear or deterioration.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50; Browning M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
 3. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 137

RFS:

Inspect a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08521A-10/1A, MCWP 3-15.1, and TM 08686A-13&P/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is clear.
2. Place weapon on SAFE.
3. Pull straight out on the back plate pin.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Lift up slightly on the back plate assembly. Pull it to the rear, until it clicks.
5. Put the safety on FIRE.
6. Support assembly with both hands and pull reward to remove. Once removed from the receiver, always place the bolt and back plate assembly flat on a clean surface, to reduce the possibility of damage.
7. Reach under top of receiver to locate the drive lever lock and slid the lock reward.
8. To remove from the receiver, press down on the primary drive levers pivot post to release both the primary drive lever and vertical cam. Once removed from weapon system, always place with chrome edge up to reduce the possibility of damage.
9. Rotate left and right charger assemblies up.
10. Hook the rim of a spent casing under the lip of the lock plunger. Lift up on the lock plunger to retract it. Slide charger assembly all the way rearward, and pull the charger assembly away from the receiver to remove.
11. With the weapon still on FIRE turn the receiver on its side and lift up slightly on lock pin with cartridge link.
12. Squeeze receiver sear and safety together. Then rotate sear housing assembly 90 degrees in either direction.
13. Push tip of sear down. Put safety on SAFE to lock the sear in the down position, and lift out to remove the housing assembly.
14. Inspect receiver housing for cracks, rust, and cleanliness.
15. Inspect receiver rails for burrs.
16. Inspect feeder pawls for no spring action or burrs.
17. Inspect barrel for carbon buildup and pitting in bore or chamber.
18. Check flash suppressor for dents or cracks.
19. Inspect rear sight for rust, legible sight scale, and binding in movable parts.
20. Inspect the sear housing assembly for dirt and corrosion.
21. Inspect sear especially rear shoulder of sear for burrs.
22. Squeeze sear and safety together. Then place safety on FIRE. Keep pressure on safety, and line up sear housing assembly at right angle to barrel centerline. Twist housing 90 degrees, until assembly locks in place.
23. Inspect alignment guide for deformed or cracked spring, cracks around pin, and looseness of pin.
24. Inspect ogive plunger head for spring action, and round positionin block for weak spring action.
25. Inspect the charger assembly for dirt and corrosion.
26. Check for burrs on groove edges on the charger assembly.
27. Inspect vertical cam assembly for burrs, scratches, or aluminum buildup on chromed edge. Inspect primary drive lever for burrs, especially around pivot posts.
28. Inspect secondary drive lever for missing pivot post retaining ring, burrs on pivot post, and burrs on forked end.
29. Inspect feed slide assembly and feed tray for dirt and corrosion.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

30. Inspect feed pawls or feed tray pawl for burrs or binding. Inspect guide rails on tray for burrs.
31. Inspect top cover assembly for cracks or rust and the latch for binding or looseness.
32. Inspect all parts of the bolt and back plate assembly for dirt and corrosion.
33. Inspect cocking lever for broken or worn rear tip, guide rods for bent or binding, recoil springs for weak spring action, back plate pin for missing retaining spring, and the safety wire for presence and looseness.
34. Rotate charger assemblies to straight up position and line up lugs on charger with slots in receiver rail. Then insert charger lugs into slots.
35. Hold tightly against rail, and slide forward until it locks in place.
36. Slide vertical cam assembly through rear of receiver. Raised portion should slide over hole in receiver and drive lever lock should be underneath.
37. Engage forked end in the notch of the receiver.
38. While holding vertical cam assembly in place, slide primary drive lever into receiver.
39. Engage pivot post of lever through holes in receiver and vertical cam while sliding the drive lever lock forward on the vertical cam just beneath top of receiver.
40. To insert the bolt and back plate assembly. Make sure the cocking lever is cocked and forward. Place safety on FIRE, and insert the assembly into receiver.
41. When assembly stops, press the receiver sear and slide the assembly all the way forward. Then insert the back plate pin to lock the assembly in place.
42. Ensure the secondary drive lever is properly engaged and the feed slide assembly is all the way to the left.
43. Close the cover.
44. Pull bolt to the rear.
45. Place the safety on SAFE.
46. Press the trigger, and the bolt should not go forward.
47. Place the safety on FIRE.
48. Press trigger and allow the bolt to spring home freely, in order to conduct firing pin inspection.
49. Place the safety on SAFE.
50. Open top cover.
51. Inspect firing pin and bolt face for signs of worn or damaged part
52. Move secondary drive lever back and forth to ensure it moves freely
53. Press the feed pawls to check for spring pressure.
54. Ensure the secondary drive lever is to the right and engaged under the feed tray. Then slide the feed slide to the left.
55. Ensuring the bolt is forward, close the cover. Ensure it locks.
56. Inspect for dirt and rust on the traversing and elevation mechanisms

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

57. Inspect the traversing and elevation mechanism for readability of scales and cleanliness of far ends of the traversing and elevating mechanism screws. Perform function check by testing for dead clicks.
58. Inspect for dirt and rust on the M3 tripod.
59. Visually inspect the tripod components for wear, cracks, dents, and damage. Springs must be free of rust, corrosion, and deformation.
60. Ensure all parts are properly installed and are in working condition.
61. Insert pintle into pintle bushing, ensuring it locks in place.
62. Inspect all surfaces of the MK64 carriage and cradle assembly for dirt and corrosion.
63. Inspect the MK64 for binding. Inspect for damaged or missing retaining pins, chains, cotter pins, self locking screws, pintle, pintle lock assembly, and bolts. Check all welded areas for cracks. If paint is removed from the assembly touch up or repaint.
64. Inspect all surfaces of the pintle adapter assembly for dirt and corrosion.
65. Inspect for missing or damaged screw, cable, pintle, and quick release pin.
66. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
67. Inspect the train and elevation assembly for dirt and corrosion.
68. Inspect for missing or broken screws, washers, nuts, handles, and the chain.
69. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
70. Inspect pintle and mounts for cracks and damage. Check for missing bolts, cotter pins, and washers.
71. Inspect the ammunition mount assemblies for dirt and corrosion.
72. Inspect the ammunition mount assemblies for missing screws, chains, cotter pins, retaining pins, welded pins, and straight pins. Check all welds for cracks. Check for binding or broken springs.
73. Inspect the gun and barrel cover for cleanliness, broken zipper, excessive wear, or deterioration.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 3. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 165

RFS:

Inspect an M224 60mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 60mm mortar.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08206A-10/1A.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for foreign matter in cannon tube.
2. Look for bulges, dents, cracks, missing or damaged parts, or evidence of gas leakage around breech cap.
3. Place firing selector at (TRIGGER FIRE) T, (SAFE) S, and (DROP FIRE) D. Check safety by squeezing the trigger. Trigger should not fire mortar with firing selector on S or D. Trigger should click loudly with firing selector at T.
4. Check for illumination of range indicator assembly.
5. Check for smooth operation of elevating mechanism.
6. Check for smooth operation of traversing mechanism.
7. Check for smooth operation of cross-leveling mechanism.
8. Leg must move in and out smoothly with plain wing-nut loosened.
9. Extend shock absorbers. They must return smoothly, without binding to original position when released.
10. Ensure collar locks securely.
11. Check M7 base plate for cracks or breaks.
12. Check locking cap for smooth 360 rotation.
13. Insert base cap of canon into socket of M8 base plate. Close latch. Ensure latch pin seats and locks, and check for retention of base plate on cannon.
14. Check M64A1 sight unit for the illumination of telescope, coarse elevation scale, coarse elevation scale arrow, cross-level vial, fine elevation scale, fine elevation index arrow, coarse azimuth (deflection) index arrow, elevation vial, fine azimuth (deflection) scale, and coarse azimuth (deflection) scale.
15. Check eye piece for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
16. Check eye-shield vent holes for dirt.
17. Ensure latching lever secures sight unit mount to dovetail.
18. Ensure bubbles in level vials will move and vials are not cracked or loose in mount.
19. Ensure vial cover rotates freely.
20. Check elevation knob and deflection knob for smooth operation.
21. Ensure backlash on knobs doesn't exceed 0.5 mils.
22. Ensure the fine elevation scale slips only when the screws are loosened.
23. Inspect bore sight lens for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
24. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
25. Ensure mounting surfaces are free of nicks and burrs.
26. Check night aiming devices for illumination in a darkened area.
27. Check for missing or damaged radiation warning, data plate, or other parts.
28. Check for evidence of tampering on night aiming devices .
29. Check 10558A-SD weapons record book for entries of round expenditure.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

30. Check M14 aiming posts for accountability.
31. Check M14 aiming posts for cleanliness and serviceability.
32. Check the aiming post case for excessive wear and cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08206A-10/1A Operator's Manual, M224 60mm Lightweight Company Mortar
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 172

RFS:

Inspect an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 81mm mortar.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09922A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for foreign matter in cannon.
2. Inspect for bulges, dents, cracks, rust, missing or damaged parts of the cannon or blast attenuator device. Inspect for evidence of gas leakage around breech plug and firing pin.
3. Ensure the weapon has been bore scoped and pullover gagged within 9 days prior to firing.
4. Check mount for cracks, broken welds, rust, loose, missing, or damaged parts.
5. Ensure smooth operation of elevating mechanism.
6. Ensure smooth operation of traversing mechanism.
7. Ensure smooth operation of cross-leveling mechanism.
8. Ensure barrel clamp assembly operates properly and holds the barrel securely.
9. Extend buffers. They must return smoothly, without binding, to original position when released.
10. Check base plate for cracks, loose, missing, or damaged parts.
11. Check socket cap for smooth 360 degrees rotation.
12. Check M64A1 sight unit for the illumination of telescope, coarse elevation scale, coarse elevation scale arrow, cross-level vial, fine elevation scale, fine elevation index arrow, coarse azimuth deflection index arrow, elevation vial, fine azimuth deflection scale, and coarse azimuth deflection scale.
13. Check eye piece for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
14. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
15. Ensure latching lever secures sight unit mount to dovetail.
16. Ensure bubbles in level vials will move and vials are not cracked or loose in mount.
17. Ensure vial cover rotates freely.
18. Ensure elevation knob and deflection knob for smooth operation.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

19. Ensure backlash on knobs doesn't exceed 0.5 mils.
20. Ensure the fine elevation scale slips only when the screws are loosened.
21. Inspect bore sight lens for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
22. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
23. Check bore sight eye-shield for damage.
24. Ensure mounting surfaces are free of nicks and burrs.
25. Check bore sight straps and clamp assembly for serviceability.
26. Check night aiming devices for illumination in a darkened area.
27. Check for missing or damaged radiation warning, data plate, or other parts.
28. Check night aiming devices for evidence of tampering.
29. Check 10558A-SD weapons record book for entries of round expenditure.
30. Check M14 aiming posts for accountability.
31. Check M14 aiming posts for cleanliness and serviceability.
32. Check the aiming post case for excessive wear and cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 191

RFS:

Inspect a MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW)

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW).

Standard: In accordance with TM 08673A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Pull cocking handle to the rear.
2. Visually inspect the chamber for spent ammunition or live rounds.
3. Release the cocking handle.
4. Depress the end of the recoil spring/buffer assembly.
5. Remove the tube cover.
6. Remove the recoil spring/buffer assembly.
7. Pull cocking lever to the rear.
8. Remove the cocking lever.
9. Remove the bolt/carrier assembly.
10. Disassemble the bolt/carrier assembly by rotating it counter-clockwise until the bolt separates into 2 pieces.
11. Clean the spotting rifle with an AP brush moistened with CLP, to remove all dirt, rust, and carbon.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Inspect the spotting rifle for carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
13. Ensure the spotting rifle is lightly lubricated with CLP.
14. Inspect the recoil spring/buffer assembly for carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
15. Ensure the recoil spring/buffer assembly is lightly lubricated with CLP.
16. Inspect the bolt/carrier assembly for carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
17. Ensure the bolt/carrier assembly is lightly lubricated with CLP.
18. Inspect the launch tube for carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
19. Inspect the telescopic sights for dirt, rust, and serviceability.
20. Assemble the bolt/carrier by turning the rear insert carrier counter-clockwise, until it stops.
21. Insert the bolt/carrier into the spotting rifle.
22. Insert the cocking handle into the bolt/carrier.
23. Insert the recoil spring/buffer assembly.
24. Insert tube cover onto the spotting rifle.
25. Place weapon in the SAFE position.
26. Squeeze the trigger. Nothing should happen.
27. Place the weapon in the "FIRE" position.
28. Squeeze the trigger. Nothing should happen.
29. Place the charging lever in the "CHARGE" position.
30. Squeeze the trigger and listen for the audible click.
31. Place the weapon in the SAFE position.
32. Squeeze the trigger. Nothing should happen.
33. Place the weapon in the "FIRE" position.
34. Depress launch lever. Nothing should happen.
35. Squeeze the trigger and listen for an audible click.
36. Pull the cocking lever back.
37. Return cocking lever forward.
38. Place weapon in the "CHARGE" position.
39. Squeeze the trigger and listen for an audible click.
40. Depress launch lever forward.
41. Squeeze the trigger, observing the charging lever returning to the forward position.
42. Place the weapon in the SAFE position.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83mm (SMAW) MK153 MOD 0
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0302 - A - 209

RFS:

Inspect an M98A1 Javelin command launch unit

Condition: Given an M98A1 Javelin command launch unit, and a BA5590/U battery.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09397B-12/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the main housing for damage.
2. Inspect the absorbers for rips and tears.
3. Inspect lens covers for damage.
4. Inspect night vision sight lens for damage.
5. Inspect humidity indicator for serviceability.
6. Inspect round interface connector for damage.
7. Inspect round interface bracket for damage.
8. Inspect the right handgrip for damage.
9. Inspect the trigger for damage.
10. Inspect the GATE ADJ/CTRS switch for damage.
11. Inspect the ATTK SEL switch for damage.
12. Inspect the FLTR switch for damage.
13. Inspect the left handgrip for damage.
14. Inspect the seeker trigger for damage.
15. Inspect the SGT SEL switch for damage.
16. Inspect the FOCUS switch for damage.
17. Inspect the power switch for damage.
18. Inspect the battery compartment for damage.
19. Inspect the BA5590/U battery for damage.
20. Inspect the diopter for damage.
21. Inspect the eye piece for damage.
22. Inspect the Detector Dewar Cooler for damage.
23. Insert the BA5590/U battery into the battery compartment.
24. Close the battery compartment.
25. Set the power switch to the NIGHT position.
26. Adjust diopter ring for clarity.
27. Verify day indicators are lit.
28. Allow 2.5 minutes for NVS to cool down.
29. Verify night sight NOT READY indicator goes out.
30. Turn power switch to TEST position and release.
31. Observe all 14 indicators being lit for about 5 seconds.
32. Observe all 14 indicators go out.
33. Observe software version data display.
34. Operate triggers as prompted.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

35. Observe checkerboard gray scale.
36. Operate CLU switches.
37. Observe corresponding indicator lights as switch is activated.
38. Observe DAY indicator is lit.
39. Turn off the CLU and set aside.
40. Inspect CLU carry bag for tears, rips, and holes.
41. Remove and inventory the contents of the CLU carry bag.
42. Replace all components to the CLU carry bag.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual, JAVELIN (CD ROM)
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 210

RFS:

Inspect an M98A1 Javelin round

Condition: Given an M98A1 Javelin round.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09397B-12/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the forward end cap for damage.
2. Inspect the guide pin of the forward end cap for damage.
3. Inspect the BCU status indicator for serviceability of the BCU.
4. Inspect the BCU for damage.
5. Inspect the command launch unit interface connector for damage.
6. Inspect the bracket for damage.
7. Inspect the latch assembly for damage.
8. Inspect the latch release for damage.
9. Inspect the shoulder pad for damage.
10. Inspect the shoulder strap for damage.
11. Inspect the rear end cap for damage.
12. Inspect the launch tube assembly for damage.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for Javelin

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: Javelin

DODIC

Quantity

1 each

REFERENCES

1. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin

EVENT: 0302 - A - 229 RFS:

Inspect an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system encased missile

Condition: Given an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system encased missile, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the wooden missile crate for severe damage. Ensure the forward end is pointed down range.
2. Inspect the humidity indicator by looking through the window on the wooden missile crate to ensure the humidity indicator card on the missile is blue.
3. Remove the encased missile from the wooden missile crate.
4. Ensure the serial number from the encased missile matches the serial number on the wooden missile crate.
5. Inspect the humidity indicator card on the encased missile again to ensure the first reading was accurate.
6. Inspect the rear diaphragm on the encased missile for rips and tear
7. Inspect the rear half of the encased missile for cracks, dents, or bulges.
8. Remove the electrical connector dust cover on the encased missile.
9. Inspect the electrical connector on the encased missile for ease of movement, bent pins, and debris.
10. Inspect the rubber detent boot on the encased missile for dry rot and ease of movement.
11. Inspect the guide rails on the encased missile for damage.
12. Inspect the forward half of the encased missile for cracks, dents, or bulges.
13. Inspect the index lugs on the encased missile for stability, ensuring they are not bent and are aligned with the guide rails.
14. Remove the quick release clamp and forward handling ring from the encased missile.
15. Inspect the forward diaphragm on the encased missile for rips and tears.
16. Ensuring there are 4 small pinholes on the forward diaphragm.
17. Replace the forward handling ring and quick release clamp on the encased missile.
18. Replace the protective cover on the encased missile.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M220E4 TOW2

DODIC

Quantity

PB97 GUIDED MISSILE TOW

1 each

Ammunition is not expended.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 230

RFS:

Inspect an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M220E4 TOW2 weapon system.

Standard: In accordance with the TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the thermal sight from the storage case.
2. Inspect the thermal sight for damage.
3. Inspect the thermal sight exterior for cleanliness.
4. Inspect the thermal sight lens for cleanliness.
5. Remove the optical sight from the shroud bag.
6. Inspect the optical sight for damage.
7. Inspect the optical sight exterior for cleanliness.
8. Inspect the optical sight lens.
9. Inspect electrical connections for cleanliness.
10. Inspect the traversing unit for damage.
11. Inspect the traversing unit for cleanliness.
12. Inspect the tripod for damage.
13. Inspect the tripod for cleanliness.
14. Remove the missile guidance set cover.
15. Inspect the missile guidance set for damage.
16. Inspect the missile guidance set for cleanliness.
17. Inspect the battery assembly for damage.
18. Inspect the battery assembly for cleanliness.
19. Inspect the electrical connector for cleanliness.
20. Open the battery power conditioner lid.
21. Inspect the battery power conditioner for damage.
22. Inspect the battery power conditioner for cleanliness.
23. Inspect the launch tube for damage.
24. Inspect the launch tube for cleanliness.
25. Remove the bore sight collimator from the carrying case.
26. Inspect the bore sight collimator for damage.
27. Inspect the bore sight collimator for cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0302 - A - 284

RFS:

Direct the employment of demolitions

Condition: Given a unit, all necessary demolitions or field expedient demolitions, and an order with a mission to employ demolitions.

Standard: To successfully employ demolitions to accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine demolition requirements.
2. Submit request for additional support and/or material.
3. Supervise preparation of charges and construction of field expedient demolitions.
4. Provide security for personnel emplacing demolitions.
5. Supervise emplacement of demolitions.

REFERENCES

1. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations
 2. FM 23-23 Antipersonnel Mine M18A1 Claymore
 3. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
 4. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
 5. FMFM 13-7 MAGTF Breaching Operations
 6. NWP 3-15 Mine Warfare
 7. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 285

RFS:

Direct the installation of a minefield

Condition: Given a unit, antipersonnel and/or antitank mines, initiating devices, a Hasty Protective Minefield Record, and an order with a mission requiring the establishment of a hasty minefield.

Standard: To accomplish stated mission in accordance with references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine likely enemy avenues of approach.
2. Determine available mine assets and time available.
3. Request authority to install minefield.
4. Indicate the trace of mines using mine strips and marking forms.
5. Indicate the location of dumps for mines and materials.
6. Indicate the landmarks and location of marking lanes.
7. Supervise installation of minefield.
8. Verify the completed minefield report

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Submit appropriate minefield report and diagram.
10. Continue with assigned mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task can be trained to standard using inert training mines from TAVSC or "field expedient simulators."

REFERENCES

1. DA FORM 1355-1-R Hasty Protective Minefield Record
 2. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations
 3. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
 4. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 5. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 6. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
 7. NWP 3-15 Mine Warfare
 8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 286

RFS:

Direct the extraction of a minefield

Condition: Given a unit, an installed hasty minefield, a Hasty Protective Minefield Record with associated diagram, and an order requiring the extraction of a hasty minefield.

Standard: To accomplish stated mission in accordance with higher headquarters' order and references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Report intention to extract the minefield.
2. Report initiation of extracting minefield.
3. Supervise extraction of minefield.
4. Report the completion of the extraction.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task can be trained to standard using inert training mines from TAVSC or "field expedient simulators."

REFERENCES

1. DA FORM 1355-1-R Hasty Protective Minefield Record
2. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations
3. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
4. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
5. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
6. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
7. NWP 3-15 Mine Warfare
8. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations

EVENT: 0302 - A - 305

RFS:

Inspect optics

Condition: Given organic optical equipment.

Standard: To ensure the optics are clean, serviceable, and free from rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the optics for serviceability and cleanliness, per appropriate TM.
2. Inspect and account for all SL-3 gear.
3. Coordinate higher echelon maintenance, as required.

REFERENCES

1. Appropriate Technical Manuals
2. TM 08579-12/A Modular Universal Laser Equipment, AN/PAQ-3 (MULE)
3. TM 09500A-10/1 Operator's Manual AN/PVS-7B
4. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
5. TM 11-5855-213-10 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Sight Individual Served Weapon AN/PVS-4
6. TM 11-5855-214-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Sight, Crew Served Weapon AN/TVS-5
7. TM 11-5855-238-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Goggles, AN/PVS-! series
8. TM 11-5855-301-12&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual, Light, Aiming, Infrared, AN/PAQ-4B (IAL)
9. TM 11-5860-201-10 Laser Infrared Observation Set AN/GVS-5
10. TM 10271A-10/1 Technical Manual for AN/PVS-14, Monocular NVD
11. TM 10470A-12&P/1A Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual, Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light, AN/PEQ-2A
12. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Night Vision Goggles
13. TM 11-5855-301-12&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual, Light Aiming, Infrared, AN/PAQ-4B (IAL)

EVENT: 0302 - A - 345

RFS:

Direct the handling of known or suspected enemy personnel

Condition: Given a unit and known or suspected enemy personnel.

Standard: To ensure Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) are handled properly, with minimal impact on the unit's mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Plan use of EPW teams.
2. Supervise the search.
3. Ensure weapons, documents and equipment are tagged and forwarded to higher headquarters.
3. Provide medical care and MEDEVAC
4. Ensure personal items, protective clothing, and equipment are returned to the EPWs.
5. Segregate the prisoners into appropriate groups.
6. Maintain silence among prisoners.
7. Ensure EPWs are processed quickly to higher headquarters.
8. Safeguard prisoners from abuse and hazards of enemy fire.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. EPWs are allowed to keep field protective masks, helmets, and flak jackets.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoner of War and Civilian Internees
 2. FM 27-10 Law of Land Warfare
 3. FMFRP 0-6 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 388

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the grid method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine target description.
2. Determine/Estimate the location of the target, using grid coordinates.
3. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
4. Determine/Estimate the distance to the target from the observer's position in meters.
5. Establish an observer to target factor.
6. Determine the method of engagement.
7. Determine the method of fire and control.
8. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the fire direction center.
9. Transmit a target location using an eight-digit grid coordinate to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

10. Transmit a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
11. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
12. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
13. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
14. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
15. Observe the impact of the round.
16. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
17. Using the height of burst (HOB) spotting, determine the height of burst correction in meters.
18. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
19. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor (The mil relation formula or WERM rule), determine the deviation correction in meters.
20. Transmit the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils grid.
21. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
22. Repeat performance steps 13 through 21 until the target is within the effective casualty radius/HOB of the round.
23. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
24. Receive, "Rounds complete, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Transmit, "Rounds complete, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Determine the effect on target.
27. Determine refinement corrections.
28. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller

EVENT: 0302 - A - 389

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the polar method

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the grid coordinates of your location.
2. Transmit your location coded to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
3. Determine target description.
4. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
5. Determine the vertical interval between the observer and the target in meters.
6. Establish an observer to target factor.
7. Determine the method of engagement.
8. Determine the method of fire and control.
9. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
10. Transmit a target location using the direction, distance, and vertical shift to the target from the observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
11. Transmit a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
12. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
13. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
14. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
15. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
16. Observe the impact of the round.
17. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
18. Using the height of burst spotting, determine the height of burst correction in meters.
19. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
20. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor, determine the deviation correction in meters.
21. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
22. Repeat performance steps 14 through 21 until the target is within the effective casualty radius of the round.
23. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
24. Receive "Rounds complete" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Transmit "Rounds complete" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Determine the effect on target.
27. Determine refinement corrections.
28. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 390

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the shift from a known point method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the grid coordinates of your location.
2. Transmit your location coded to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
3. Determine target description.
4. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
5. Determine/Estimate the distance to the target from the observer's position in meters.
6. Determine the vertical interval between the observer and the target in meters.
7. Establish an observer to target factor.
8. Determine the method of engagement.
9. Determine the method of fire and control.
10. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the Fire Direction Center (FDC). The warning order consists of FDC call sign, observer ID, and the target shifted from. (FDC this is FO, shift from AB-1001, over.)
11. Send the second transmission. It consists of observer to target (OT) direction, and corrections from a known target. (Direction 2850, left/right____, add/drop____, up/down____, over.)
12. Send the third transmission. It consists of a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC). (Dismounted infantry and APCs in the open, HE/RP mix, fire when ready, over.)
13. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
14. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
16. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
17. Observe the impact of the round.
18. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
19. Using the height of burst spotting, determine the height of burst (HOB) correction in meters.
20. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
21. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor, determine the deviation correction in meters.
22. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
23. Repeat performance steps 15 through 22 until the target is within the effective casualty radius/HOB of the round.
24. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Receive "Rounds complete" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Transmit "Rounds complete" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
27. Determine the effect on target.
28. Determine refinement corrections.
29. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 404

RFS:

Develop a quick fire support plan

Condition: Given a tactical situation where time limits preclude formal fire planning, communications with the Fire Direction Center (FDC) and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC), the commander's guidance, DA Form 5368-R (Quick Fire Plan), priority of fires, a minimum of 5 targets, knowledge of available fire support assets, order and timing of target engagement, duration of fires, references, H-hour, and a pencil.

Standard: Per the references and within 20 minutes.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Obtain the commander's guidance.
2. Complete DA Form 5368-R.
3. Issue situation report and warning order to the appropriate Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) and firing units.
4. Collect information on the availability and status of mortars, Field Artillery (FA), Naval Gunfire (NGF), and Close Air Support (CAS) to support the mission.
5. Select targets.
6. Obtain the commander's approval of the targets.
7. Complete and transmit the target list portion of DA Form 5368-R.
8. Schedule targets on DA Form 5368-R, per commander's guidance.
9. Transmit the schedules to the firing units.
10. Brief the observers.
11. Report to the commander when the firing units are ready.
12. Amend the plan, as necessary, based on the situation and the commander's desires.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-20-40 Fire Support For Brigade Operations (Heavy)
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 409

RFS:

Plan for the employment of supporting arms

Condition: Given a map and a mission order with a commander's intent for fire support.

Standard: To support the scheme of maneuver in accordance with higher headquarters' order and commander's intent for fire support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine organic and non-organic fire support assets available.
2. Identify fire support control measures.
3. Plan targets in support of the scheme of maneuver.
4. Identify priority targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions/avenues of approach.
5. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
6. Receive target list from higher headquarters.
7. Analyze higher headquarters' target list.
8. Make changes to fire support plan.
9. Integrate fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
10. Disseminate fire support plan.
11. Adjust the fire support plan based on METT-TSL.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-7 MAGTF Fires
 2. FMFM 6-18 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
 3. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
 4. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
 5. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 413

RFS:

Employ supporting arms

Condition: Given an operation order, a radio, call signs and frequencies, required weapons, equipment, and a priority of supporting arms.

Standard: To achieve desired effect on target that supports the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Position observer(s) to best observe the target and support the scheme of maneuver.
3. Determine target location.
4. Determine type of fires available.
5. Determine appropriate munition for selected target.
6. Plan for integration of fires to achieve a combined arms effect.
7. Establish communications with supporting agencies.
8. Deliver request for fires.
9. Adjust fires.
10. Transmit battle damage assessment.
11. Complete mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Supporting arms include direct fire, indirect fire, and close air support.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Artillery unit
2. Close Air Support (CAS) aircraft / Forward Air Controller (FAC)
3. Mortar unit
4. Maneuver/Training area
5. CAST - Combined Arms Staff Trainer
6. TSFO - Trainer Support Forward Observer

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
 2. MCRP 3-16A Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Targeting Process
 3. FMFM 6-18.1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support System
 4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
 5. FMFM 2-7 MAGTF Fires
 6. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 423

RFS:

Communicate using a AN/PRC-119 field radio in single channel mode

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PRC-119 field radio and a distant site, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By transmitting a properly formatted message.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place battery in battery box, and mate connectors.
2. Close battery box cover, and secure using latches.
3. Screw the whip antenna into the antenna base, and hand tighten.
4. Mate the antenna base with the RT ANT connector and hand tighten.
5. Connect the handset connector to the AUD/DATA connector, by ensuring the keys of the handset connector and the AUD/DATA connector are aligned. Then push the handset connector onto the AUD/DATA connector and twist clockwise to lock into place.
6. Obtain an authorized operating frequency.
7. Set the Function switch to LD.
8. Set the Mode switch to SC.
9. Set the COMSEC switch to PT.
10. Set CHAN switch to MAN, CUE, or desired channel where frequency is to be stored.
11. Press the FREQ button on the keyboard.
12. Press the CLR button on the keyboard.
13. Enter the numbers of the new frequency, using the keyboard buttons
14. Press the STO button on the keyboard.
15. Repeat steps 1 through 8 for additional frequencies that are required.
16. Set FCTN switch SQ ON for normal operating procedures.
17. Adjust the VOL control to set the loudness of the received signal.
18. Transmit a properly formatted message.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator's manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 424

RFS:

Communicate using a AN/PRC-119 field radio in frequency hopping mode

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PRC-119 field radio, a loaded ECCM fill device, and a distant station, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By loading a frequency hopping fill into the radio and conducting a radio check with the distant station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the field radio for operation.
2. Turn on the field radio.
3. Make sure that the ECCM fill device is loaded.
4. Connect ECCM fill device to RT connector AUD/FILL using fill cable.
5. Set RT FCTN to LD.
6. Set RT MODE to FH.
7. Set CHAN to position where data is to be loaded (NCS will direct you).
8. Set ECCM fill device select switch to position containing the desired data.
9. Set ECCM fill device function switch to ON.
10. Press LOAD. Display will cycle as shown, and a beep is heard.
11. Press STO. Display will blink and show STOL followed by the first digit of the data.
12. Change ECCM fill device select switch to position containing data desired next.
13. Press LOAD. Display will cycle as shown, and a beep is heard.
14. Press STO. Then press the number button of the channel in which the data is to be stored. Display will blink and show STO followed by the channel number in which the data was stored.
15. Set ECCM fill device function switch to OFF.
16. Disconnect ECCM fill device.
17. Set RT switches, as needed, for normal operation.
18. Conduct a radio check with distant station in frequency hopping mode to verify proper operation of the radio.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-6 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radios Pocket Guide
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0302 - A - 439

RFS:

Transmit a Casualty Report (CasRep)

Condition: Given a map, a casualty, and a radio, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By including each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Transmit casualty's name, initials, and last 4 digits of social security number.
2. Transmit date and time of incident.
3. Transmit 6 digit grid location of casualty.
4. Transmit type of wound.
5. Transmit portion of body effected.
6. Transmit seriousness of the wound.
7. Transmit requirement for MEDEVAC, if appropriate.
8. Transmit the activity in which the casualty was engaged.
9. Transmit the cause of the wound.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 453

RFS:

Direct the MEDEVAC of a casualty

Condition: Given a unit in a tactical environment that has sustained casualty/casualties.

Standard: To evacuate casualty/casualties with minimal impact on unit mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Direct the application of medical treatment.
2. Direct the movement of casualty/casualties to an established casualty collection point.
3. Identify precedence assigned to the casualty.
4. Identify casualty/casualties requiring evacuation.
5. Submit a casualty report to higher headquarters.
6. Make arrangement/request for evacuation by most appropriate and available means.
7. Direct preparation of casualty/casualties for movement.
8. Move casualty to designated evacuation point.
9. Conduct link-up and turnover casualties.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-02G First Aid

EVENT: 0302 - A - 466

RFS:

Lead a unit in a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) environment

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct operations in an NBC environment.

Standard: To maintain an effective combat force after the NBC attack, and accomplish the higher headquarters' mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Supervise and enforce preparations for the appropriate MOPP level.
2. Supervise maintenance of protection, detection, and decontamination equipment.
3. Execute assigned mission.
4. Apply proper detection and protection procedures before, during, and after an NBC attack.
5. Conduct reconnaissance, monitoring, and survey.
6. Submit NBC reports to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct decontamination.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF NBC Defense Operations
 2. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook
 3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 5. FMFM 3-11 Chemical Operations Principals and Fundamentals
 6. FM 3-4 NBC Protection
 7. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
 8. FMFM 11-20/FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance
 9. MCRP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
 10. MCRP 3-37B Field Behavior of NBC Agents
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 474

RFS:

Transmit Helicopter Landing Zone (HLZ) brief

Condition: Given a map, radio, and a landing zone, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By including each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine frequency.
2. Transmit mission number.
3. Transmit location of landing zone.
4. Transmit unit call sign.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Transmit method of HLZ marking.
6. Transmit wind direction and velocity.
7. Transmit the elevation, size, and shape of the HLZ.
8. Transmit the location, size, and type of any obstacles.
9. Transmit friendly positions.
10. Transmit known and suspected enemy positions.
11. Transmit time, direction, and distance last enemy fire was receive
12. Transmit clearance to fire, if authorized.
13. Transmit approach and retirement directions.
14. Transmit quantity of personnel and equipment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Helicopter landing zone

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 7-40 Helicopter Insertion and Extraction
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 500

RFS:

Lead a unit in preparations for combat

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct combat operations.

Standard: To ensure unit is prepared to accomplish the mission in accordance with higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct Mission, Enemy, Troops, Terrain-Time (METT-T) analysis.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Task organize the unit for preparation.
4. Make a tentative plan.
5. Arrange reconnaissance.
6. Make reconnaissance.
7. Establish control measures.
8. Coordinate fire support.
9. Complete the plan.
10. Issue the order.
11. Forecast resupply requirements for sustainment of combat operation
12. Supervise inspections and weapons tests.
13. Conduct and supervise rehearsals.
14. Conduct communication checks.
15. Communicate plan to higher headquarters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task applies to all combat operations.
2. Operational Risk Management (ORM) should be incorporated into the planning process.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCDP 5 Planning
 4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 5. FMFRP 0-6 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 501

RFS:

Lead a unit in operations within stated Rules of Engagement (ROE)

Condition: Given a unit, an order, and Rules of Engagement (ROE).

Standard: To ensure unit conforms to stated Rules of Engagement (ROE).

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Analyze stated Rules of Engagement (ROEs).
2. Request clarification of Roes, as required.
3. Disseminate Roes.
4. Conduct ROE situational rehearsals.
5. Execute mission.
6. Supervise compliance with Roes.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare
 2. MCRP 5-12.1B Treaties Governing Land Warfare
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 502

RFS:

Lead a unit in crossing a danger area

Condition: Given a unit, and an order with a mission requiring movement through a danger area.

Standard: To cross area quickly and safely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Halt unit short of the danger area in a secure area.
2. Establish all around security.
3. Identify recognizable near and far side rally points.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of near side and danger area.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Determine crossing method.
6. Designate near and far side security elements and responsibilities.
7. Establish far side security.
8. Execute crossing.
9. Ensure accountability.
10. Continue with the mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Danger area should be avoided unless it is determined to be most practical after METT-TSL analysis.
2. Applies to danger areas in any environment (i.e. jungle, MOUT).

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
 4. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 503

RFS:

Lead a unit in a passage of lines as stationary unit

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission requiring another unit to conduct rearward or forward passage through friendly lines.

Standard: To move unit through lines in accordance with higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Issue passage of lines warning order.
2. Establish and occupy contact points.
3. Conduct coordination and exchange information with moving unit leader.
4. Provide guides at link-up and passage point(s).
5. Collocate with moving unit leader to observe critical areas and to make timely decisions during conduct of the passage.
6. Ensure accountability of moving unit personnel and vehicles.
7. Conduct formal turnover of fire support assets and operating area. Communicate turnover with supporting agencies and higher headquarters.
8. Continue with mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 504

RFS:

Lead a unit in patrolling operations

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct patrolling operations.

Standard: To achieve intent of higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct map reconnaissance of assigned area and objective.
2. Request additional required assets and/or support from higher headquarters.
3. Submit patrol plan, overlay, and fire support plan to higher headquarters.
4. Conduct forward unit coordination prior to departure.
5. Conduct passage of friendly lines/insertion.
6. Execute patrol.
7. Submit appropriate reports, as required.
8. Conduct passage of friendly lines/extract.
9. Debrief the patrol.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Includes reconnaissance patrols and combat patrols.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 505

RFS:

Lead a unit in a movement to contact

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to gain or reestablish contact with the enemy.

Standard: To reach march objective, in accordance with the higher headquarters' order.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Update intelligence information early in the planning.
2. Deploy available reconnaissance elements early.
3. Begin movement on time, as specified in higher headquarters' order.
4. Employ movement techniques and formations appropriate to factors of METT-TSL.
5. Report activity and contact to higher headquarters.
6. Maintain control and location of subordinate elements
7. On contact, commit required sized element and fire while retaining control of main body, in order to conceal actual size of force.
8. Maintain contact with enemy forces.
9. Reach objective at time specified in higher headquarters order.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Reporting contact includes reaching march objective with no enemy contact.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 506

RFS:

Lead a unit in a link-up

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct a link-up.

Standard: To conduct a coordinated and controlled link-up, in accordance with higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Stationary unit identifies link-up site.
2. Stationary unit contacts moving unit.
3. Stationary unit occupies designated link-up point(s).
4. Moving unit halts short of link-up point(s).
5. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal to stationary unit.
6. Moving unit and stationary unit conduct link-up and conduct final coordination.
7. Stationary unit provides guides through link-up point(s).

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0302 - A - 507

RFS:

Lead a unit in a convoy

Condition: Given a unit and an order to conduct a convoy.

Standard: To ensure the convoy moves at the stated speed, time, interval, and order, and arrives at the objective location at the time prescribed in the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine number of vehicles, type of convoy, and formation.
2. Assign assistant convoy commander and security commander.
3. Develop and disseminate plan for communications, disabled vehicles, bump plan, actions at halts, and security enroute.
4. Direct hardening of vehicles.
5. Stage vehicles for movement.
6. Conduct movement following prescribed route and designated speeds.
7. Report progress to higher headquarters using tactical control measures.
8. Maintain security during movement and at halts.
9. Respond appropriately to contact.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 4-9 Motor Transport
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 508

RFS:

Lead a unit in an ambush

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct an ambush.

Standard: To destroy enemy and equipment in the kill zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct reconnaissance of ambush site.
2. Identify ambush site and limits of kill zone.
3. Organize unit into assault element, support element, and security element.
4. Leave security element at the ORP (if the intent is to return to th ORP) and occupy the ambush site.
5. Assess the size of enemy and the associated risk.
6. Initiate ambush with direct fire weapon.
7. Signal shift and cease fires, as appropriate.
8. Conduct EPW search.
9. Signal withdrawal from ambush site.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

10. Employ indirect fires on ambush site or smoke to cover withdrawal.
11. Ensure accountability of all personnel and equipment.
12. Conduct debrief.
13. Provide SITREP to higher headquarters.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Ambush can be conducted as part of a larger mission (i.e., movement to contact, deliberate ambush patrol, etc.).
2. Includes counter-mechanized ambush.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 3. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 4. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 510

RFS:

Lead a unit in an infiltration

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct an infiltration.

Standard: To move through an enemy area without disclosing the size, composition, or intentions of the unit to the enemy and to accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct map reconnaissance of the area and gather pertinent intelligence.
2. Identify control measures, to include infiltration lanes, check points for reporting, and link-up point(s).
3. Task organize the unit into infiltrating elements.
4. Release separate infiltration elements in order to avoid friendly encounters and to minimize exposure to the enemy.
5. Conduct infiltration.
6. Conduct link-up.
7. Debrief infiltration elements.
8. Report enemy positions to higher headquarters
9. Continue with assigned mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Task also applies to exfiltration.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0302 - A - 511 RFS:

Lead a unit in a passage of lines as moving unit

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission requiring conduct of a rearward or forward passage through friendly lines.

Standard: To move unit through lines, in accordance with higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Issue passage of lines warning/fragmentary order.
2. Conduct radio coordination with stationary unit.
3. Ensure link-up with stationary unit guides at prescribed time.
4. Collocate with stationary unit leader to observe critical areas and to make timely decisions during conduct of the passage.
5. Conduct movement through passage point(s) through covered and concealed routes.
6. Ensure accountability of personnel and vehicles.
7. Conduct formal turnover of fire support assets and operating area. Communicate turnover with supporting agencies and higher headquarters.
8. Continue with mission.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 513 RFS:

Lead a unit in an attack

Condition: Given a unit, an objective, and an order with a mission to conduct an attack.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
3. Initiate prearranged fires.
4. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
5. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
6. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attack
8. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
9. Avoid committing units in a piecemeal fashion.
10. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
11. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance before transitioning into the consolidation.
12. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
13. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Task can be performed as a deliberate or a hasty attack.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 514

RFS:

Lead a unit in an attack on a fortified strong point

Condition: Given a unit, a fortified enemy strong point, and an order with a mission to conduct an attack on a fortified strongpoint.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Task organize the unit to include assault element, security element and support element.
3. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
4. Initiate prearranged fires, to include suppression and obscuration fires on enemy observation posts.
5. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
6. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attack
7. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
8. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
9. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
10. Breach obstacles without committing additional forces.
11. Avoid committing units in a piecemeal fashion.
12. Maintain momentum of the attack by rotating lead unit and supplies
13. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance, before transitioning into the consolidation.
15. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
16. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 515

RFS:

Lead a unit in a mechanized attack

Condition: Given a unit, an attached mechanized unit, an objective, and an order with a mission to conduct a mechanized attack.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Coordinate with mechanized unit.
3. Incorporate mechanized assets, firepower, and mobility into plan an order.
4. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
5. Ensure vehicles remain dispersed in covered and concealed positions
6. Ensure all vehicles start engines together to disguise the size of the force.
7. Initiate prearranged fires.
8. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
9. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
10. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
11. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires, to support successes.
12. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attack
13. Avoid committing units in a piecemeal fashion.
14. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
15. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance, before transitioning into the consolidation.
16. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
17. Issue fragmentary orders to units, in preparation for follow-on missions.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-7J Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 3. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 4. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 516

RFS:

Lead a unit in a raid

Condition: Given a unit, an objective, and an order with a mission to conduct a raid.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Coordinate requirements for insertion and extraction from the objective.
2. Position unit for departure.
3. Conduct movement to the objective area.
4. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
5. Position assets to isolate objective area.
6. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
7. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct withdrawal to designated location.
9. Conduct debrief.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. FMFM 7-32 Raid Operations
 3. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
 4. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 517

RFS:

Lead a unit in an attack in an urban environment

Condition: Given a unit, an objective within urban environment, and an order with a mission to conduct operations in urbanized terrain.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack, to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Task organize the unit to include assault element, security element and support element.
3. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
4. Isolate the object through direct and indirect fires.
5. Initiate prearranged fires, to include suppression and obscuration fires on enemy observation posts.
6. Cross line of departure at the specified time.
7. Gain a foothold in limited objectives.
8. Maintain communications with subordinate units.
9. Report crossing of tactical control measures and securing interim objectives to higher headquarters.
10. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
11. Breach obstacles, create friendly building accesses, and close off unnecessary accesses, without committing additional forces.
12. Maintain momentum of the attack by rotating lead unit and supplies
13. Seize the assigned objective.
14. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
15. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. MOUT Facility / MOUT training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 3. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 518

RFS:

Lead a unit in the breach of an obstacle

Condition: Given a platoon, an obstacle, and an order with a mission to breach an obstacle.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Report obstacle location, type, and size to higher headquarters.
2. Establish local security in an overwatch position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Assess obstacle, enemy situation, and terrain to determine breach point and assets required to include supporting arms.
4. Request additional assets based on METT-TSL.
5. Task organize unit into a breach element and a support element.
6. Employ fires to suppress enemy.
7. Consider use of smoke to obscure target to the enemy.
8. Move the breach element to the breach point, using available cover and concealment.
9. Employ demolitions, as required.
10. Ensure booby traps, unexploded munitions, and breach lanes are clearly marked for day and night movement.
11. Establish security beyond the breach point.
12. Move all remaining elements through the breach lane.
13. Report location of breach lane to higher headquarters.
14. Continue with assigned mission.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. Obstacle

REFERENCES

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
 2. FMFM 13-7 MAGTF Breaching Operations
 3. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 519

RFS:

Lead a unit in a night attack

Condition: Given a platoon, an objective, and an order with a specified or implied mission to conduct an attack at night.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy and to provide guides for main body.
2. Identify level of support and type of night attack (supported/non supported, illuminated/nonilluminated).
3. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
4. Cross line of departure at the specified time.
5. Maintain light and noise discipline during movement phase.
6. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
7. Initiate attack with appropriate illumination and direct fire weapons
8. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Breach obstacles without committing additional forces.
10. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
11. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance, before transitioning into the consolidation.
12. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
13. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 520

RFS:

Direct the employment of medium machineguns in offensive operations

Condition: Given a medium machinegun unit and an order with a mission to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective medium machinegun fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support for machinegun units.
2. Provide appropriate signals for commence, shift, and cease.
3. Direct positioning of machinegun units to best observe and support scheme of maneuver.
4. Provide infantry security for machinegun unit.
5. Ensure fires commence, shift, and cease on signal to support the attack.
6. Anticipate displacement requirements to ensure continuous support.
7. Direct positioning of machinegun units in preparation for counterattack.
8. Reposition machinegun units for defense.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If weapons platoon assets are attached, employment is directed by attached unit commander.
2. This includes all offensive operations to include MOUT/mechanized/fortified strong point.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
3. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 5. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 6. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 521 RFS:

Lead a heavy machinegun platoon in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given a mounted or dismounted heavy machinegun platoon and an order with a task to support offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective heavy machinegun fire in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Advise commander on employment of machineguns in the offense.
2. Attach/detach units, per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the attack.
5. Displace, as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all offensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 522 RFS:

Lead an 81mm mortar platoon in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given an 81mm mortar platoon and an order with a task to support offensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat. Planning and subsequent orders include priority targets, priority of fires, scheme of maneuver, method of employment, method of displacement, rates of fire, and signals to begin and cease on priority targets.
2. Position to support the attack.
3. Provide fires to support the attack.
4. Displace, as required.
5. Consolidate and reorganize.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all offensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
 4. IP 2-32 Anti-mechanized Weapons
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 523

RFS:

Lead an anti-armor platoon in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given an anti-armor platoon and an order with a task to support offensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/detach units, per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the assault.
5. Displace, as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack and exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all offensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies, and Battalions
 2. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 526

RFS:

Lead a unit in defensive operations

Condition: Given a unit, an assigned area or sector from which to defend, and an order with a mission to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct map and physical reconnaissance of assigned area to determine the general lay of the defense, natural obstacles, likely enemy avenues of approach, and adjacent units.
2. Establish local security beyond proposed defensive area.
3. Coordinate with adjacent units.
4. Develop counterattack plan.
5. Establish crew served positions, ensuring mutual supporting fires. Identify final protective lines.
6. Identify subordinate unit primary positions. Ensure units tie in, at least by fire.
7. Identify dead space and cover by indirect fire.
8. Register final protective fires.
9. Ensure communications are established between units and to listenin post/observation posts (LP/OP).
10. Designate alternate and supplementary positions.
11. Collect subordinate unit fire plan sketches. Submit consolidated fire plan sketch to higher headquarters.
12. Ensure positions are being improved and noise and light discipline is enforced. Ensure the sleep plan is implemented.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all defensive operations, to include MOUT and countermechanized.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
 2. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 527

RFS:

Direct the employment of medium machineguns in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given a medium machinegun unit and an order with a mission to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective medium machinegun fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support and tentative primary defensive positions.
2. Determine type of fires to be employed, target precedence, and engagement criteria.
3. Emplace machineguns to best support defense.
4. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Ensure coordination is conducted with adjacent units.
6. Compile completed range cards, and ensure integration of fires, in accordance with defensive plan.
7. Supervise registration of fires.
8. Supervise delivery of fires for the defense and counterattack.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If weapons platoon assets are attached, employment is directed by attached unit commander.
2. This includes all defensive operations, to include MOUT and counter mechanized strong point.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 528

RFS:

Lead a heavy machinegun platoon in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given a heavy machinegun platoon and an order with a task to support defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/Detach units, per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the defensive operation.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
5. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all defensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0302 - A - 529

RFS:

Lead an 81mm mortar platoon in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given an 81mm mortar platoon and an order with a task to support defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat. Planning and subsequent orders include location of Final Protective Fires (FPFs) and preplanned targets, method of employment, rates of fire and signals to begin and cease fires on Final Protective Fires (FPFs).
2. Position to support the defense.
3. Emplace security for the platoon firing position.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
4. Register targets, time permitting.
5. Provide fires to support the defense.
6. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all defensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. FMFM 6-18 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
 4. IP 2-32 Anti-mechanized Weapons
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 530

RFS:

Lead an anti-armor platoon in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given an anti-armor platoon and an order with a task to support defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/Detach units per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the defense.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
5. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 531

RFS:

Lead a unit in consolidation

Condition: Given a unit, an order, and a completed combat mission.

Standard: To prepare for follow-on missions and to repel enemy counterattack.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Establish a hasty defense.
2. Pursue enemy by fire.
3. Prepare for continuation of the attack.
4. Continue reorganization to repel counterattack.
5. Inspect vehicle for completion of first echelon maintenance.
6. Conduct accountability of unit.
7. Direct required MedEvacs.
8. Direct redistribution/resupply.
9. Process enemy prisoners of war.
10. Submit required combat reports.
11. Prepare for follow-on mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 532

RFS:

Direct the resupply of a unit

Condition: Given a unit and an order with an implied or specified task requiring the resupply of the unit.

Standard: To ensure the unit can logistically support the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Begin detailed logistics planning upon receipt of higher headquarters order.
2. Identify actual, forecasted, and potential shortages in supplies and operational equipment.
3. Consolidate subordinate unit resupply requests.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Submit requests early in planning in order to not impair current or future operations.
5. Coordinate link-up point, resupply point(s), distribution point(s), and storage point(s) for equipment and ammunition.
6. Designate a security element and a recovery and distribution element.
7. Ensure supplies are tactically distributed, while maintaining security.
8. Continue with assigned mission.

REFERENCES

1. FM 17-98 Scout Platoon
 2. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Reconnaissance Battalion
 3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 533

RFS:

Direct the employment of assault units in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given an assault unit and an order to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the assault unit in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method and type of support for the assault unit.
2. Request additional assets (demolitions, rockets, etc.).
3. Position assault unit with infantry security.
4. Direct the employment of rocket assets.
5. Direct the employment of demolitions.
6. Position assault unit to best support consolidation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 534

RFS:

Direct the employment of assault units in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given an assault unit and an order to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the assault unit in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support and tentative primary defensive positions.
2. Determine type of fires to be employed, target precedence, and engagement criteria.
3. Consider employment of assault unit to assist in construction of obstacles.
4. Emplace assault units to best support the defense.
5. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
6. Ensure coordination is conducted with adjacent units.
7. Compile completed range cards and ensure integration of fires, in accordance with defensive plan.
8. Supervise delivery of fires for the defense and counterattack.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. FM 5-102 Countermobility
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 535

RFS:

Direct the employment of 60mm mortars in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given a 60mm mortar section and an order to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the 60mm mortar section in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of employment, priority targets, priority of fires method of displacement, signals, and logistics.
2. Integrate employment plan with external fire support assets.
3. Designate initial and subsequent firing positions.
4. Anticipate and plan resupply requirements.
5. Anticipate displacement requirements, in order to maintain support.
6. Monitor Calls For Fire (CFF).
7. Deconflict requests for 60mm mortar fires.
8. Position 60mm mortar section to support consolidation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 536

RFS:

Direct the employment of 60mm mortars in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given a 60mm mortar section and an order to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the 60mm mortar section in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of employment, priority targets, priority of fires tentative primary firing position, signals, and logistics.
2. Integrate employment plan with external fire support assets.
3. Position mortars to best support defense and counterattack plan.
4. Designate alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Ensure mortars sink base plates prior to registration fires.
6. Identify Final Protective Fire (FPF) location.
7. Register FPF.
8. Register additional planned targets, time and ammunition permitting
9. Ensure data for FPF is maintained on guns, when not firing on other targets.
10. Anticipate and plan resupply requirements.
11. Monitor Call For Fire (CFF).
12. Deconflict requests for 60mm mortar fires.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 539

RFS:

Prepare a target list worksheet and scheduling worksheets

Condition: Given a tactical scenario, a map with overlay, plotting equipment, a list of targets, a scheduling worksheet, a target list worksheet, the references, and commander's guidance.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Identify the 5 types of target symbols.
2. Plot targets on an overlay.
3. Prepare and submit a target list worksheet.
4. Prepare a scheduling worksheet for a preparation/counter preparatio fire (based on the tactical situation), a series, and a group.
5. Utilize the NATO/ABCA targeting numbering system.
6. Identify fire support coordination principles.
7. Identify uses of multiple target engagement (I.e., group, series, o program).

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-20-40 Fire Support For Brigade Operations (Heavy)
-

EVENT: 0302 - A - 590

RFS:

Conduct small unit training

Condition: Given a unit, required external support and equipment, and a mission.

Standard: By ensuring each Marine or team achieves the training standard, and to prepare unit for future combat operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the task to be trained from the platoon training schedule
2. Review the training standard to determine required resources and th most appropriate method(s) for delivering instruction.
3. Request the required resources from higher headquarters.
4. Prepare a training outline which explains how the training will be conducted.
5. Prepare the training area.
6. Assemble the student Marines.
7. Explain the training standard to the students.
8. Conduct a safety brief.
9. Conduct the instruction, in accordance with the training outline.
10. Evaluate the performance of the student Marines or teams, in accordance with the training standard.
11. Remediate student Marines or teams that do not master the training standard.
12. Submit a training after action report to higher headquarters.
13. Update individual training records.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX B

SMALL ARMS WEAPONS INSTRUCTOR COURSE

Description

The Small Arms Weapons Instructor Course (SAWIC) provides the knowledge and skills in the fundamentals and advanced marksmanship principals and techniques with small arms, range operations, and field firing range set up in support of unit training requirements.

Purpose

None.

Administrative Notes

The tasks for SAWIC are not included in this chapter since the course is not exclusive or unique to the 03 occupational field.

Prerequisites

The Infantry Weapons Officer will have completed the Infantry Officers Course (Appendix A). There are no prerequisites to attend SAWIC.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX C

INFANTRY RIFLEMAN COURSE

Description

The Infantry Rifleman Course is located at Infantry Training Battalion (ITB), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon successful completion of the Infantry Rifleman Course, a Marine will receive MOS 0311.

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Rifleman, Assistant Automatic Rifleman, and Automatic Rifleman in an infantry squad.

Administrative Notes

The enclosed tasks represent the 0311 specific tasks. The remainder of the tasks are drawn from MCO 1510.89A MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) as directed by MCO 1510.121 MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) PROGRAM.

Prerequisites

The Marine will have completed Marine Corps Boot Camp.

EVENT: 0311 - A - 017

RFS:

Engage immediate threat targets with an M16A2 service rifle

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle, ammunition, a sector of fire, and twelve stationary, moving, and limited exposure targets within 50 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving double hits on 9 of 12 targets presented.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place rifle in Condition 1.
2. Place the large rear sight aperture (0-2) up.
3. Assume a standing firing position.
4. Detect targets by searching and assessing the assigned sector of fire.
5. Present rifle from the ready.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. As the rifle is being presented, take the rifle off SAFE and place the trigger finger on the trigger.
7. When the front sight post intersects with the target, engage by firing 2 shots.
8. Search and assess the assigned sector of fire for additional target
9. Place rifle on SAFE.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M16A2 service rifle with 10 to 20 man-size targets (static, limited exposure, and moving) at ranges of less than 100 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M16A2	5.56mm service rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A059	CTG, 5.56mm, BALL, M855	24 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 021 RFS:

Combat reload an M16A2 service rifle

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By reloading while maintaining awareness of any threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Seek cover.
2. Draw the rifle in close to your body so you can see what you are doing and retain positive control of the magazine.
3. Press the magazine release button.
4. Remove the partially filled or empty magazine and retain it on your person, if time permits.
5. Withdraw a filled magazine from the magazine pouch.
6. Fully insert the filled magazine into the magazine well and tug downward on the magazine to ensure it is properly seated.
7. If needed, release or press the bolt catch to allow the bolt carrier to move forward or pull the charging handle fully to the rear and release.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range (if ammunition is used)

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M16A2 5.56mm service rifle
DODIC Quantity
A059 CTG, 5.56mm, BALL, M855 30 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-01A Rifle Marksmanship
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 027 RFS:
Engage targets with an M16A2 service rifle using an AN/PVS-4 night vision sight
Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle, an AN/PVS-4 night vision sight, ammunition, a sector of fire, and twelve unknown distance, moving, and limited exposure targets from 50 to 250 meters, while wearing a fighting load.
Standard: By achieving a hit on 8 of 12 targets presented.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place rifle in Condition 1.
2. Assume a firing position that provides cover, concealment, and good observation of the assigned sector of fire.
3. Detect targets by searching and assessing the assigned sector of fire.
4. Present the rifle from the ready.
5. Engage target.
6. Search and assess the assigned sector of fire for additional target
7. Place rifle on SAFE.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M16A2 service rifle with 10 to 20 man-size targets (static, limited exposure, and moving) at ranges of 50 to 300 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M16A2 5.56mm service rifle
DODIC Quantity
A059 CTG, 5.56mm, BALL, M855 24 each

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-01A Rifle Marksmanship
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 030 RFS:
Zero an AN/PEQ-2A Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light to an M16A2

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

service rifle

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PEQ-2A Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light, AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, an M16A2 service rifle, ammunition, and a 25 meter zeroing target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving point of aim and point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the weapon and place in Condition 4.
2. Mount the AN/PEQ-2A on a M16A2 service rifle.
3. Set the adjusters to the zero pre-set position.
4. Turn the aiming beam on in the low power setting (AIM LO). In high light condition, use (AIM HI).
5. Don the AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles and put into action.
6. Place weapon in Condition 1.
7. Assume a supported prone position.
8. Press the cable switch button to activate the aiming beam and aim center of mass.
9. Fire 3 rounds.
10. Locate the center of the shot group relative to the designated strike point.
11. Adjust the aiming beam adjusters to move the center of the shot group relative to the designated strike point.
12. Fire another 3 rounds and again observe the center of the shot group relative to the designated strike point. When 2 out of 3 rounds are in the designated strike zone, the AN/PEQ-2A is zeroed for 250 meters.
13. Once the aiming beam is zeroed, rotate the selector knob to the DUAL LO, DUAL LO/HI, or DUAL HI/HI mode to observe both aiming and illumination beams.
14. Rotate the illumination beam adjusters to align the illumination beam with the aiming beam.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M16A2 service rifle with AN/PEQ-2A 25 meter zeroing targets at 25 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M16A2	5.56mm service rifle	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A059	CTG, 5.56mm, BALL, M855	5 each

REFERENCES

1. TM 10470A-12&P/1A Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual, Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light, AN/PEQ-2A
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0311 - A - 031

RFS:

Engage targets with an M16A2 service rifle using an AN/PEQ-2A Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle, a AN/PEQ-2A Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light, AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, ammunition, a sector of fire, and twelve unknown distance, moving, and limited exposure targets from 50 to 250 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving a hit on 8 of 12 targets presented.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Don the AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles.
2. Place rifle in Condition 1.
3. Assume a firing position that provides cover, concealment, and good observation of the assigned sector of fire.
4. Detect targets by searching the assigned sector of fire.
5. Present the rifle from the ready.
6. Press the cable switch button to activate the aiming beam and aim center mass of the target.
7. Engage target.
8. Search and assess the assigned sector of fire for additional target
9. Place rifle on SAFE.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M16A2 service rifle with 10 to 20 man-size targets (static, limited exposure, and moving) at ranges of 50 to 300 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M16A2	5.56mm service rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A059	CTG, 5.56mm, BALL, M855	12 each

REFERENCES

1. TM 10470A-12&P/1A Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual, Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light, AN/PEQ-2A
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 041

RFS:

Perform ten meter firing for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, ammunition, M40 field protective mask, NBC gloves, and a basic machine gun target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving 35 points of 51 points in accordance with the FM 23-14.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure 2 threads are showing on the front sight post.
2. Center the rear peep sight by rotating it clockwise as far as it will go, then rotating counter-clockwise 5 clicks or half turns.
3. Center the rear sight windage knob by rotating it toward the muzzle until the peep sight is completely to the right, then rotate the windage knob toward the butt stock 12 clicks to the left.
4. Set elevation knob a range of 700 meters.
5. Assume a bipod supported prone position.
6. Fire 3 single rounds loaded individually at the center base of the aiming point on aiming paster 1.
7. Correct for windage by rotating the windage knob to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
8. Correct for elevation by rotating the peep sight to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
9. Repeat steps 5 through 8.
10. Repeat steps 5 though 9 utilizing aiming paster 2.
11. Using controlled burst firing, fire two 3 round bursts on pasters and 4, in no time limit.
12. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
13. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
14. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
15. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
16. Fire four 3 round bursts on pasters 1 through 4, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 20 seconds.
17. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
18. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, NBC, in a time limit of 40 seconds.
19. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
20. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 40 seconds.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Performance steps 1 through 10 are for 10 meter zero. Marines unable to zero with 12 rounds should be removed from the firing line for remedial training.
2. There is no reason to record the 10 meter zero, because it applies only to firing at the 10 meter basic machine gun target.
3. Performance steps 11, 13, and 15 are for practice.
4. Performance steps 16, 18, and 20 are for score.
5. One point is allowed for each round impacting within the scoring space with a maximum of three points per space. The maximum possible score is 51 points.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M249 squad automatic weapon with basic machinegun target at 10 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon	
<u>DODIC</u>			<u>Quantity</u>
A064	CTG, 5.56mm, 4&1 LINKED, F/SAW		108 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 043

RFS:

Rush with an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, 50 meters to rush with firing points which provide cover for firing from the bipod supported prone position, ammunition, plastic ammunition boxes, single and double E-silhouette targets at distances of 75 to 400 meters from the starting position, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By rushing from one point to another, achieving hits on 14 of 21 targets exposed and having ammunition remaining to engage the final target exposed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assume the bipod supported prone position.
2. Load a belt of 84 rounds of ammunition.
3. Place the weapon in Condition 1.
4. From the bipod supported prone position, raise the head and select new position.
5. Slowly lower the head, draw arms inward, cock right leg, and prepar to rush.
6. Raise the body by straightening both arms in one movement.
7. Spring to your feet, stepping off with the left foot.
8. Keeping a low profile, advance forward grasping the M249 by the carrying handle with the right hand and lifting the weapon to the under arm carry position while sliding the left hand forward and grasping the hand guards. If executing a long rush move right hand from the carryin handle to the pistol grip.
9. Upon reaching the next covered and concealed position, stop and plant both feet in place.
10. Drop quickly to the knees fall forward, breaking your fall with th heal of the left hand.
11. Place the M249 squad automatic weapon out forward as your body comes to rest on the deck.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Grasp the pistol grip with the right hand and place the non-firing hand on the butt stock of the weapon and pull down and back into the pocket of the shoulder and assume the bipod supported prone position.
13. Search and assess the sector of fire.
14. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 175 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 150 meter distance, within a time limit of 17 seconds.
15. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
16. Fire two 3 round bursts at a double E-silhouette target at the 150 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 150 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 125 meter distance, within a time limit of 25 seconds.
17. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
18. Fire two 3 round bursts at a double E-silhouette target at the 100 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 75 meter distance, within a time limit of 17 seconds.
19. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
20. Fire two 3 round bursts at a double E-silhouette target at the 100 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 125 meter distance, within a time limit of 17 seconds.
21. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
22. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 75 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 125 meter distance, within a time limit of 17 seconds.
23. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
24. Fire two 3 round bursts at a double E-silhouette target at the 100 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 100 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 125 meter distance, within a time limit of 25 seconds.
25. Load a belt of 42 rounds of ammunition.
26. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
27. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 75 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 100 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 125 meter distance, within a time limit of 25 seconds.
28. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
29. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 75 meter distance; fire two 3 round bursts at a second single E-silhouette target at the 75 meter distance, within a time limit of 17 seconds.
30. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
31. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 300 meter distance, within a time limit of 8 seconds.
32. Repeat steps 3 through 13.
33. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at the 400 meter distance, within a time limit of 8 seconds.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Length of rushes should be based on available cover and abilities of the automatic rifleman.
2. Automatic rifleman should dry fire walk-through the course of fire before firing the task.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire and maneuver range at least 50 meters long for M249 squad automatic weapon with various firing points and single and double E-silhouette targets at distances of 75 to 400 meters from the starting position

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A064	CTG, 5.56mm, 4&1 LINKED, F/SAW	84 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 044

RFS:

Perform transition firing for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, ammunition, M40 field protective mask with hood, NBC gloves, and single and double E-silhouette targets from 100 to 400 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving 35 points of 55 points in accordance with the FM 23-14.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare sights for field zeroing.
2. Assume a bipod supported firing position.
3. Load a belt of 12 rounds.
4. Place the weapon in Condition 1.
5. Fire four 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target, at a range of 300 meters, in no time limit to obtain and record a field zero.
6. Load a belt of 66 rounds.
7. Place the weapon in Condition 1.
8. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target, at a range of 200 meters, in a time limit of 5 seconds.
9. Fire two 3 round bursts at a double E-silhouette target, at a range of 400 meters, in a time limit of 10 seconds.
10. Don an M40 field protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
11. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target, at a range of 100 meters, in a time limit of 10 seconds.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Fire two 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target, at a range of 300 meters, in a time limit of 15 seconds.

13. Fire four, 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at 100 meters and a single E-silhouette target at 300 meters, in a time limit of 20 seconds.

14. Stow the M40 field protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.

15. Fire four, 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at 200 meters and a double E-silhouette target at 400 meters, in a time limit of 20 seconds.

16. Fire six, 3 round bursts at a single E-silhouette target at 100 meters, a single E-silhouette target at 200 meters, and a double E-silhouette target at 400 meters, in a time limit of 25 seconds.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Five points are allowed for each target hit, whether the target is hit on the first or second burst. The maximum possible score is 55 points.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A062	CTG, 5.56mm, BALL LINKED	78 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249

EVENT: 0311 - A - 062 RFS:

Perform M203 grenade launcher day qualification

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle with a mounted M203 grenade launcher, training practice and high explosive rounds, M40 field protective mask with hood, NBC gloves, and targets from 90 to 350 meters, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on the target with 10 of 15 rounds within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Field zero the leaf sight from station 1.
2. Field zero the quadrant sight from station 1.
3. Engage a window at 90 to 100 meters and a bunker at 105 to 115 meters with 3 training practice rounds from the kneeling firing position within 2 minutes from station 2.
4. Engage a bunker at 135 to 150 meters and an automatic weapon position at 200 to 250 meters with 3 training practice rounds from the standing position within 2 minutes from station 3.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Engage a troop emplacement at 275 to 300 meters and troops in the open at 325 to 350 meters with 3 training practice rounds from the prone position within 2 minutes from station 4.
6. Don and clear the M40 field protective mask within 9 seconds and secure the hood within 6 seconds.
7. Don the NBC gloves.
8. Engage a bunker at 135 to 150 meters with 3 training practice round from the standing position within 2 minutes from station 3.
9. Engage an automatic weapon position at 200 to 250 meters with 3 training practice rounds from the standing position within 2 minutes from station 3.
10. Remove and stow the M40 field protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Performance steps 1 and 2 are not included in the tabulation of the qualification score.
2. A Marine must achieve a hit with 2 of 3 rounds for each string of fire in order to qualify.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M203 grenade launcher and ammunition with point and area targets from 90 to 350 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M203	40mm grenade launcher	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B519	CTG, 40mm, PRACTICE, M781	15 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-31 40mm Grenade Launchers M203 and M79

EVENT: 0311 - A - 257 RFS:

Engage targets with grenades for distance and accuracy

Condition: Given practice grenades and targets at 20, 30, and 40 meters; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on 2 of 3 targets at each station within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage a fighting position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
2. Engage a trench target at 40 meters with 3 grenades, from the standing position.
3. Engage a mortar position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Engage a troop in the open at 20 meters with 3 grenades, from the alternate prone position.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	12 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-30 Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 258 RFS:

Execute a grenade assault course of fire

Condition: Given practice grenades and targets at 20, 25, and 35, meters; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on 2 of 3 targets at each station, within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage enemy troop in the open from a fighting hole at 35, meters from the standing position, using 1 grenade within 15 seconds.
2. Move to the enemy bunker, approaching from the side.
3. Observe for bunker openings.
4. Engage the bunker through available opening(s) with 1 grenade, within 15 seconds.
5. Move to next available covered position.
6. Engage mortar pit from the kneeling position at 20 meters, with 1 grenade, within 15 seconds.
7. Move to next available covered position.
8. Engage enemy troops behind cover from the alternate prone position, with 1 grenade, within 15 seconds.
9. Move to next available covered position.
10. Engage a trench from the standing position, at 25 meters, with 1 grenade.
11. Move to next available covered position.
12. Engage a vehicle and dismounted troops from the kneeling position, at 25 meters, with 2 grenades, within 15 seconds.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	7 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-30 Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 301 RFS:

Perform operator maintenance on a AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, and authorized clear materials.

Standard: In accordance with TM 11-5855-262-10-2.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Open the carrying case and inventory items.
2. Check the maintenance record, and verify completion of the 180-day service.
3. Inspect all lenses for dirt or fingerprint residue. If necessary, clean and dry lenses with water and lens tissue.
4. Inspect lenses for cracks or damage. Scratches and gouges are acceptable if operation is not affected.
5. Ensure the battery cap and battery cap retainer are present.
6. Remove the battery cap and inspect for moisture, cracks, and corroded or defective spring contacts. Inspect for the presence of preformed packing inside the cap.
7. Rotate diopter adjustment rings to make sure the eye pieces move freely through the range of motion and are not loose.
8. Inspect eye pieces for dirt, dust, and cracked or torn cups. Inspect for bent, broken, or improperly fitting eyecup. If necessary, clean with water.
9. Slide each eye piece back and forth to check for binding or looseness.
10. Rotate objective lens focus ring to ensure free range of movement.
11. Inspect the infinity focus-locking ring for tightness.
12. Inspect for cracked, torn, or missing lens cap. Inspect cord for cuts, damage, or frayed ends. Re-tie ends if necessary.
13. Remove any batteries and turn the switch from reset/OFF to ON to IR/pull. Each position should have a definite stopping point. Inspect for broken or missing knob.
14. Re-install batteries and check IR, and momentary IR if so equipped functions by following the operating instructions in paragraph 2-27.
15. Remove goggles from the head mount while in operation. Goggles automatically shut off.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

16. Inspect head mount for cuts, tears, fraying, holes, cracks, or defective fasteners.
17. Inspect head mount for dirt, dust, or corrosion.
18. Inspect head mount for dirt, dust, or corrosion.
19. Press the socket-release button and check for free motion.
20. Rotate the IR focus lens to ensure free movement.
21. Inspect for dirt, dust, scratches, or damage. If necessary, clean with water and dry with lens tissue. Install compass assembly and turn on goggles. When the illumination button is depressed, compass is visible.
22. Remove all items from the carrying case and shake out loose dirt and foreign material.
23. Inspect the carrying case for tears, cuts, excess wear, or damage to mounting clips.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Night Vision Goggles
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 302

RFS:

Operate AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09500A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Install battery(ies).
2. Don the head mount or helmet mount.
3. Install the goggles into the mount socket.
4. Depress the side buttons and move the goggles fore or aft to set the appropriate eye relief.
5. Adjust straps.
6. Turn the power switch to the on position.
7. Adjust the tilt adjustment lock knob, if helmet mounted.
8. Adjust the eye pieces by sliding them together or apart so each eye can observe the entire field of view.
9. While obstructing view through the right eye piece, rotate the left diopter adjustment ring to obtain the clearest view.
10. Adjust the eye relief distance by pressing the socket release button and sliding the goggles fore or aft to obtain a full field of view.
11. Readjust the diopter adjustment rings for the best image.
12. Observe an object and adjust the objective lens focus until the sharpest image is obtained.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 09500A-10/1 Operator's Manual AN/PVS-7B
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 374

RFS:

Locate an unknown position by resection

Condition: Given a lensatic compass, topographical map, protractor, and map pen.

Standard: By determining a six-digit grid coordinate of an unknown position within 100 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Orient the map.
2. Visually identify 2 known points on the map.
3. Determine the magnetic azimuth to one of the known points from your unknown position, utilizing a lensatic compass.
4. Convert the magnetic azimuth to a grid azimuth.
5. Convert the grid azimuth to a back azimuth.
6. Utilizing the back azimuth, draw a line on the map from the known point back towards your unknown position which extends beyond the estimated distance of the unknown position.
7. Repeat steps 3 through 6.
8. Determine the grid coordinates of the unknown position on the map where the lines cross.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 701

RFS:

Clear a room as a two-man team

Condition: Given individual weapons and a room with the door open or closed, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy from the room.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Shooter number two is behind shooter number one in the stacked position, with his weapon at the alert carry. This positioning is the same if the door is already open or nonexistent.
2. Shooter number one has his weapon at the ready and determines the direction in which the door opens. He then quickly informs shooter number two, and forces the door open.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Shooter number one maintains cover for shooter number two as he prepares to throw a grenade into the room.
4. Shooter number two throws a hand grenade into the room and then returns to the original stacked position behind shooter number one.
5. After the grenade explodes, shooter number one steps across the threshold and clears his immediate area. He engages targets from the ready carry position.
6. Shooter number two follows immediately behind shooter number one, buttonhooks, and clears his immediate area. He engages targets from the ready carry position.
7. Both shooters clear along their respective walls, starting from their nearest respective corner.
8. Both shooters then establish a dominant position in the room 1 step away from the wall and 2 steps into the room.
9. Both shooters use the pieing technique to systematically clear the room by sector, pieing to the opposite side of the room to their farthest respective corner.
10. Once the room has been cleared, the clearing team yells, "Clear," to inform the covering team.
11. Before leaving the room and rejoining the covering team, the clearing team yells, "Coming out" and waits to hear the covering team yell, "All clear."
12. The clearing team executes its movement out of the room.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. MOUT Facility/MOUT training area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	1 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

EVENT: 0311 - A - 702

RFS:

Clear a room as a four-man team

Condition: Given individual weapons and a room with the door open or closed, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy from the room.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Shooter number two is behind shooter number one in the stacked position with his weapon at the alert carry. This positioning is the same if the door is already open or nonexistent.
2. Shooter number three is behind shooter number two in the stacked position, with his weapon at the alert carry.
3. Shooter number four is behind shooter number three in the stacked position, with his weapon at the alert carry.
4. Shooter number one has his weapon at the ready and determines the direction in which the door opens. He then quickly informs shooter number two and forces the door open.
5. Shooter number one maintains cover for shooter number two as he prepares to throw a grenade into the room.
6. Shooter number two throws a hand grenade into the room and then returns to the original stacked position behind shooter number one.
7. After the grenade explodes, shooter number one steps across the threshold and clears his immediate area. He engages targets from the ready carry position.
8. Shooter number two follows immediately behind shooter number one, buttonhooks, and clears his immediate area. He engages targets from the ready carry position.
9. Shooter number one and shooter number two clear along their respective walls, starting from their nearest respective corner.
10. Shooter number one and shooter number two then establish a dominant position in the room 1 step away from the wall and 2 steps away from their nearest respective corner.
11. Shooter number one and shooter number two use the pieing technique to systematically clear the room by sector, pieing to the opposite side of the room to their farthest respective corner.
12. Shooter number three follows immediately behind shooter number two crosses the threshold, and establishes a center sector of fire coverage
13. Shooter number four follows immediately behind shooter number three, buttonhooks, and establishes a center sector of fire coverage opposite shooter number three.
14. Shooter number three then establishes a dominant position in the room 1 step away from the wall and 2 steps into the room. He uses the pieing technique to systematically clear the room by sector, pieing to his nearest respective corner of the room.
15. Shooter number four then establishes a dominant position in the room 1 step away from the wall and 2 steps into the room. He uses the pieing technique to systematically clear the room by sector, pieing to his nearest respective corner of the room.
16. Once the room has been cleared, the team yells, "Clear," to inform outside security.
17. Before leaving the room the team yells, "Coming out" and waits to hear the reply, "All clear" from outside security.
18. The team executes its movement out of the room.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

- 1. MOUT Facility/MOUT training area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	1 each
Weapon:	M16A2 5.56mm service rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A059	CTG, 5.56mm, BALL, M855	4 each
Weapon:	M249 5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A075	CTG, 5.56mm, BLANK, LINKED	5 each

REFERENCES

- 1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: 0311 - A - 703 RFS:

Execute building lower-level entry as a four man team

Condition: Given individual weapons and a second story access point into a building, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By entering and gaining a foothold in the building in preparation for clearing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Automatic Rifleman provides security for the fire team.
2. The Team Leader and Assistant Automatic Rifleman assist the Rifleman up to the next level either supported or unsupported.
3. The Team Leader and Assistant Automatic Rifleman face each other holding an item, which will support the weight of the Rifleman, or with hands cupped together.
4. The Rifleman steps onto the support or into the hands of the Team Leader and Assistant Automatic Rifleman.
5. The Team Leader and Assistant Automatic Rifleman will lift the Rifleman up to the entry point.
6. The Rifleman pulls himself into the entry point and prepares to assist the next Marine in from the top.
7. The Team Leader will stand with his back or side to the wall with his hands cupped together.
8. The Assistant Automatic Rifleman raises 1 foot up into the hands of the Team Leader.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. The Team Leader will lift the Assistant Automatic Rifleman up to the entry point.
10. The Rifleman pulls the Assistant Automatic Rifleman into the entry point by his weapon, hand or other item that he can find.
11. The Rifleman and the Assistant Automatic Rifleman will pull the Team Leader up into the entry point by his weapon, hand, or other items they can find.
12. The Team Leader will provide security while the Rifleman and the Assistant Automatic Rifleman pull the Automatic Rifleman into the entry point by his weapon, hand, or other items they can find.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. MOUT Facility/MOUT training area

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX D

INFANTRY MACHINE GUNNER COURSE

Description

The Infantry Machine Gunner Course is located at Infantry Training Battalion (ITB), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon successful completion of the Infantry Machine gunner Course, a Marine will receive MOS 0331.

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Machine gunner in a Infantry Machinegun Section/Weapons Platoon/Weapons Company.

Administrative Notes

The enclosed tasks represent the 0331 specific tasks. The remainder of the tasks are drawn from MCO 1510.89A MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) as directed by MCO 1510.121 MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) PROGRAM.

Prerequisites

The Marine will have completed Marine Corps Boot Camp.

EVENT: 0331 - A - 041

RFS:

Perform ten meter firing for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, ammunition, M40 field protective mask, NBC gloves, and a basic machine gun target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving 35 points of 51 points in accordance with the FM 23-14.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure 2 threads are showing on the front sight post.
2. Center the rear peep sight by rotating it clockwise as far as it will go, then rotating counter-clockwise 5 clicks or half turns.
3. Center the rear sight windage knob by rotating it toward the muzzle until the peep sight is completely to the right, then rotate the windag knob toward the butt stock 12 clicks to the left.
4. Set elevation knob a range of 700 meters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Assume a bipod supported prone position.
6. Fire 3 single rounds loaded individually at the center base of the aiming point on aiming paster 1.
7. Correct for windage by rotating the windage knob to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
8. Correct for elevation by rotating the peep sight to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
9. Repeat steps 5 through 8.
10. Repeat steps 5 though 9 utilizing aiming paster 2.
11. Using controlled burst firing, fire two 3 round bursts on pasters and 4, in no time limit.
12. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
13. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
14. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
15. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
16. Fire four 3 round bursts on pasters 1 through 4, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 20 seconds.
17. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
18. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, NBC, in a time limit of 40 seconds.
19. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
20. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 40 seconds.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Performance steps 1 through 10 are for 10 meter zero. Marines unable to zero with 12 rounds should be removed from the firing line for remedial training.
2. There is no reason to record the 10 meter zero, because it applies only to firing at the 10 meter basic machine gun target.
3. Performance steps 11, 13, and 15 are for practice.
4. Performance steps 16, 18, and 20 are for score.
5. One point is allowed for each round impacting within the scoring space with a maximum of three points per space. The maximum possible score is 51 points.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M249 squad automatic weapon with basic machinegun target at 10 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A064	CTG, 5.56mm, 4&1 LINKED, F/SAW	108 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 085

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08670A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the safety is on FIRE.
2. Pull the cocking handle to the rear to lock bolt back.
3. Place safety to "S."
4. Push in on the latches to open the cover assembly.
5. Remove ammunition.
6. Raise the feed tray.
7. Visually and physically inspect the chamber to make sure it is empty.
8. Lower feed tray.
9. If round is still in chamber remove it.
10. Place safety to "F"
11. Hold the cocking handle to the rear, depress the trigger, and ease the bolt forward to close and lock.
12. Close the cover assembly.
13. Depress the barrel locking latch and hold.
14. Turn the carrying handle to upright position.
15. Remove the barrel and pull straight out.
16. Depress the spring and remove trigger housing spring pin.
17. Pull trigger housing assembly down and back to remove.
18. Depress butt stock latch and lift the butt stock and buffer assembly to remove.
19. Press the drive spring in and up, and then pull it out.
20. Depress cover latches and raise cover assembly.
21. Pull cocking handle to the rear and remove the bolt and operating rod assembly.
22. Close cover.
23. Push out cover spring pin as far as possible and remove.
24. Remove the cover assembly and feed tray.
25. Rotate the collar until it releases, then pull it out.
26. Pull the plug from gas regulator.
27. Remove the cover from the scraper tool.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

28. Insert the scraper into the center hole of the plug. Twist the scraper back and forth to remove carbon from the center hole.
29. Fold the scraper and press the point into the groove. Twist the scraper back and forth to remove carbon from the groove on the plug.
30. Pivot the scraper blade and place the tip of the scraper into the groove of the plug and twist back and forth to remove carbon from the groove on the plug.
31. Utilizing the tip of the scraper, scrape carbon from the surfaces of the plug.
32. Utilizing the small reamer, insert reamer into each gas inlet hole of the plug, twisting the reamer as it is lowered into the holes to remove carbon buildup from the holes.
33. Utilizing the large reamer, insert reamer through hole into the gas port hole in the barrel, twisting reamer as it is lowered into the hole to remove the carbon buildup from the hole.
34. Utilizing a cleaning rod and swab dampened with CLP, remove dirt and corrosion from the bore.
35. Remove dirt and corrosion from other parts using a wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC.
36. Inspect for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on flash hider, barrel adapter, and carrying handle.
37. Place plug with gas inlet setting number 1 hole facing the barrel.
38. Install collar on the plug and rotate until collar slips onto the plug. Press and rotate to lock in place.
39. Lightly oil parts with CLP, LAW, or LSA in accordance with climatic considerations.
40. Check the cover assembly for smooth operation, spring tension, bent parts, or excessive wear.
41. Check the cocking handle for bends and cracks, free movement, excessive wear, burrs, or chipped rails.
42. Check the barrel locking latch and cover detent for proper tension.
43. Inspect the trigger assembly for broken grips, bent, cracked, or broken trigger actuating assembly, loose nut or bolt, and chipped or cracked trigger housing holding lug.
44. Check the tripping lever and sear for burrs, cracks, chips, and wear.
45. Check the cocking action by pushing back on the tripping lever, and sear will rise. Pull the trigger and the sear will lower.
46. Check safety functions. When safety is placed to "S," pull the trigger and the sear will not lower. When safety is placed to "F," pull the trigger and the sear will lower.
47. Lightly lubricate the tripping lever and sear surfaces.
48. Utilizing the combination tool, insert into the bottom of the cavity of the piston end of the operating rod. Squeeze handles firmly and twist the combination tool back and forth to remove carbon.
49. Insert the screwdriver end of the combination tool into the cavity of the piston end of the operating rod to remove carbon residue in the bottom cavity.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

50. Clean all other areas of the operating rod, firing pin, and spring pin with wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC. Lightly oil with LAW after cleaning.
51. Check the bolt and operating rod assembly for burrs, cracks, broke pins, or frozen roller.
52. Push down on the roller to ensure it retracts.
53. Check the driving spring for broken strands.
54. Insert the combination tool carefully into the fore end of the gas cylinder of the receiver body.
55. Ensure the combination tool shoulder is fully inserted and seated against the fore end of the gas cylinder in receiver body.
56. Apply slight pressure to the handles and twist back and forth to remove carbon.
57. Clean the gas cylinder bore with the gas cylinder cleaning brush dampened with CLP or RBC.
58. Utilizing a wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC, remove dirt and corrosion from the area under the front access cover of the receiver and all other parts.
59. Position the feed tray and cover assembly.
60. Push the cover assembly forward, close cover, and insert the spring pin from the right side.
61. Open the cover assembly and ensure the cover detent holds the cover assembly open.
62. Set the bolt and operating rod assembly on top of the rails.
63. Extend the bolt to the unlocked position and push the assembly all the way in the receiver.
64. Close the cover assembly and lock.
65. Insert the driving spring into the operating rod assembly.
66. Push the driving spring in fully and lower it to seat the stud in the hole of the receiver.
67. Install the butt stock and buffer assembly ensuring it locks.
68. Position the trigger housing into place and insert the trigger housing spring pin.
69. Insert the barrel fully into the socket and push the carrying handle to the right as far as it will go to lock while counting the clicks. There should be between 2 to 7 clicks.
70. Place safety to "F."
71. Pull the cocking handle to rear to lock the bolt back.
72. Place safety to "S."
73. Depress the trigger - nothing should happen.
74. Place safety to "F."
75. Hold the cocking handle to the rear.
76. Depress the trigger and ease the bolt forward to close and lock.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0331 - A - 086

RFS:

Mount an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Extend the tripods legs until the sleeve latch engages, locking the open.
2. Rotate the elevating hand-wheel on the traversing and elevating mechanism until approximately 1 ½ inches, or 2 fingers, are visible on the upper elevating screw.
3. Rotate the traversing slide on the traversing and elevating mechanism until approximately 2 fingers are visible on the lower elevating screw.
4. Rotate the traversing hand-wheel on the traversing and elevating mechanism until the offset head is centered on the traversing screw. The traversing and elevating is now roughly centered.
5. Insert the flex-mount's pintle into the tripod's pintle bushing, and then engage the pintle locking lever to hold in place.
6. Insert the flex-mount's pintle into the tripod's pintle bushing, and then engage the pintle locking lever to hold in place.
7. Lower the traversing slide of the traversing and elevating mechanism over the traversing bar on the tripod with the traversing slide to the rear and traversing wheel to the left.
8. Ensure the traversing slide of the traversing and elevating mechanism over the traversing bar on the tripod with the traversing slide to the rear and traversing wheel to the left.
9. Attach the machinegun to the flex mount by pushing the recesses on the forward portion of the receiver on the bottom of the receiver against the forward bushings on the flex mount.
10. Rotate the rear of the machinegun down to the mount and insert the retaining pin forward of the trigger housing assembly to lock the weapon into place.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 087

RFS:

Load an M240G medium machinegun with the cover open

Condition: Given an M240G medium machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Pull the bolt to rear position.
2. Return the cocking handle to the forward position.
3. Place safety to "S."
4. Open the cover assembly.
5. Place link belt in feed tray, with the open side of the links down, with the first round against the cartridge stop aligning it with the feed tray groove.
6. Close and lock the cover assembly ensuring the first round stays in place to make a Condition 1 weapon.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 088 RFS:

Load an M240G medium machinegun with the cover closed

Condition: Given an M240G medium machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Pull the bolt to the rear and close the cover.
2. Ensure the safety is on "F."
3. Ride the bolt forward to engage the linear roller.
4. Place link belt into the feed way with the open side of the links down.
5. Ensure the first round of the belt engages the holding pawl and is held in place to make a Condition 3 weapon.
6. Pull the bolt to the rear position.
7. Return the cocking handle to the forward position.
8. Place the safety to "S" to make a Condition 1 weapon

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G 7.62mm medium machinegun
DODIC Quantity
A131 CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1 10 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 089 RFS:

Change a barrel for an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Cease firing.
2. Ensure the bolt is to the rear position.
3. Return the cocking handle to the forward position.
4. Place the safety to "S."
5. Depress the barrel locking latch and hold.
6. Grasp the barrel by the carrying handle.
7. Rotate the carrying handle to the upright position.
8. Push forward and pull up, separating the barrel from the receiver.
9. Grasp the spare barrel by the carrying handle.
10. Insert the spare barrel socket into the receiver while aligning the gas plug with the gas cylinder and pull to the rear of the receiver until the spare barrel is fully seated.
11. Lower the carrying handle while ensuring that the number-of-clicks are counted as the carrying handle is lowered. A minimum of 2 clicks to a maximum of 7 clicks should be counted to ensure proper fit.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G 7.62mm medium machinegun
DODIC Quantity
A131 CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1 10 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0331 - A - 090

RFS:

Perform immediate action for an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun that fails to fire and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Shout "Misfire" and wait 5 seconds in case of a hang fire.
2. Within the next 5 seconds to guard against a cook off, pull the cocking handle to the rear, observing the ejection port for feeding and ejecting.
3. If the cocking handle cannot be pulled to the rear, assume a live round is in the chamber, determine hot or cold barrel, if hot wait 15 minutes, raise the feed tray cover, unload the weapon, and perform remedial action.
4. If cartridge was seen ejecting and feeding, return the cocking handle to the forward position and attempt to fire the weapon. If the weapon fails to fire for a second time, wait 5 seconds, within the next 5 seconds pull the bolt to the rear, if round is ejected, place weapon on SAFE, unload, and perform remedial action.
5. If cartridge did not eject, place the safety on SAFE, return the cocking handle forward assume a live round is in the chamber, and determine whether the barrel is hot or cold. If the barrel is hot, wait 15 minutes for the barrel to reach air temperature and proceed with cold barrel procedures.
6. Once the barrel has reached air temperature, raise the feed tray cover, remove ammo belt and links and inspect the chamber.
7. If the weapon is clear, reload and attempt to fire.
8. If cartridge is present, remove the cartridge by performing remedial action.
9. If the weapon still fails to fire, clear the gun, and conduct remedial action.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	10 each
	Expenditure of ammunition is not required.		

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0331 - A - 091

RFS:

Perform immediate action for a runaway M240G medium machinegun

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun with a runaway gun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Considering the situation and the number of rounds remaining on the belt determine the safest course of action.
2. If the requirement is to cease fire, break link belt by grasping and twisting it firmly.
3. If there is not a requirement to cease fire and the end of the belt is near, let the machinegun continue to fire.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 092

RFS:

Perform remedial action for a stuck cartridge in an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun with a stuck cartridge and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the bolt is to the rear.
2. Ensure safety to "S."
3. Ensure the cover is raised and ammunition is removed
4. Wait until the barrel is cool, remove the barrel, and lift cartridge case from chamber of barrel, or pry rim if the case is tight.
5. If cartridge will not come out, remove swab holder from cleaning rod and insert cleaning rod through muzzle end of barrel.
6. Push cleaning rod through barrel to force stuck cartridge out of the chamber.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G 7.62mm medium machinegun

DODIC

A131 CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1

Quantity

10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 093

RFS:

Perform remedial action for a ruptured cartridge in an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun with a ruptured cartridge and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the bolt is to the rear.
2. Ensure safety to "S."
3. Ensure the cover is raised and ammunition is removed
4. Wait until the barrel is cool and remove the barrel.
5. Push threaded end of extractor post through ruptured cartridge.
6. Pull on handle to remove cartridge.
7. If weapons fails to fire, clear the gun, and troubleshoot the weapo

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G 7.62mm medium machinegun

DODIC

Quantity

A131 CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1

10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 094

RFS:

Perform remedial action for sluggish operation of an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun with sluggish operation and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Change barrels and continue the mission
2. Move the regulator setting to the number 2 or 3 position on the removed barrel.
3. If weapon operation continues to be sluggish, clean, lubricate, and tighten, or replace parts, as required.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 095 RFS:

Clear an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 Complete M240G medium machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08670A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Pull cocking handle to the rear to lock bolt back.
2. Place the safety to "S."
3. Raise the cover.
4. Clear the feed tray of ammunition and links.
5. Lift the feed tray.
6. Visually and physically inspect the chamber to make sure it is empty
7. Lower feed tray.
8. Place safety to fire.
9. Close cover assembly.
10. Hold cocking handle to the rear, depress trigger, and ride bolt forward on empty chamber to make a Condition 4 weapon.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 096

RFS:

Operate the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08670A-10/1A and MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove barrel.
2. Check bore and chamber using cleaning rod with swab to remove excessive oil, foreign material, and obstruction.
3. Check gas regulator setting and ensure it is on setting 1.
4. Inspect flash suppressor and front sight blade for tightness and cracks.
5. Check the carrying handle to ensure moves freely.
6. Install and lock barrel into receiver ensuring 2 to 7 clicks while rotating handle down.
7. Ensure butt stock latch is locked.
8. Squeeze cover latches and open feed tray cover.
9. Ensure feed arm, pivot arm, and feed arm fork move freely.
10. Checks feed pawls for free movement and spring tension.
11. Close the cover ensuring it latches.
12. Grasp cocking handle palms up and pull to the rear while ensuring bolt moves freely and locks to the rear.
13. Place safety to "S."
14. Pull trigger and ensure bolt stays to the rear.
15. Place safety to "F."
16. Hold cocking handle to the rear, pull the trigger, and ride the bolt forward to make a Condition 4 weapon.
17. Inspect ammunition ensuring it is free of dirt and corrosion, and that the double link is up and ready for loading.
18. Assume a prone position to rear of gun.
19. Center elevating hand-wheel so about 2 fingers (1 ½ inches) of thread are exposed above and below the hand-wheel.
20. Center the offset head on the traversing and elevation mechanism.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

21. Place butt stock of weapon in right shoulder.
22. Estimate range to target.
23. Adjust rear sight to the range of the target.
24. Aim in on target using sight picture and alignment.
25. Grasp the traversing and elevation mechanism elevating hand-wheel with the left hand.
26. Grasp trigger housing with right hand.
27. Apply pressure to the rear and down with both hands to remove slac from traversing and elevation mechanism.
28. Unlock traversing bar slide lock.
29. Move gun left or right to adjust traverse close to target and while holding on target lock down traversing bar slide lock.
30. Turn traversing hand-wheel to traverse to the center of target.
31. Rotate elevating hand-wheel to adjust elevation onto the base of the target.
32. Load and make a Condition 1 weapon.
33. React to fire commands by adjusting traversing and elevating mechanism traverse first then elevation and rate of fire while maintaining a 6 to 8 round bursts.
34. Listen to the machinegun firing rate and if becomes sluggish perform remedial action for sluggish operation.
35. Pull bolt to the rear.
36. Place safety to "S."
37. Raise cover assembly.
38. Remove ammunition.
39. Raise feed tray to visually and physically inspect chamber and bore for ammunition or obstruction.
40. Lower feed tray.
41. Place safety to "F."
42. Close the cover, ride the bolt forward making a Condition 4 weapon
43. Perform after operation preventative maintenance checks.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 097

RFS:

(Table I) Execute ten-meter bipod firing exercise with the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a bipod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, ammunition, and a basic machinegun target,

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 84 out of a possible 119 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Set rear sight elevation at 500 meters.
2. Assume a good firing position and obtain correct sight alignment sight picture on paster A1.
3. Fire 3 rounds, 1 round at a time at paster A1.
4. Find center of shot group.
5. If the shot group is not in center of the aiming point using combination tool unlock the front sight-retaining strap and rotate upwards.
6. Rotate the front sight post blade counter-clockwise if group is above the aiming point and clockwise if below. 1 full turn will move the strike of the round 3/8 of an inch at 10 meters. If the post blade is more than halfway out replace the post blade with the number 2 blade
7. If the shot group is to left of the aim point move the front sight protector to the left to move the point of impact to the right by using the hex wrench loosen the adjusting screw (counter-clockwise) on the right side of front sight assembly to the desired amount and tighten (clockwise) the opposite side screw exactly the same amount. 1 complet rotation of the adjusting screw will move the point of impact 1/3 of an inch. If the shot group is to the right of the aim point, the front sight protector must be moved to the right.
8. Fire 3 more rounds, 1 at a time at paster A1.
9. Find center of shot group.
10. If necessary adjust front sight to center of point of aim.
11. If Gunner is able to zero his weapon using 6 rounds have him use remaining 6 to confirm zero on paster A2.
12. The first string of fire will utilize pasters A3 and A4. A 7 roun belt is loaded and fired at each paster (not for score).
13. The second string of fire will utilize pasters A5 through A6. A 3 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster 5 and fires initial 7 round burst, traversing and searching manipulation is then required for subsequent bursts at the remaining pasters ending with paster 6 (not fo score).
14. The third string of fire will utilize pasters A7 through A8. A 56 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster 7 and fires initial 7 round burst, Traversing and searching is required for subsequent burst at the remaining pasters with ending at paster 8 (not for score).
15. The fourth string of fire will utilize pasters B1 through B4. A 7 round belt is loaded and fired at each paster for a total of 28 rounds in a time limit of 30 seconds per paster, for a total of 28 possible points (scored).
16. The fifth string of fire will utilize pasters B7 through B8. A 56 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster B7 and fires initial 7 round burst, Traversing and searching is required for subsequent burst at the remaining pasters with ending at paster B8 in a time limit of 60 seconds, for a total of 56 possible points (scored).

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

17. The sixth string of fire will utilize pasters B5 through B6. A 35 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster B5 and fires initial 7 round burst, traversing and searching manipulation is then required for subsequent bursts at the remaining pasters ending with paster B6 in a time limit of 60 seconds, for a total of 35 possible points (scored).

18. Clear the gun.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The scoring procedures are as follows; one point is given for each round impacting within each scoring space. The maximum point value is 7 points for each scoring space. Rounds touching the line on the paster are considered a hit.

2. Marksman 84-95, Sharpshooter 96-107, and Expert 108-119.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M240G medium machinegun with basic machinegun targets at 10 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	208 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 098 RFS:

(Table II) Execute a ten-meter tripod firing exercise with the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, ammunition, and a basic machinegun target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 35 out of a possible 51 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Set rear sight elevation at 500 meters.
2. Assume a good firing position and obtain correct sight alignment sight picture on paster A1.
3. Fire 3 rounds, 1 round at a time at paster A1.
4. Find center of shot group
5. If the shot group is not in center of the aiming point using combination tool unlock the front sight-retaining strap and rotate upwards.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Rotate the front sight post blade counter-clockwise if group is above the aiming point and clockwise if below. 1 full turn will move the strike of the round $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch at 10 meters. If the post blade is more than halfway out replace the post blade with the number 2 blade
7. If the shot group is to left of the aim point move the front sight protector to the left to move the point of impact to the right by using the hex wrench loosen the adjusting screw (counter-clockwise) on the right side of front sight assembly to the desired amount and tighten (clockwise) the opposite side screw exactly the same amount. 1 complete rotation of the adjusting screw will move the point of impact $\frac{1}{3}$ of an inch. If the shot group is to the right of the aim point, the front sight protector must be moved to the right.
8. Fire 3 more rounds, 1 at a time at paster A1.
9. Find center of shot group.
10. If necessary adjust front sight to center of point of aim.
11. If Gunner is able to zero his weapon using 6 rounds have him use remaining 6 rounds to confirm zero on paster A2.
12. The first string of fire will utilize pasters A3 and A4. A 7 round belt is loaded and fired at each paster (not for score).
13. The second string of fire will utilize pasters A5 through A6. A 1 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster 5 and fires initial 3 round burst, traversing and searching manipulation is then required for subsequent bursts at the remaining pasters ending with paster 6 (not for score).
14. The third string of fire will utilize pasters A7 through A8. A 24 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster 7 and fires initial 3 round burst, traversing and searching is required for subsequent burst at the remaining pasters with ending at paster 8 (not for score).
15. The fourth string of fire will utilize pasters B1 through B4. A 3 round belt is loaded and fired at each paster for a total of 12 rounds in a time limit of 20 seconds, for a total of 12 possible points (scored).
16. The fifth string of fire will utilize pasters B7 through B8. A 24 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster B7 and fires initial 3 round burst, traversing and searching is required for subsequent burst at the remaining pasters with ending at paster B8 in a time limit of 40 seconds, for a total of 24 possible points (scored).
17. The sixth string of fire will utilize pasters B5 through B6. A 15 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster B5 and fires initial 3 round burst, traversing and searching manipulation is then required for subsequent bursts at the remaining pasters ending with paster B6 in a time limit of 40 seconds, for a total of 15 possible points (scored).
18. Clear the gun.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. One point is awarded for each round impacting within each scoring space. The maximum point value is 3 points for each scoring space. Rounds touching the line on the paster are considered a hit.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M240G medium machinegun with basic machinegun targets at 10 meters

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	100 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 099 RFS:

Prepare an AN/PVS-4 for operation with an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, SL-3 complete AN/PVS-4, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 11-5855-213-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect sight for dirt and moisture on external surfaces and parts. If needed clean and dry with lint free cloth.
2. Inspect the battery cap for corrosion, damaged contact, spring tension, and cap damage.
3. Inspect daylight cover for dirt or cracks in cover or broken lenses and rotate holder to be sure that all apertures can be used.
4. Inspect each switch and control for smooth mechanical action.
5. Turn tube brightness and reticle brightness switches to the off position.
6. Ensure daylight cover is on. The daylight cover must be installed when operating the sight during daylight to protect the image intensifier from damage.
7. Install battery and turn switch to on position. Image intensifier should glow green color and intensity should change as switch is rotated. In extreme cold battery BA-5567U should only be used.
8. Install mounting bracket on the M240G.
9. Mount the sight to the bracket by aligning the scribed line on the sight with the bracket and tighten the mounting screw.
10. Ensure if operating under unusual conditions that the operator follows the precautions for those conditions.
11. Press eye against the eye guard to open the rubber leaves that prevent the emission of stray light.
12. Turn the tube brightness control on and adjust the tube brightness control to the setting that provides the best target to background contrast at a minimum distance of 25 meters.
13. Turn on the reticle brightness control to turn on the light emitting diode and adjust the reticle light intensity so that the reticle is just visible against the background.
14. Turn the diopter focus ring until you get the clearest image of the reticle pattern.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Turn the objective focus ring until the target in the field of view is sharply defined at aiming distance of 25 meters.
16. Check reticle azimuth adjustment knob by rotating the knob and check to make sure that the reticle moves in azimuth.
17. Check reticle elevation adjustment knob by rotating the knob and check to make sure the reticle moves in elevation.
18. Check viewed image for edge glow, fixed pattern noise, and resolution.
19. Turn the reticle and tube brightness switches to the off position.
20. Remove the battery or battery adapter.
21. Check each knob, switch and control for smooth mechanical action.
22. Inspect sight for dirt and moisture on external surfaces and parts clean and dry with lint free cloth.
23. Inspect battery cap for corrosion, damaged contact, spring tension and cap damage.
24. Inspect daylight cover for dirt or cracks in cover or broken lense and rotate holder to be sure that all apertures can be used.
25. Inspect sight for dirt and moisture.
26. Inspect case for dirt, moisture, and mildew. Clean and dry with lint free cloth.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Training area with clear fields of fire to 25 meters

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5855-213-10 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Sight Individual Served Weapon AN/PVS-4
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 100

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance on SL-3 gear for an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given SL-3 gear for an M240G medium machinegun, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove all dirt and rust from traversing and elevating mechanism and flex mount.
2. Extend the traversing and elevating mechanism elevating mechanism and clean far ends of elevating screw.
3. Clean elevation scale to ensure scale can be read without difficulty.
4. Rotate traversing hand-wheel and clean traversing screw.
5. Inspect the traversing and elevating mechanism for; scales can be read without difficulty, far ends of the traversing and elevating screw for cleanliness and perform function check by testing for dead clicks.
6. Lubricate the flex mount in accordance with climatic considerations especially the threads on screws and hand-wheels.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Grasp the stock and pull back and forth to test for inordinate play in the M122 mount.
8. Clean all dirt and rust from the M122 tripod.
9. Inspect the tripod and flex mount for rust.
10. Inspect pintle in pintle bushing ensuring it locks in place.
11. Lubricate the tripod with CLP, especially to the sleeve and sleeve latch.
12. Remove all dirt from spare barrel and gun bag.
13. Inspect the gun bag and spare barrel bag for signs of deterioration and wear.
14. Rotate collar until it releases, then pull it out.
15. Pull plug from gas regulator.
16. Remove cover from the scraper tool.
17. Insert scraper into center hole of plug. Twist scraper back and forth to remove carbon from center hole.
18. Fold scraper and press point into groove. Twist back and forth to remove carbon from groove on plug.
19. Pivot scraper blade and place tip of scraper into groove of plug and twist back and forth to remove carbon from groove on plug.
20. Utilizing the tip of scraper, scrape carbon from surfaces of plug.
21. Utilizing the small reamer, insert into each gas inlet hole of plug, twisting reamer as it is lowered into the holes to remove carbon buildup from the holes.
22. Utilizing the large reamer, insert through hole into gas port hole in barrel, twisting reamer as it is lowered into the hole to remove the carbon buildup from the hole.
23. Utilizing a cleaning rod and swab dampened with CLP remove dirt and corrosion from the bore.
24. Remove dirt and corrosion from other parts using a wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC.
25. Inspect for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on flash hider, barrel adapter, and carrying handle.
26. Place plug with gas inlet setting number 1 hole facing the barrel.
27. Install collar on plug and rotate until collar slips onto plug. Press and rotate to lock in place.
28. Lightly oil parts with CLP, LAW, or LSA in accordance with the climatic considerations.
29. Ensure spare barrel bag contains all required SL-3 components

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 104

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, cleaning gear,

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 02498A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Unlock the bolt latch release.
2. Pull retracting slide handle to the rear and hold it to the rear.
3. Raise the cover.
4. Remove the ammunition belt from the feed way.
5. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and T-slot for rounds.
6. If round on the T-slot pull the bolt an additional 1/16 of an inch to the rear.
7. Push round up and out of the T-slot by reaching under the gun and force the round up the face of the bolt.
8. Utilizing a cleaning rod insert in muzzle end of barrel, push through until can be seen in the chamber then remove.
9. Press the bolt latch release and ease the bolt forward with retracting slide handle.
10. Retract bolt far enough for barrel locking spring lug to center in the 3/8-inch hole on right hand side of receiver.
11. Unscrew and remove barrel assembly.
12. Pull back plate latch lock straight back, while lifting up on back plate latch. Raise back plate assembly straight up and remove from receiver, place spade grips down to prevent damage
13. Push rear of driving spring rod assembly forward and to the left until free from the side of the receiver.
14. Remove driving spring rod assembly.
15. Retract bolt assembly far enough to align bolt stud with bolt stud hole in receiver and remove bolt stud.
16. Install pointed end of M4 cleaning rod into hole in receiver and depress buffer body lock while applying rearward pressure on barrel extension assembly.
17. Remove barrel buffer assembly, barrel extension assembly, and the bolt group from the receiver.
18. Remove bolt assembly from the barrel extension assembly.
19. Separate the barrel buffer body group and the barrel extension group by pushing forward on tips of buffer accelerator.
20. Remove buffer assembly by pushing it out rear of barrel buffer bod
21. Rotate cartridge extractor upward and remove from left side of bol
22. Remove bolt switch by lifting straight up from bolt.
23. Place cocking lever in its rearmost position.
24. Release firing pin spring by pressing down on sear with swab holde section.
25. Using swab holder section, remove cocking lever pin and cocking lever.
26. Using thin end of cocking lever, rotate accelerator stop lock to center of recess of bolt.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

27. Turn the bolt over and shake to remove the accelerator stop lock.
28. Using thin end of cocking lever, press accelerator stop from bolt.
29. Turn bolt over and use thin end of cocking lever to pry accelerator stop from bottom of bolt.
30. Depress sear and remove sear slide.
31. Remove sear and sear spring.
32. Tip the front end of the bolt upward and remove firing pin extension assembly.
33. Remove firing pin from firing pin extension assembly.
34. Drive accelerator pin assembly from barrel buffer body with swab holder. Remove buffer accelerator.
35. Use pointed end of M4 cleaning rod to remove breech lock pin assembly and breech lock from barrel extension assembly.
36. Remove belt holding pawl pin attaching front cartridge stop and rear cartridge stop assembly to receiver. Remove front cartridge stop and rear cartridge stop assembly.
37. Hold down on belt holding pawl assembly to prevent loss of springs
38. Remove belt holding pawl pin, belt holding pawl assembly, and 2 springs.
39. Raise loop of trigger lever pin and rotate pin until loop is in vertical position.
40. Reach inside receiver and hold trigger lever while removing trigger lever pin assembly. Remove trigger lever.
41. Utilizing the cleaning rods, bore brush, and RBC, dip the bore brush in RBC and run through chamber of barrel. Unscrew bore brush from cleaning rods, remove rods from bore, re-screw bore brush to rods, and repeat process until clean.
42. Utilizing the cleaning rods and chamber brush, dip chamber brush in RBC and clean chamber using a clockwise twisting motion. Unscrew chamber brush from cleaning rods, remove rods from bore, re-screw chamber brush to rods, and repeat process until clean.
43. Remove chamber brush from the swab holder section, insert a cleaning swab in slot, then run clean swab through bore, from chamber end and back. Repeat until a clean swab is obtained.
44. Clean outside surface of the barrel with carbon removing compound.
45. Wipe all surfaces dry with a clean wiping rag.
46. Inspect barrel locking notches for wear or breakdown.
47. Inspect barrel for rust.
48. Inspect bore for bulges, missing bands, or large pits.
49. Inspect chamber for bulges or large pits.
50. Lubricate barrel.
51. Inspect back plate guides for burrs or bent conditions.
52. Check back plate latch and back plate latch lock for proper functioning.
53. Ensure locking pins are in place.
54. Check trigger for proper functioning.
55. Check bolt latch release for proper functioning.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

56. Ensure handle grips do not move freely and are not cracked.
57. Check bolt latch release lock for proper functioning.
58. Lubricate back plate assembly.
59. Clean all parts of the bolt assembly with a cleaning swab saturate with carbon removing compound.
60. Clean face of bolt with a cleaning swab saturated with RBC.
61. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
62. Inspect driving spring rod assembly for flat spots on springs, ensuring that springs operate freely and that rod and pin are not bent or broken.
63. Check movement of cartridge extractor in bolt. Cartridge extractor should raise and lower without binding.
64. Check movement of cartridge ejector observing for cracks and/or burrs.
65. Inspect bolt switch, cocking lever pin, cocking lever, accelerator stop lock, accelerator stop and sear slide for cracks, bends, and burrs
66. Inspect sear for cracks and burrs, and inspect sear notch for wear chips, or burrs. Inspect sear spring for breaks or lack of tension.
67. Inspect firing pin for cracks and chipped or sharp tip. Ensure th tip is smooth and well rounded.
68. Check firing pin extension for cracks, burrs, and free movement in bolt. Ensure shoulder that engages sear has a sharp angle and is free of chips and burrs.
69. Ensure bolt is free of burrs and cracks. Firing pin hole must not be visibly out of round.
70. Lubricate the bolt and driving spring rod assembly.
71. Clean all parts of the barrel buffer assembly with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
72. Wipe all parts dry with a clean wiping rag.
73. Inspect buffer body lock for tension, staking, and retention in barrel buffer body.
74. Inspect buffer accelerator for broken claws or tips.
75. Inspect accelerator pin assembly for broken or missing spring.
76. Inspect buffer spring for cracks or breaks.
77. Breech lock depressors must have a slight vertical (up and down) movement, but not have a lateral (side to side) movement.
78. Lubricate Barrel buffer assembly.
79. Clean all parts of the barrel extension assembly with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
80. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rag.
81. Inspect barrel extension assembly to ensure it is not bent and tha the bolt guide ways are smooth and free of burrs.
82. Visually inspect threads of barrel extension assembly for any damage.
83. Ensure barrel locking spring is staked and fully seated in its groove. Ensure the locking end of the spring has good tension and that the lug is not damaged.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

84. Inspect breech lock pin assembly for broken or missing spring.
85. Check breech lock for smooth movement in guide ways of barrel extension assembly.
86. Lubricate barrel extension assembly.
87. Clean all surfaces of retracting slide handle with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
88. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
89. Inspect retracting slide handle for cracks or other visible damage observing for weak or broken retracting springs.
90. Ensure cotter pins are present and in good condition.
91. Ensure safety wire is in place and properly laced.
92. Lubricate retracting slide handle.
93. Clean all surfaces of receiver assembly with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
94. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
95. Ensure the feed-way is clear of obstructions.
96. Inspect belt holding pawl brackets for looseness, bends, or cracks
97. Inspect side plates for bends that would effect movement of any internal components.
98. Inspect for cracks and burrs at back plate grooves.
99. Check operating rear sight, ensuring free-movement of the windage and elevation screws.
100. Ensure leaf assembly has good spring tension and sight assembly is secured tightly to receiver.
101. Ensure bolt stop is present and in good condition.
102. Ensure trigger lever moves freely without binding.
103. Ensure trigger lever pin locks in place.
104. Ensure cotter pin is in place on extractor switch.
105. Apply a light coat of lubricating oil to all parts of receiver group prior to assembly in accordance with lubrication guide.
106. Install trigger lever bar in receiver.
107. Align hole in trigger lever bar with mounting hole in receiver.
108. Place trigger lever pin assembly, loop end vertical, in assembly hole on left side of receiver.
109. Match key on trigger lever pin assembly with keyway in side plate of receiver and install pin completely.
110. Rotate trigger lever pin assembly 90 degrees to lock securely in place and down out of way.
111. Check that trigger lever bar moves freely.
112. Place right hand rear cartridge stop assembly and front cartridge stop on belt holding pawl bracket.
113. Install belt holding pawl pin with hooked end to rear.
114. Seat belt holding pawl springs in place on belt holding pawl bracket.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

115. Place belt holding pawl assembly on springs. Compress springs and insert belt holding pawl pin.
116. Install breech lock in barrel extension assembly with double beveled edge up and to the front of barrel extension assembly.
117. Install breech lock pin assembly in barrel extension assembly. Ensure both ends of breech lock pin assembly are flush with sides of barrel extension assembly.
118. Place buffer accelerator into barrel buffer body, aligning mounting holes.
119. Install barrel buffer pin assembly. Ensure both ends of the barrel buffer pin assembly are flush with the sides of the barrel buffer body.
120. Align key on barrel buffer assembly with key slot in barrel buffer body, and slide barrel buffer assembly into barrel buffer body.
121. Hold barrel buffer assembly with buffer accelerator up and engage notch on shank of barrel extension assembly with cross groove in piston rod of barrel buffer assembly.
122. Align breech lock depressors in grooves of barrel extension assembly and push barrel buffer assembly forward, joining the 2 assemblies.
123. Attach firing pin to firing pin extension assembly.
124. Place firing pin extension assembly into bolt with notch of firing pin extension assembly down.
125. Slide firing pin extension assembly forward so that tip of firing pin protrudes from face of bolt.
126. Place sear spring in recess on bolt.
127. Slide sear down into vertical grooves at rear of bolt with wedge shaped lug pointed outward and upward.
128. Compress sear spring by pressing down on sear. Install sear slide from left side of bolt in grooves of bolt with "V" notch down.
129. Insert pin end of accelerator stop through bottom of bolt.
130. Turn bolt over and place forked end of accelerator stop lock on notched end of accelerator stop.
131. Using wedge shaped end of the cocking lever as a tool, press down on the flat end of the accelerator stop lock, and swing it into groove on the left side of bolt.
132. Insert cocking lever with rounded nose on lower end of lever to rear into the slot in top of the bolt.
133. Align hole in cocking lever with holes in the bolt. Insert cocking lever pin from left side.
134. Push cocking lever forward to charge firing pin and return cocking lever to rearward position.
135. Trip firing pin by depressing top of sear with swab holder section.
136. Place cocking lever in forward position after testing the firing pin release.
137. Place bolt switch in position so that the feed groove is continuous for feed direction selected.
138. Hold cartridge extractor in vertical position and insert shank end of cartridge extractor into left side of bolt.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

139. Rotate cartridge extractor downward to full horizontal position.
140. Check that flange on bottom of cartridge extractor has engaged shoulder on bolt.
141. Install bolt assembly into barrel extension and buffer assembly.
142. Install barrel buffer assembly, barrel extension assembly and bolt assembly into the receiver.
143. Push bolt assembly forward into receiver until bolt latch engages notches in top of bolt assembly.
144. Raise bolt latch and push bolt assembly into receiver.
145. Align hole in bolt assembly with stud assembly hole in receiver and install bolt stud in hole in bolt assembly.
146. Place bolt in forward position.
147. Install driving spring rod assembly in upper right hand corner of bolt. Push forward and to the right until drive spring rod assembly engages in hole in side plate of receiver and not in the groove for the back plate.
148. Install back plate assembly in receiver grooves. Pull back plate latch lock while lifting up on back plate latch. Lower back plate assembly down until engaged in receiver.
149. Retract bolt far enough for barrel locking spring lug to center in barrel locking spring hole on right side of receiver.
150. Install and screw barrel assembly completely into receiver. Unscrew barrel assembly until 2 clicks are heard.
151. Place the weapon in the single-shot mode.
152. Open the cover and lock the bolt to the rear. The bolt should stay to the rear in single-shot mode.
153. Hold the retractor slide handle, press bolt latch release, and ride the bolt forward.
154. Press down on the trigger; weapon should fire. Check T-slot to ensure the firing pin does protrude.
155. Place the weapon in automatic fire mode.
156. Pull the retractor slide handle to the rear and hold, bolt should not lock to the rear.
157. Release the pressure on the retractor slide handle and ride the bolt forward.
158. Make sure firing pin does not protrude.
159. Press trigger; weapon should fire.
160. Make sure the firing pin does protrude.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 105

RFS:

Set the headspace and timing for an M2 heavy machinegun

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun, and headspace and timing gage, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 02498A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the machinegun.
2. Raise cover.
3. Grasp the retracting slide handle and retract bolt to align barrel locking spring lug with the 3/8-inch hole in the right side of the receiver.
4. Holding the bolt in this position, while screwing the barrel fully into the extension.
5. With the bolt retracted, unscrew barrel 2 notches or clicks.
6. Release the retracting slide handle and allow the bolt to go forward.
7. Ensure the barrel is locked in the forward position, by attempting to turn the barrel in either direction.
8. Pull bolt to the rear with retracting slide handle and hold. This charges the weapon and withdraws firing pin into bolt.
9. In single-shot-mode, hold retracting slide handle, push the bolt latch release, and slowly return bolt forward.
10. Remove slack in the bolt and barrel extension by retracting the retracting slide handle until the barrel extension begins to separate, but not more than 1/16 of an inch from the trunnion block.
11. Raise cartridge extractor and attempt to insert the GO end of the GO/NO GO head space gauge in the T-slot between the face of the bolt and the rear of the barrel all the way up to the ring.
12. If GO end of gauge will not enter T-slot freely, retract the bolt so you can see barrel locking lug spring in center of receiver hole on right side of receiver.
13. Unscrew barrel 1 notch or click.
14. Slowly return the bolt forward; then retract recoiling parts not more than 1/16 of an inch.
15. Recheck head space.
16. Repeat steps 13 to 16 until GO end of gauge enters and NO GO end of gauge does not enter.
17. If NO GO end of gauge enters T-slot, retract bolt so you can see barrel locking lug spring in center of receiver hole on right side of receiver.
18. Screw barrel in 1 notch or click.
19. Slowly return bolt forward.
20. Repeat steps 17 to 19 until NO GO end of gauge does not enter and GO end of gauge enters.
21. After obtaining proper head space, recheck positive locking action of barrel by attempting to screw barrel in or out with bolt in forward position and proceed with timing.
22. Pull bolt to the rear with retracting slide handle to cock machine gun; while holding handle depress the bolt release latch and slowly return bolt forward. Do not press trigger.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

23. Grasp retracting slide handle and retract bolt just enough (1/16 inch) to insert FIRE gauge with beveled edge against barrel notches between barrel extension and trunnion block.
24. Release retracting slide handle.
25. Remove back-plate.
26. Screw timing adjustment nut all the way down (to the left).
27. Attempt to fire the gun by pushing on the rear of trigger bar. Gun should not fire.
28. Screw timing adjustment nut up (to the right) 1 click at a time. Push up firmly on trigger bar after each click.
29. Repeat step 28 until gun fires.
30. Turn timing adjustment nut 2 more clicks up (to the right).
31. Remove firing gauge.
32. Replace back-plate.
33. Pull retracting slide handle to the rear and charge the machinegun
34. Depress bolt latch release and slowly ease the bolt forward with the retracting slide handle.
35. Insert the NO FIRE gauge the weapon should not fire. If the weapon does fire a mechanical defect does exist.
36. Insert the FIRE gauge the weapon should fire.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 106

RFS:

Ground mount an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Unscrew the leg clamping handle on the tripod.
2. Press down on the indexing lever, and extend the leg of the tripod to the desired length.
3. Align the indexing lever stud with 1 of the holes in the tripod leg extension.
4. Release pressure on the indexing lever, allowing the stud to fit the desired hole.
5. Tighten the leg clamping handle.
6. Turn the front leg clamp handle counter-clockwise to loosen the front leg of the tripod.
7. Adjust the leg to the desired angle and tighten the front leg clamp

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Secure the tripod legs by stamping the metal shoe on each tripod leg into the ground.
9. Sandbag each tripod leg to stabilize the M3 tripod for firing as necessary.
10. Attach pintle to front mounting hole on machinegun receiver using pintle bolt, nut, and cotter pin.
11. Rotate the elevating hand-wheel on the Traversing & Elevation mechanism until approximately 1 ½ inches, or 2 fingers, are visible on the upper elevating screw.
12. Rotate the traversing slide on the Traversing & Elevation mechanism until approximately 2 fingers are visible on the lower elevating screw.
13. Rotate the traversing hand-wheel on the Traversing & Elevation mechanism until the offset head is centered on the traversing screw. The Traversing & Elevation is now roughly centered.
14. Align the holes in the upper offset head of the Traversing & Elevation mechanism with the rear holes in the receiver.
15. Mount machinegun on tripod by lifting pintle lock release and insert the pintle into pintle bushing then press pintle lock down.
16. Lower the traversing slide of the Traversing & Elevation mechanism over the traversing bar on the tripod with the traversing slide to the rear and traversing wheel to the left.
17. Ensure the locking lever is secured by turning the locking lever clockwise.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 107

RFS:

Vehicle mount an M2 heavy machinegun to an M-1043/44 hardback HMMWV

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun, SL-3 complete, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the turret lock pin.
2. Install the universal weapons adapter.
3. Replace the turret lock pin.
4. Loosen the locking bolts on the universal weapons adapter on the HMMWV by turning the bolts counter-clockwise.
5. Insert the lower end of the pintle adapter into the universal weapons adapter.
6. Tighten the bolts by turning it clockwise, pull up on the pintle adapter to ensure it is secured.
7. Remove the quick-release pin from the pintle adapter.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Insert the MK64 MOD 7 gun cradle into the top of the pintle adapter and replace the quick-release pin.
9. Ensure the traversing and elevating mechanism is inserted into the pivot arm assembly.
10. Remove the train and elevating quick-release pin.
11. Attach the train and elevating assembly to the holes in the rear of the gun cradle.
12. Replace the quick-release pin and rotate it to the locked position.
13. Unscrew the train lock handle and hex bolt, separating the clamp into 2 parts.
14. Place the 2 halves of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal.
15. Replace the bolt and the train lock handle, and tighten them alternately utilizing a 9/16 inch wrench.
16. Tighten the train lock handle and the hex bolt.
17. Remove the hex head bolts from the positioning clamp.
18. Place both parts of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal ¼ inch below the train and elevating clamp.
19. Insert the hex head bolts in the positioning clamp and tighten the bolts to lock the clamp in place, ensuring that it does not move up or down on the pedestal.
20. Secure the second clamp ¼ inch above the train and elevating clamp utilizing step 15.
21. Attach the M2 mounting adapter to the machinegun and mount the M2 Machinegun.
22. Partly unscrew the wing-nut on the threaded stud of the bracket mounting assembly.
23. Align the stud with the forward groove in the side plate of the gun cradle.
24. Push the bracket mounting assembly up until the heads of the 2 mounting pins align with the 2 forward keyholes.
25. Push the heads of the 2 mounting pins into the keyholes and allow the bracket mounting assembly to slide down.
26. Tighten the wing-nut behind the side plate of the cradle.
27. Insert the 2 hooks on the empty case catch bag through the rear holes in the gun cradle.
28. Engage the single front hanger on the catch bag with the hook on the gun cradle.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 108

RFS:

Load an M2 heavy machinegun with the cover open

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the bolt is in the forward position.
2. Open the cover.
3. Insert the double-loop end of the ammunition in the feed-way until the belt holding pawl holds the first cartridge.
4. Close the cover.
5. Pull the retracting slide handle to the rear and release it. If th weapon is in automatic mode the bolt and retracting slide handle will move forward under pressure of the driving spring group, but if in single-shot mode the retracting slide handle must be returned forward and the bolt latch release must be pressed to allow the bolt to go forward. To place the gun in Condition 3.
6. To fully load the gun follow the above performance step. To place the gun in Condition 1.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required.		

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

EVENT: 0331 - A - 109 RFS:

Load an M2 heavy machinegun with the cover closed

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the bolt is in the forward position.
2. Close the cover.
3. Insert the double-loop end of the ammunition into the feed-way until the belt-holding pawl engages the first round.
4. Pull the retracting slide handle to the rear and release it. If th weapon is in automatic mode the bolt and retracting slide handle will move forward under pressure of the driving spring group, but if in single-shot mode the retracting slide handle must be returned forward and the bolt latch release must be pressed to allow the bolt to go forward. To place the gun in Condition 3.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. To fully load the gun follow the above performance step. To place the gun in Condition 1.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 110

RFS:

Operate an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun.

Standard: In accordance with TM 02498A-10/1 and MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is in Condition 4.
2. Check Bore and chamber using cleaning rod with swab to remove excessive oil, foreign material, and obstruction.
3. Check barrel support and breech bearing are free of dirt.
4. Raise the cover.
5. Check feed mechanism and bolt switch for proper assembly.
6. Check head space and timing if not correct adjust.
7. Check the rear sight to ensure it is clean and function properly.
8. Set the rear sight at range of 1,000 and windage at 0.
9. Check traversing and elevating mechanism and ensure it is securely attached to the receiver.
10. Ensure traversing hand-wheel is centered.
11. Check to ensure elevating screws are equally exposed above and below the elevating hand-wheel.
12. Check the back plate and ensure it is latched and locked in place.
13. Ensure the bolt latch release is locked in the down position by th bolt latch release lock to place gun in automatic mode.
14. Clean and oil spare parts and tools as well as ensure SL-3 complet
15. Inspect ammunition for cleanliness and in good condition.
16. Assume a firing position either sitting or prone.
17. Insert ammunition in feed way with doubled looped end first.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

18. Close the cover and ensure it locks shut.
19. Grasp retracting slide handle palms up and pull the handle to the rear and release to make the gun half load.
20. Pull the retracting slide handle to rear and make gun full load.
21. Assume a firing position.
22. Right hand lightly grasps right spade grip with thumb on trigger.
23. Left hand on elevating hand-wheel palms down with thumb near slide lock lever.
24. Head as close to rear sight as possible while resting on left elbow
25. Sets rear sight to estimated range.
26. Aim in on target while applying pressure down and to the right.
27. Unlock traversing bar slide lock.
28. Move gun left or right to adjust traverse close to target and while holding on target lock down traverse bar slide lock.
29. Turn traversing hand-wheel to center gun on target.
30. Rotate elevating hand-wheel to adjust elevation onto target.
31. React to fire commands by adjusting traversing and elevating mechanism, traverse first then elevation and rate of fire while maintaining 5 to 7 round burst.
32. Maintain lubrication while firing in accordance with lubrication guide.
33. Observe the function of the gun to anticipate failures.
34. Watch for bulged cases to prevent a ruptured case if occurs readjust head space.
35. Adjust rear sight per fire command.
36. Ensure ammunition stays correctly aligned with feed way and protect from sun, moisture, and dirt.
37. Watch for link stoppage.
38. Make a Condition 4 weapon.
39. Perform AFTER operation inspection.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 111

RFS:

(Table I) Execute ten meter tripod firing exercise with the M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, 236 rounds of ammunition, and a basic machinegun target,

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 84 of 119 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Raise the rear sight by lifting straight up until it snaps into the upright position.
2. Adjust the range scale by rotating the elevation screw knob to reflect the range of 500 yards.
3. Rotate the windage knob until the zero index mark on the base of the rear sight is aligned with the index mark on the top of the receiver.
4. Assume a good firing position and obtain correct sight alignment sight picture on paster A1.
5. Fire 3 rounds, 1 round at a time at paster A1.
6. The Gunner will move down range to observe the shot group, triangulate it and make the necessary adjustments.
7. Fire another 3 single rounds at paster A1.
8. The Gunner will move down range to observe the shot group, triangulate it and make the necessary adjustments.
9. The Gunner repeats steps (7) and (8) but shoots at paster A2.
10. If Gunner is able to zero his weapon using 9 rounds have him use remaining 3 to confirm zero on paster A2.
11. The first string of fire will utilize pasters A3 and A4. A 7 round belt is loaded and fired at each paster (not for score).
12. The second string of fire will utilize pasters A5 through A6. A 3 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster 5 and fires initial 7 round burst, traversing and searching manipulation is then required for subsequent bursts at the remaining pasters ending with paster 6 (not for score).
13. The third string of fire will utilize pasters A7 through A8. A 56 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster 7 and fires initial 7 round burst, Traversing and searching is required for subsequent burst at the remaining pasters with ending at paster 8 (not for score).
14. The fourth string of fire will utilize pasters B1 through B4. A 7 round belt is loaded and fired at each paster for a total of 28 rounds in a time limit of 30 seconds per paster, for a total of 28 possible points (scored).
15. The fifth string of fire will utilize pasters B7 through B8. A 56 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster B7 and fires initial 7 round burst, Traversing and searching is required for subsequent burst at the remaining pasters with ending at paster B8 in a time limit of 60 seconds, for a total of 56 possible points (scored).
16. The sixth string of fire will utilize pasters B5 through B6. A 35 round belt is loaded. The Gunner aims at paster B5 and fires initial 7 round burst, traversing and searching manipulation is then required for subsequent bursts at the remaining pasters ending with paster B6 in a time limit of 60 seconds, for a total of 35 possible points (scored).
17. Clear the gun.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The scoring procedures are as follows; one point is given for each round impacting within each space or touching the boundary of a scoring space but only can be counted once. The total possible points for 10 meter firing exercise is 119 points and a minimum of 84 points is required to meet the standard for this exercise.
2. Marksman 84-95, Sharpshooter 96-107, and Expert 108-119.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun range with basic .50 caliber machinegun targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	208 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 112 RFS:

Unload an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the weapon is in the single-shot mode.
2. Pull the retracting slide handle to the rear and hold it to the rear.
3. Raise the cover.
4. Remove ammunition belt from the feed-way.
5. Physically and visually inspect the chamber and the face of the bolt for any rounds.
6. If a round is present, pull retracting slide handle an additional 1/16 inch to the rear and remove round from the face of the bolt by pushing the round up and out of the T-slot.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required.		

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 113 RFS:

Clear an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the gun is unloaded and in single-shot mode.
2. Pull bolt to the rear.
3. Open the cover.
4. Insert a cleaning rod from the muzzle end of the barrel and pushed through until it can be visually seen in the receiver.
5. Push bolt latch release and ease the bolt forward.
6. Close cover to make a Condition 4 weapon.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 114 RFS:

Perform immediate action for an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun that fails to fire and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Sound misfire.
2. Wait 5 seconds in case of a hang-fire.
3. Within the next 5 seconds to guard against a cook off, pull the retracting slide handle to the rear, observing for ejection and feeding

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. If the retracting slide handle cannot be pulled to the rear, assume a live round is in the chamber, place gun on single-shot mode, and determine whether the barrel is hot or cold. If the barrel is hot wait 15 minutes for the barrel to reach air temperature, raise the feed tray cover, unload the weapon, and perform remedial action.
5. If cartridge was seen ejecting, and feeding took place, release the retracting slide handle and attempt to fire the weapon. If the weapon fails to fire for the second time, wait 5 seconds, within the next 5 seconds pull the bolt to the rear, if round is ejected, place the weapon on single-shot mode, unload, and perform remedial action.
6. If cartridge did not eject, place the gun on single-shot mode, return the retracting slide handle forward assume a live round is in the chamber, and determine whether the barrel is hot or cold. If the barrel is hot, wait 15 minutes for the barrel to reach air temperature and proceed with cold barrel procedures.
7. Once the barrel has reached air temperature, raise the cover, remove ammo belt and links and inspect the chamber.
8. If the weapon is clear, reload and attempt to fire.
9. If cartridge is present, remove the cartridge by performing remedial action.
10. If the weapon still fails to fire, clear the gun, and conduct remedial action by field stripping and inspecting the gun.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0331 - A - 115

RFS:

Perform immediate action for a runaway M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun in a runaway condition and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into normal operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the safest course of action by considering the situation and the number of rounds remaining on the belt.
2. If the situation permits, keep the gun laid on target and let the machinegun fire out all remaining rounds.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. In the situation requires an immediate cease fire, break the ammunition belt to reduce the number of round fired.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

- 1. Machinegun Range

REFERENCES

- 1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0331 - A - 116 RFS:

Perform remedial action for an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun with a stoppage or malfunction, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

- 1. Ensure gun is in single-shot mode and pull retracting slide handle to the rear.
- 2. Open cover.
- 3. Return retracting slide handle forward.
- 4. Physically and visually inspect for cartridge in the chamber and T-slot.
- 5. If round is present in the chamber, insert a cleaning rod into the muzzle end of the machinegun and gently tap the round/casing from the chamber.
- 6. If a round is on the T-slot pull retracting slide handle an additional 1/16 inch to the rear and remove round from the face of the bolt by pushing the round up and out of the T-slot.
- 7. If a ruptured cartridge is present place the ruptured cartridge extractor in the t-slot of the bolt in the same manner as that of a cartridge, let the bolt go forward, then pull bolt to the rear and remove the ruptured case and extractor.
- 8. Return the bolt to the forward position.
- 9. Inspect the weapon to determine the cause of the stoppage.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

- 1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 117

RFS:

Perform remedial action for sluggish operation of an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given ammunition and an M2 heavy machinegun with sluggish operation, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for proper lubrication.
2. Check head space and timing.
3. If weapon operation continues to be sluggish, clean, lubricate, or replace parts, as required.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 118

RFS:

Perform remedial action for stuck cartridge in an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an M2 heavy machinegun with a stoppage or malfunction, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure gun is in single-shot mode and pull retracting slide handle to the rear.
2. Open cover.
3. Keep retracting slide handle to the rear.
4. Physically and visually inspect for cartridge in the chamber and T-slot.
5. If round is present in the chamber, insert a cleaning rod into the muzzle end of the machinegun and gently tap the round/casing from the chamber.
6. If a round is on the T-slot, pull-retracting slide handle an additional 1/16-inch to the rear. Remove round from the face of the bolt by pushing the round up and out of the T-slot.
7. Return the bolt to the forward position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Inspect the weapon to determine the cause of the stoppage.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 119

RFS:

Perform remedial action for a ruptured cartridge in an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given ammunition and an M2 heavy machinegun with a ruptured cartridge, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure gun is in single-shot mode, and pull retracting slide handle to the rear.
2. Open cover.
3. Return retracting slide handle forward.
4. Physically and visually inspect for cartridge in the chamber.
5. If a ruptured cartridge is present, place the ruptured cartridge extractor in the T-slot of the bolt, in the same manner as that of a cartridge.
6. Push the bolt latch release, sending the bolt forward.
7. Pull retracting slide handle to the rear, and remove the ruptured case and extractor.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	10 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0331 - A - 120

RFS:

Prepare an AN/TVS-5 for operation with an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, SL-3 complete AN/TVS-5, and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 11-5855-214-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect sight for dirt and moisture on external surfaces and parts. Clean and dry with lint free cloth.
2. Inspect battery cap for corrosion, damaged contact, spring tension, and cap damage.
3. Inspect daylight cover for dirt or cracks in cover or broken lenses. Rotate holder to be sure all apertures can be used.
4. Inspect each switch and control for smooth mechanical action.
5. Turn tube brightness and reticle brightness switches to OFF position.
6. Ensure daylight cover is on. The daylight cover must be installed when operating the sight during daylight to protect the image intensifier from damage.
7. Install batteries and turn switch to ON position. Image intensifier should glow green color and intensity should change as switch is rotated.
8. Ensure gun is clear before mounting the AN/TVS-5.
9. Raise the cover assembly to the UP position.
10. Ensure the rear sight is in the DOWN position.
11. Position the night sight mounting bracket with the extensions pointing toward the rear of the gun.
12. Pull out the right and left hand locking levers.
13. Slide the mounting bracket to the rear, over the upper edges of the receiver, until it is seated firmly and cannot be moved any further.
14. Lock the bottom left hand locking lever then the top 2 locking levers. Shake the mounting bracket by hand, and retighten the bracket by hand.
15. Close the cover assembly.
16. Mount the sight to the bracket by aligning the scribed line on the sight with the scribed line on the bracket. Tighten the lever screw, then secure the sight to the bracket.
17. Ensure the operator follows the appropriate precautions if operating under unusual conditions.
18. Press eye against the eye guard to open the rubber leaves that prevent the emission of stray light.
19. Turn the tube brightness control on and adjust the tube brightness control to the setting that provides the best target to background contrast.
20. Turn on the reticle brightness control to turn on the light emitting diode. Adjust the reticle light intensity so the reticle is just visible against the background.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

21. Turn the diopter focus ring until the clearest image of the reticle pattern emerges.
22. Turn the objective focus ring until the target in the field of view is sharply defined in the sight picture.
23. Check reticle azimuth adjustment knob by rotating the knob, and check to make sure the reticle moves in azimuth.
24. Check reticle elevation adjustment knob by rotating the knob, and check to make sure the reticle moves in elevation.
25. Check viewed image for edge glow, fixed pattern noise, and resolution.
26. Turn the reticle and tube brightness switches to the OFF position.
27. Remove the battery or battery adapter.
28. Check each knob, switch, and control for smooth mechanical action.
29. Inspect sight for dirt and moisture on external surfaces and parts. Clean and dry with lint free cloth.
30. Inspect battery cap for corrosion, damaged contact, spring tension and cap damage.
31. Inspect daylight cover for dirt or cracks in cover or broken lenses. Rotate holder to be sure all apertures can be used.
32. Inspect each switch and control for smooth mechanical action.
33. Inspect case for dirt, moisture, and mildew. Clean and dry with lint free cloth.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5855-214-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Sight, Crew Service Weapon AN/TVS-5
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 123

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for SL-3 gear for a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given SL-3 gear for a MK19 heavy machinegun cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove all dirt and rust from traversing and elevating mechanism.
2. Extend the traversing and elevating mechanism's elevating mechanism and clean far ends of elevating screw.
3. Clean elevation scale to ensure scale can be read without difficulty.
4. Rotate traversing hand-wheel and clean traversing screw.
5. Inspect the traversing and elevation mechanism for readability of scales and cleanliness of far ends of the traversing and elevating mechanism screws. Perform function check by testing for dead clicks.
6. Lubricate the traversing and elevating mechanism in accordance with lubrication guide, especially the threads on screws and hand-wheels.
7. Clean all dirt and rust from the M3 tripod.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Remove the tripod legs by unscrewing the leg clamping handle on the tripod. Press down on the indexing lever, and remove the leg of the tripod.
9. Remove all rust and dirt from the legs, utilizing CLP and wire brus
10. Remove all rust and dirt from the upper leg, ensuring the inside i free of dirt and corrosion.
11. Visually inspect the tripod components for wear, cracks, dents and damage. Ensure springs are free of rust, corrosion, and deformation.
12. Ensure all parts are properly installed and are in working condition.
13. Insert pintle into pintle bushing ensuring it locks in place.
14. Lubricate the tripod with CLP. Pay special attention to the sleeve and the sleeve latch.
15. Clean all surfaces of the MK64 carriage and cradle assembly with a dry rag.
16. Inspect the MK64 for binding and damaged or missing retaining pins chains, cotter pins, self locking screws, pintle, pintle lock assembly, and bolts. Check all welded areas for cracks. If paint is removed fro the assembly, touch up or repaint.
17. Lightly lubricate all moving parts, and test for smooth operation while working in the lubricant.
18. Clean all surfaces of the pintle adapter assembly with a dry rag.
19. Inspect for missing or damage to the screw, cable, pintle, and quick release pin.
20. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
21. Lubricate the quick release pin.
22. Clean the train and elevation assembly with a dry rag.
23. Inspect for missing or broken screws, washers, nuts, handles, and the chain.
24. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
25. Lightly lubricate all moving parts, and test for smooth operation, while working in the lubricant.
26. Clean the pintle and MK64 mounting adapter with a clean dry rag.
27. Inspect pintle and mounts for cracks and damage. Check for missin bolts, cotter pins, and washers.
28. Lubricate all surfaces with CLP.
29. Clean the ammunition mount assemblies with a dry rag.
30. Inspect the ammunition mount assemblies for missing screws, chains cotter pins, retaining pins, welded pins, and straight pins. Check all welds for cracks. Check for binding or broken springs.
31. Lightly lubricate all surfaces with CLP.
32. Clean the gun and barrel cover with hot soapy water.
33. Inspect for broken zipper, excessive wear or deterioration

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 124

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance on a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun, cleaning gear, and lubricants.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08521A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place weapon on SAFE.
2. Charge the weapon and hold left charger assembly to the rear and down. Return the right charger assembly forward.
3. Insert the tip of a cleaning rod through the right hand receiver rail, as close to the bolt as possible.
4. Push down on live round or case. Force it off the bolt face and out the bottom of the gun. Catch the round as it falls out the bottom of receiver.
5. Open top cover.
6. With 1 hand, reach beneath the feeder. Press the primary and secondary positioning pawls.
7. At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the feeder, and out the feed-throat.
8. Place the weapon on FIRE.
9. Return bolt in forward position.
10. Place weapon on SAFE.
11. Pull straight out on the back plate pin.
12. Lift up slightly on the back plate assembly. Pull it to the rear, until it clicks.
13. Put the safety on FIRE.
14. Support assembly with both hands, and pull rearward to remove. Once removed from the receiver, always place bolt and back plate assembly flat on a clean surface to reduce the possibility of damage.
15. Push down on pivot post to release the secondary drive lever and lift out.
16. Fold down tray with feed slide assembly and tray. Move it to line up the tabs with the slots in the tray.
17. Lift upward on feed slide assembly and tray. Remove. Once removed from weapon system, place with feed pawls up, to reduce the possibility of damage.
18. Hold top cover straight up and pull out on pins, twisting as you pull to remove top cover. Once removed from weapon system, place with front sight blade up, to reduce the possibility of damage.
19. Lift tray out of feeder.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

20. Reach under top of receiver to locate the drive lever lock, and slide the lock rearward.
21. Press down on the primary drive levers pivot post to release both the primary drive lever and vertical cam to remove from the receiver. Once removed from weapon system, place with chrome edge up, to reduce the possibility of damage.
22. Depress the flat leaf spring. Slide alignment guide toward feeder mouth, and pull rearward to lift out.
23. Pull out the ogive plunger.
24. Push in on positioning block and slide toward muzzle of the gun. Pull round positioning block away from wall of receiver to remove.
25. Rotate left and right charger assemblies up.
26. Hook the rim of a spent casing under the lip of the lock plunger. Lift up on the lock plunger to retract it. Slide charger assembly all the way rearward and pull the charger assembly away from the receiver to remove.
27. With the weapon still on FIRE turn the receiver on its side and lift up slightly on lock pin with cartridge link.
28. Squeeze receiver sear and safety together. Then rotate sear housing assembly 90 degrees in either direction.
29. Push tip of sear down while placing safety on SAFE to lock the sear in the down position. Lift out to remove the housing assembly.
30. Wipe or brush away all dirt from all parts, especially the interior of the receiver housing, receiver rails, and feeder.
31. Wipe out bore and chamber, using bore brush and rifle bore cleaner
32. Wipe all parts of receiver dry.
33. Inspect receiver housing for cracks and rust.
34. Inspect receiver rails for burrs.
35. Inspect feeder pawls for no spring action or burrs.
36. Inspect barrel for carbon buildup and pitting in bore or chamber.
37. Check flash suppressor for dents or cracks.
38. Inspect rear sight for rust, legible sight scale, and binding in movable parts.
39. Apply light coat of lubrication to all parts, paying special attention to receiver rails, feeder, and feeder pawls. Working the pawls back and forth to spread the lubricant.
40. Wipe or brush away all dirt on sear housing assembly. Use CLP only, on rag or brush, to clean then wipe dry.
41. Inspect sear, especially rear shoulder of sear for burrs.
42. Apply light coat of lubrication to sear.
43. Wipe and brush off dirt on alignment guide assembly. Then soak assembly in dry cleaning solvent and wipe dry.
44. Inspect alignment guide for deformed or cracked spring, cracks around pin, and looseness of pin.
45. Apply light coat of lubrication.
46. Wipe or brush off dirt on ogive plunger assembly and round positioning block.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

47. Inspect ogive plunger head for spring action and round positioning block for weak spring action.
48. Apply light lubrication, especially on round positioning springs.
49. Wipe or brush off dirt on charger assembly. Use cleaning solvent to clean and wipe dry.
50. Check for burrs on groove edges.
51. Apply light lubrication, especially on grooved edges of rails.
52. Clean vertical cam assembly and primary drive lever, by soaking in cleaning solvent and wiping dry.
53. Inspect vertical cam assembly for burrs, scratches, or aluminum buildup on chromed edge and primary drive lever, especially around pivot posts.
54. Apply light coat of lubrication, especially around pivot posts on drive lever, and chromed edge on vertical cam assembly.
55. Wipe or brush off dirt on secondary drive lever. Then soak in cleaning solvent and wipe dry.
56. Inspect secondary drive lever for missing retaining ring from pivot post, burrs on pivot post, and burrs on forked end.
57. Apply light coat of lubrication especially around pivot pos. Appl only a small amount.
58. Wipe or brush off dirt on feed slide assembly and feed tray. Then soak in cleaning solvent and wipe dry.
59. Inspect feed pawls or feed tray pawl for burrs or binding. Inspect guide rails on tray for burrs.
60. Apply light coat of lubrication, especially to each feed pawl, feed tray pawl, and guide rails.
61. Wipe or brush off dirt from the top cover assembly, and apply cleaning solvent. Wipe dry.
62. Inspect top cover assembly for cracks or rust. Inspect the latch for binding or looseness.
63. Apply light coat of lubrication, especially on the latch mechanism cover pins, pin holes, and the wear pad inside the cover.
64. Wipe or brush off dirt from all parts of the bolt and back plate assembly. Then apply CLP only, using a rag or brush only. Do not submerge in cleaning solvent. Wipe all surfaces dry.
65. Inspect cocking lever for broken or worn rear tip. Inspect for binding or bent guide rods. Inspect recoil springs for weak spring action. Inspect for missing or loose safety wire.
66. Apply light coat of lubrication to all parts, especially bolt face bolt sear, guide rods, recoil springs, bolt rails, and cam followers.
67. Clean, inspect, and lubricate the MK64 mount components.
68. Lubricate all parts with LSAT or LAW, depending on climatic conditions.
69. Squeeze sear and safety together. Then place safety on FIRE. Keeping pressure on safety, line up sear housing assembly at right angle to barrel centerline. Twist housing 90 degrees until assembly locks in place.
70. Rotate charger assemblies to straight up position. Line up lugs of charger with slots in receiver rail. Insert charger lugs into slots.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

71. Hold tightly against rail, and slide forward until it locks in place.
72. Insert the round positioning block into slots, with the tang end forward. Push against block, and slide it toward the rear until block locks in place.
73. Insert ogive plunger.
74. Position the alignment guide assembly so the pin is lined up with slot in the feeder wall.
75. Depress the leaf spring, and slide the alignment guide all the way into the feeder, until it clicks.
76. Slide vertical cam assembly through rear of receiver. Raised portion should slide over hole in receiver and the drive lever lock should be underneath.
77. Engage forked end in the notch of the receiver.
78. While holding vertical cam assembly in place slide primary drive lever into receiver.
79. Engage pivot post of lever through holes in receiver and vertical cam. At the same time, slide the drive lever lock forward on the vertical cam, just beneath top of receiver.
80. Drop feed tray into top of feeder, with the recessed side up, ensuring the pin holes on the tray line up with the lugs on the receiver.
81. Position feed slide assembly so tabs are lined up with slots in the tray.
82. Insert tabs into slots. Then drop feed slide assembly into tray.
83. Hold top cover straight up. Line up the pin holes in the feed tray, top cover, and receiver lugs. Then insert top cover pins on both sides, ensuring the cross pin enters receiver.
84. Lift the feed slide assembly and tray, while engaging the forked end of the secondary drive lever with the feed slide pin.
85. Press the raised pivot post on the secondary drive lever through the hole in the top cover, Press the tray firmly against the top cover.
86. To insert the bolt and back plate assembly, make sure the cocking lever is cocked and forward. Place safety on FIRE, and insert the assembly into receiver.
87. When assembly stops, press the receiver sear and slide the assembly all the way forward. Then insert the back plate pin. to lock the assembly in place.
88. Ensure the secondary drive lever is properly engaged and the feed slide assembly is all the way to the left.
89. Close the cover.
90. Pull bolt to the rear.
91. Place the safety on SAFE.
92. Press the trigger. Bolt should not go forward.
93. Place the safety on FIRE.
94. Press trigger and allow the bolt to spring home freely, in order to conduct firing pin inspection.
95. Place the safety on SAFE.
96. Open top cover.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

97. Inspect firing pin and bolt face for signs of worn or damaged part
98. Move secondary drive lever back and forth, to ensure it moves freely.
99. Press the feed pawls to check for spring pressure.
100. Ensure the secondary drive lever is to the right and engaged under the feed tray. Then slide the feed slide to the left.
101. Ensuring the bolt is forward, close the cover and ensure it locks

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 125

RFS:

Ground mount a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a MK19 heavy machinegun, SL-3 complete and a MK-64 MOD 7 gun cradle, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Turn the front leg clamp handle counter-clockwise to loosen the front leg of the tripod.
2. Adjust the leg to the desired angle, and tighten the front leg clamp.
3. Grab the left trail leg with left hand, With a snapping motion, pull the left leg to the left, engaging the sleeve latch.
4. Unscrew the leg clamping handles on the tripod.
5. Press down on the indexing levers, and extend the legs of the tripod to the desired length.
6. Align the indexing lever studs with one of the holes in the tripod leg extensions.
7. Release pressure on the indexing levers, allowing the studs to fit the desired holes.
8. Tighten the leg clamping handles.
9. Secure the tripod legs by stamping the metal shoe on each tripod leg into the ground.
10. Sandbag each tripod leg to stabilize the MK19 for firing, as necessary.
11. Unlock the tripod pintle lock release cam.
12. Insert the gun cradle's pintle into the tripod pintle bushing.
13. Lock the pintle lock release cam to secure the gun cradle.
14. Check the gun cradle by pulling up on it slightly, ensuring it is seated and locked.
15. Rotate the elevating hand-wheel on the traversing and elevating mechanism until approximately 1 ½ inches, or 2 fingers, are visible on the upper elevating screw.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

16. Rotate the traversing slide on the traversing and elevating mechanism until approximately 2 fingers are visible on the lower elevating screw.
17. Rotate the traversing hand-wheel on the traversing and elevating mechanism until the offset head is centered on the traversing screw. The traversing and elevating mechanism is now roughly centered.
18. Remove the stow pin from the gun cradle.
19. Align the holes in the upper offset head of the traversing and elevating mechanism with the rear holes in the gun cradle.
20. Lower the traversing slide of the traversing and elevating mechanism over the traversing bar on the tripod, with the traversing slide to the rear and traversing wheel to the left.
21. Ensure the locking lever is secured by turning the locking lever clockwise.
22. Insert the quick-release pin from the right.
23. Lift the MK19 into the gun cradle.
24. Align the grooves on the receiver with the lugs in the gun cradle, and slide the receiver forward.
25. Align the sear mounting holes with the gun cradle mounting holes.
26. Secure the rear of the weapon by inserting the retaining pin through the cradle and sear assembly. Rotate it until it locks in place.
27. If a safety clip is attached, use it to secure the retaining pin in place.
28. Attach the feed-throat to the MK19 by squeezing together each set of grip pins and attaching the feed-throat to the front left-hand side of the receiver assembly.
29. Ensure the feed-throat pins align with the pin holes in the receiver. Relax pressure on the spring-loaded grip pins, so they snap into place.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 126

RFS:

Vehicle mount a MK19 heavy machinegun to an M-1043/44 hardback HMMWV

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun, a MK-64 MOD 7 gun cradle, and an M-1043/44 hardback HMWVV with an M4 pedestal, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the turret lock pin.
2. Install the universal weapons adapter.
3. Replace the turret lock pin.
4. Loosen the locking bolts on the universal weapons adapter on the HMMWV by turning the bolts counter-clockwise.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Insert the lower end of the pintle adapter into the universal weapons adapter.
6. Tighten the bolts by turning it clockwise. Pull up on the pintle adapter to ensure it is secured.
7. Remove the quick-release pin from the pintle adapter.
8. Insert the MK64 MOD 7 gun cradle into the top of the pintle adapter and replace the quick-release pin.
9. Ensure the traversing and elevating is inserted into the pivot arm assembly.
10. Remove the train and elevating quick-release pin.
11. Attach the train and elevating assembly to the holes in the rear of the gun cradle.
12. Replace the quick-release pin and rotate it to the locked position.
13. Unscrew the train lock handle and hex bolt, separating the clamp into 2 parts.
14. Place the 2 halves of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal.
15. Replace the bolt and the train lock handle. Tighten them by alternately utilizing a 9/16 inch wrench.
16. Tighten the train lock handle and the hex bolt.
17. Remove the hex head bolts from the positioning clamp.
18. Place both parts of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal, ¼ inch below the train and elevating clamp.
19. Insert the hex head bolts in the positioning clamp and tighten the bolts to lock the clamp in place. Ensure it does not move up or down on the pedestal.
20. Secure the second clamp ¼ inch above the train and elevating clamp utilizing step 15.
21. Mount the MK19 machinegun.
22. Partly unscrew the wing-nut on the threaded stud of the bracket mounting assembly.
23. Align the stud with the forward groove in the side plate of the gun cradle.
24. Push the bracket mounting assembly up until the heads of the 2 mounting pins align with the 2 forward keyholes.
25. Push the heads of the 2 mounting pins into the keyholes and allow the bracket mounting assembly to slide down.
26. Tighten the wing-nut behind the side plate of the cradle.
27. Insert the 2 hooks on the empty case catch bag through the rear holes in the gun cradle.
28. Engage the single front hanger on the catch bag with the hook on the gun cradle.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0331 - A - 127

RFS:

Load a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a mounted, SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To put the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the machinegun is on SAFE.
2. Ensure the bolt is in the forward position.
3. Attach the feed-throat to the weapon.
4. Open cover.
5. Insert the first round of the ammunition belt into the feeder (female link first).
6. Push the first round across the primary feed pawl. To move the feed slide assembly to the left, push the secondary drive lever to the right
7. Close the cover assembly.
8. Grasp the charger assemblies, palms down.
9. Press in on the charger assembly locks.
10. Rotate the handles down, and pull them sharply to the rear.
11. Lock the bolt to the rear, and return the charger assemblies forward to their original upright position.
12. To make a Condition 3 weapon, place the safety switch to FIRE and press the trigger to come to half load.
13. Grasp, unlock, and turn the charger assemblies downward. Lock the bolt to the rear.
14. Ensure the safety switch is on SAFE.
15. Return the charger assemblies to their original upright position.
16. Upon completion, the MK19 is fully loaded, in Condition 1, and ready to fire.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 128

RFS:

Operate a MK19 heavy machinegun

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun and ammunition; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08521A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Open top cover.
2. Check firing pin to ensure tip protruding through face of bolt is not chipped or broken.
3. Lubricate bolt.
4. Move secondary drive lever back and forth to ensure moves freely.
5. Press pawls to check spring action.
6. Inspect link guide for roughness and excessive heat discoloration.
7. Ensure secondary drive lever is engaged with feed slide pin.
8. Move feed slide assembly to the left.
9. Ensure the bolt is forward.
10. Close top cover.
11. Pull bolt to the rear.
12. Place weapon on SAFE. Inspect ammunition for cleanliness, corrosion, and loose ogive.
13. Open top cover.
14. Check chamber for carbon buildup.
15. Use cleaning rod with rag and punch bore.
16. Place weapon on FIRE.
17. Hold 1 charger assembly, while pressing the trigger. Ride bolt home.
18. Place weapon on SAFE.
19. Squeeze spring loaded pins on feed-throat, and insert into slots on both sides of feeder.
20. Inspect ammunition for cleanliness, corrosion, and loose ogive.
21. Assume firing position behind gun.
22. With cover open, insert first round through feed-throat.
23. Insert first round into feeder, female link first. Push and slide the round across the first pawl. Don't roll the round.
24. Ensure the rounds are straight and firmly seated between first and second pawl.
25. Move feed slide assembly to the left.
26. Close top cover.
27. Pull bolt to the rear.
28. Place weapon on FIRE.
29. Press trigger to half load.
30. Pull charger assemblies sharply to the rear.
31. Push the charger assemblies back to forward position, and rotate handles up. To come to full load.
32. Place weapon on SAFE.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

33. Estimate range to target.
34. Adjust rear sight to the range of the target.
35. Sight in on the base of the target, using sight alignment and picture.
36. Place weapon on FIRE.
37. Place hands on control grips, with thumbs on trigger.
38. Press trigger to fire, firing 3 to 5 round burst.
39. React to fire commands by adjusting traversing and elevating mechanism. Adjust traverse first, then elevation and rate of fire. Maintain a 3 to 5 round burst until round hits within 5 meters of target.
40. Observe the function of the gun, to anticipate failures.
41. Place the weapon on SAFE.
42. Charge the weapon and hold the left charger assembly to the rear and down. Return the right charger assembly forward.
43. Insert tip of cleaning rod through the right hand receiver rail.
44. Place the cleaning rod section on top of the live round or cartridge case, as close to the bolt face as possible. Push down, and catch the round as it falls.
45. Open top cover.
46. With one hand, reach beneath the feeder and press the primary and secondary positioning pawls. At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the feeder and out of the feed-throat.
47. Return linked rounds to ammo can.
48. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and bore for ammunition.
49. Make a Condition 4 weapon.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range with targets appropriate for MK19 40mm machinegun

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 130

RFS:

Unload a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To ensure a condition 4 weapon.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Move the safety selector switch to the SAFE position.
2. Charge the weapon and leave charging handles to the rear and down. Return the right charger assembly forward.
3. Insert a section of the cleaning rod through the right side of the receiver rail.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Place the cleaning rod section on top of the live round or cartridge case, as close to the bolt face as possible. Push down, and catch the round as it falls.
5. Open the top cover assembly.
6. Remove any ammunition from the feed tray by reaching beneath the feed tray and pressing the primary and secondary positioning pawls.
7. At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the MK19 through the feed-throat.
8. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and bolt face ensuring no live rounds are in the weapon.
9. Place the safety switch to FIRE.
10. While maintaining rearward pressure on the charger assembly, press the trigger and ease the bolt forward.
11. Place the safety switch to SAFE to make a Condition 4 weapon.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 131 RFS:

Clear a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To ensure a condition 4 weapon.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Pull bolt to the rear.
2. Open cover.
3. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and bolt face again, ensuring no live rounds are in the weapon.
4. Place the safety switch to FIRE.
5. While maintaining rearward pressure on the charger assembly, press the trigger and ease the bolt forward.
6. Place the safety switch to SAFE to make a Condition 4 weapon.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 132

RFS:

Perform immediate action for a MK19 heavy machinegun with a failure to fire

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun with a malfunction, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Sound off "Misfire."
2. Wait 10 seconds in case of a hang fire.
3. Pull the bolt to the rear, while observing for feeding and ejecting. Return charger assemblies forward and up.
4. If feeding and ejecting occur relay on target and attempt to fire.
5. If weapon experiences a second consecutive misfire, sound off "Misfire." Wait 10 seconds and place on SAFE. Perform remedial action
6. If weapon fails to feed or eject, pull bolt to the rear. Place weapon on SAFE, and perform remedial action.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M203	40mm grenade launcher	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. GENADMIN MSG R 280802Z Feb 97 ZYB

EVENT: 0331 - A - 133

RFS:

Perform immediate action for a runaway MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a MK19 heavy machinegun with a runaway, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Considering the situation and amount of ammunition remaining, determine the safest course of action.
2. If requirement is immediate, with the right hand hold the weapon on target. With left hand, press charger assembly lock and lower charger assembly.
3. If requirement is not immediate and a limited amount of ammunition remains, hold weapon on target until remaining rounds on belt have fire
4. Place weapon on SAFE and perform remedial action.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 134

RFS:

Perform remedial action for a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a MK19 heavy machinegun with malfunction or stoppage, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the bolt is to the rear and the weapon is on SAFE.
2. Charge the weapon, and leave charging handles to the rear and down. Return the right charger assembly forward.
3. Insert a section of the cleaning rod through the right side of the receiver rail.
4. Place the cleaning rod section on top of the live round or cartridge case, as close to the bolt face as possible. Push down, and catch the round as it falls.
5. Open the top cover assembly.
6. Remove any ammunition from the feed tray by reaching beneath the feed tray and pressing the primary and secondary positioning pawls.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the MK19 through the feed-throat.
8. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and bolt face, ensuring no live rounds are in the weapon.
9. Place the safety switch to FIRE.
10. While maintaining rearward pressure on the charger assembly, press the trigger, and ease the bolt forward.
11. Place the safety switch to SAFE to make a Condition 4 weapon.
12. Once in Condition 4, conduct detailed inspection to investigate the cause of the stoppage or malfunction.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>			<u>Quantity</u>
B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19		4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0331 - A - 135

RFS:

Perform remedial action for a MK19 heavy machinegun with jammed bolt

Condition: Given ammunition and an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun with a stoppage, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place the safety on SAFE.
2. Press the charger assembly locks, and rotate the charger assemblies down.
3. Pull the charger assemblies to the rear, as far as possible. Maintain rearward pressure on the assemblies while an assistant lifts the top cover.
4. Pull the charger assemblies to the rear until the bolt locks to the rear. Ensure the bolt will stay to the rear before releasing rearward tension on the charger assemblies. Rotate to the upright position.
5. Remove any ammunition from the feed tray by reaching beneath the feed tray and pressing the primary and secondary positioning pawls.
6. At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the MK19 through the feed-throat.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Insert a section of the cleaning rod through the right side of the receiver rail.
8. Place the cleaning rod section on top of the live round or cartridge case, as close to the bolt face as possible. Push down, and catch the round as it falls. This action forces the round or cartridge case out of the MK19.
9. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and bolt face again, ensuring no live rounds are in the weapon.
10. Press the charger assembly locks and rotate the charger assemblies down.
11. Place the safety on FIRE. Depress the trigger, and ride the bolt home.
12. Ensure the feed slide assembly is to the left and the secondary drive lever is engaged with the feed slide pin.
13. Close the top cover.
14. Reload, relay, and continue mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Do not attempt to remove an M383 HE projectile or cartridge. Immediately contact EOD.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	4 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required.			

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. GENADMIN MSG R 280802Z Feb 97 ZYB

EVENT: 0331 - A - 136

RFS:

Perform remedial action for a MK19 heavy machinegun with bore obstruction

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun with a bore obstruction (any round except M383 HE), while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: To return the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Cease fire immediately.
2. Place the safety on SAFE.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Clear immediate area of all personnel.
4. Ensure weapon has reached air temperature.
5. Pull the bolt to the rear and hold with left charger assembly to the rear and down. At the same time, catch the round as it is ejected.
6. Insert a section of the cleaning rod through the right side of the receiver rail.
7. Place the cleaning rod section on top of the live round or cartridge case, as close to the bolt face as possible, Push down, and catch the round as it falls. This action forces the round or cartridge case out of the MK19.
8. Open the top cover assembly.
9. Remove any ammunition from the feed tray by reaching beneath the feed tray and pressing the primary and secondary positioning pawls.
10. At the same time, slide the linked rounds out of the MK19 through the feed-throat.
11. Place round removal tool collar over end of flash suppressor and screw the 5 cap screws into slots on the flash suppressor.
12. Attach either end of the handle to the end of the threaded rod.
13. Position cup of threaded rod over ogive.
14. Screw threaded rod into barrel, and push out projectile into hands of assistant.
15. Dispose of round properly.
16. Reload, relay, and continue mission

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Do not attempt to remove an M383 HE projectile or cartridge. Immediately contact EOD.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Machinegun Range (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun 40MM, MK19 Mod 3
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. GENADMIN MSG R 280802Z Feb 97 ZYB

EVENT: 0331 - A - 257 RFS:
Engage targets with grenades for distance and accuracy

Condition: Given practice grenades and targets at 20, 30, and 40

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

meters; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on 2 of 3 targets at each station within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage a fighting position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
2. Engage a trench target at 40 meters with 3 grenades, from the standing position.
3. Engage a mortar position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
4. Engage a troop in the open at 20 meters with 3 grenades, from the alternate prone position.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	12 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-30 Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 300 RFS:

Perform operator maintenance on a AN/PVS-4 individual weapons night sight or AN/TVS-5 crew served weapon night sight

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PVS-4 individual weapons night sight or AN/TVS-5 crew served weapon night sight, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 115855-213-10 or TM 11-5855-214-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clean the sight with a dry, lint free cloth.
2. Inspect the sight for dirt and moisture on external surfaces.
3. Clean the carrying bag and dry with a lint free cloth.
4. Inspect carrying bag for dirt, moisture, and mildew.
5. Clean the battery cap, and dry with a lint free cloth.
6. Inspect battery for corrosion, damaged contacts, spring tension, and cap damage.
7. Clean the daylight cover, and wipe dry with lint free cloth.
8. Inspect the daylight cover for dirt or cracks in the cover or broke lenses. Rotate the holder to be sure all apertures can be used.
9. Clean the switches and controls and dry with a lint free cloth.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

10. Inspect the switches and controls for smooth mechanical action.
11. Inspect the tube brightness switch by turning it on. The image intensifier should glow green. Color intensity should change as switch is rotated.
12. Inspect reticle brightness switch by turning it on. Rotate control to check for change in reticle intensity.
13. With reticle brightness switch on, inspect diopter focus ring for smooth movement. Adjust for sharp image of reticle, ensuring the correct pattern for weapon system.
14. Inspect objective focus ring for smooth movement.
15. Inspect reticle elevation and azimuth adjustment knobs by rotating and ensuring the reticle pattern moves up and down the left to right.
16. Clean lenses with lint free, brush and lint free dry cloth.
17. Inspect lenses for scratches and chips.
18. Inspect viewed image for edge glow, fixed pattern noise, and resolution.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5855-213-10 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Sight Individual Served Weapon AN/PVS-4
 2. TM 11-5855-214-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Sight, Crew Served Weapon AN/TVS-5
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 301

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance on a AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, and authorized clear materials.

Standard: In accordance with TM 11-5855-262-10-2.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Open the carrying case and inventory items.
2. Check the maintenance record, and verify completion of the 180-day service.
3. Inspect all lenses for dirt or fingerprint residue. If necessary, clean and dry lenses with water and lens tissue.
4. Inspect lenses for cracks or damage. Scratches and gouges are acceptable if operation is not affected.
5. Ensure the battery cap and battery cap retainer are present.
6. Remove the battery cap and inspect for moisture, cracks, and corroded or defective spring contacts. Inspect for the presence of preformed packing inside the cap.
7. Rotate diopter adjustment rings to make sure the eye pieces move freely through the range of motion and are not loose.
8. Inspect eye pieces for dirt, dust, and cracked or torn cups. Inspect for bent, broken, or improperly fitting eyecup. If necessary, clean with water.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Slide each eye piece back and forth to check for binding or looseness.
10. Rotate objective lens focus ring to ensure free range of movement.
11. Inspect the infinity focus-locking ring for tightness.
12. Inspect for cracked, torn, or missing lens cap. Inspect cord for cuts, damage, or frayed ends. Re-tie ends if necessary.
13. Remove any batteries and turn the switch from reset/OFF to ON to IR/pull. Each position should have a definite stopping point. Inspect for broken or missing knob.
14. Re-install batteries and check IR, and momentary IR if so equipped functions by following the operating instructions in paragraph 2-27.
15. Remove goggles from the head mount while in operation. Goggles automatically shut off.
16. Inspect head mount for cuts, tears, fraying, holes, cracks, or defective fasteners.
17. Inspect head mount for dirt, dust, or corrosion.
18. Inspect head mount for dirt, dust, or corrosion.
19. Press the socket-release button and check for free motion.
20. Rotate the IR focus lens to ensure free movement.
21. Inspect for dirt, dust, scratches, or damage. If necessary, clean with water and dry with lens tissue. Install compass assembly and turn on goggles. When the illumination button is depressed, compass is visible.
22. Remove all items from the carrying case and shake out loose dirt and foreign material.
23. Inspect the carrying case for tears, cuts, excess wear, or damage to mounting clips.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Night Vision Goggles
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 302

RFS:

Operate AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09500A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Install battery(ies).
2. Don the head mount or helmet mount.
3. Install the goggles into the mount socket.
4. Depress the side buttons and move the goggles fore or aft to set th appropriate eye relief.
5. Adjust straps.
6. Turn the power switch to the on position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Adjust the tilt adjustment lock knob, if helmet mounted.
8. Adjust the eye pieces by sliding them together or apart so each eye can observe the entire field of view.
9. While obstructing view through the right eye piece, rotate the left diopter adjustment ring to obtain the clearest view.
10. Adjust the eye relief distance by pressing the socket release button and sliding the goggles fore or aft to obtain a full field of view.
11. Readjust the diopter adjustment rings for the best image.
12. Observe an object and adjust the objective lens focus until the sharpest image is obtained.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09500A-10/1 Operator's Manual AN/PVS-7B
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 374

RFS:

Locate an unknown position by resection

Condition: Given a lensatic compass, topographical map, protractor, and map pen.

Standard: By determining a six-digit grid coordinate of an unknown position within 100 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Orient the map.
2. Visually identify 2 known points on the map.
3. Determine the magnetic azimuth to one of the known points from your unknown position, utilizing a lensatic compass.
4. Convert the magnetic azimuth to a grid azimuth.
5. Convert the grid azimuth to a back azimuth.
6. Utilizing the back azimuth, draw a line on the map from the known point back towards your unknown position which extends beyond the estimated distance of the unknown position.
7. Repeat steps 3 through 6.
8. Determine the grid coordinates of the unknown position on the map where the lines cross.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 707

RFS:

Construct a machinegun firing position

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete machinegun, a primary (and, if required, a secondary) sector of fire, a designated position, an assigned Final Protective Line (FPL) or Principal Direction of Fire (PDF), E-tool, as a member of a machinegun team/squad and while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: To the proper dimensions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Team/Squad Leader must determine type of position to construct depending on the mission. Use a "T" shaped position if a primary and secondary sector of fire are assigned, "L" shaped if only a primary sector of fire is assigned, and a horseshoe shaped if 180-degree sector is needed. If M2 or MK19 is used, there is only 1 platform.
2. The Ammunition Bearer assumes a position to provide security and covers the assigned sector of fire.
3. Team/Squad Leader assigns primary and secondary (if required) sectors of fire, and a principle direction of fire, or a final protective line.
4. The Gunner assumes position behind the gun, and the Team Leader places the sector limit stakes in while Gunner aims in on the sector limit.
5. The Team/Squad Leader traces the position outline.
6. The Gunner removes the gun and assumes a position to cover the primary sector of fire.
7. The crew starts digging out the platform. Once the platform is 4 to 6 inches deep, the gun is placed on the platform to cover the primary sector of fire until the position is complete. The platform may require sandbags to reinforce and hold the gun in position.
8. The crew digging the hole uses the dirt to build up the parapet to the front, then flanks, and finally the rear, to form the parapet 1 meter wide.
9. Once the platforms are dug down, the Team Leader starts to prepare the range card.
10. The crew digs out the position deep enough to protect the crew and still let the Gunner fire the gun.
11. Revetments may be required to reinforce the walls to prevent them from caving in.
12. The crew digs grenade sumps. Quantity and location depend on the type of position being dug.
13. With the Gunner behind the gun, the crew clears the fields of fire.
14. The crew camouflages the position with vegetation from behind their position.
15. Overhead cover is constructed for the position.
16. The Ammunition Bearer digs a one-man fighting position to the flank of the position, so he can provide security.
17. The Ammunition Bearer digs a trench from his position to the gun position in order to resupply the gun with ammunition or relief.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Training area where digging is permitted

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 3. FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 708

RFS:

Place the M240G medium machinegun into action

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, 10 rounds of dummy ammunition, as a machinegun team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with the references, without error, and in a time limit of 2 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Squad Leader carries the binoculars and compass and ensures the Team Leader has the tripod and 1 box of ammunition. Gunner has the machinegun. Ammunition Bearer has the spare barrel case, 1 box of ammunition, and flex mount with traversing and elevating mechanism.
2. On the command "Fall in," the team forms on line with 5 paces between team members.
3. On the command "Take equipment," team members take 1 step forward and pick-up equipment.
4. On the command "Form for gun drill," team members assume the prone position with their equipment in the following position: Team Leader has tripod to his right with trail legs to the rear, front leg uppermost, ammunition box to his left, latch to the front. Gunner has the machinegun to his right, muzzle pointing forward. Ammunition Bearer has spare barrel case to his right with muzzle to the rear and ammunition box to his left with the latch to the front.
5. On the command "Examine equipment," each member examines his equipment.
6. The Team Leader examines his ammunition first. (Linked dummy ammunition should be used for this training.) To do so, he opens the can and pulls out the ammunition ensuring it is properly linked, free of dirt and corrosion, and that the double link is up and ready for loading. He places the ammunition back in the box and closes the cover. He then places the ammunition to his left.
7. The Team Leader then examines the tripod by ensuring the legs are folded closely together. With his right hand, he checks the sleeve latch to ensure it has tension and will function properly. He ensures the pintle bushing is free of dirt and burrs, the sleeve lock latch and pintle lock release cam are in working order, and pintle lock release cam is down.
8. The Gunner examines the gun by pulling the bolt to the rear. He places the safety on "S," raises the cover, and checks the chamber to ensure the gun is clear.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. The Gunner then removes the barrel to ensure the bore is clean and checks the flash suppressor for cracks. He checks the front sight for tightness or damage to the blade, and ensures the gas collar is affixed to the plug. He ensures the barrel changing handle moves freely and replaces the barrel, ensuring 2 to 7 clicks.
10. The Gunner checks the cover to ensure the feed arm/pivot arm/feed arm fork move freely and are lubricated. He pushes on feed pawls, ensuring they have spring tension, and closes the cover.
11. The Gunner places safety on FIRE, pulls the trigger, rides the bolt forward, and sets the rear sight on 500 meters.
12. The Ammunition Bearer begins by examining the ammunition in the same manner as the Team Leader.
13. The Ammunition Bearer removes the flex mount from the spare barrel case and inspects the traversing and elevating mechanism.
14. The Ammunition Bearer then centers the elevating hand-wheel and offset head. He checks the locking lever on the traversing slide to ensure it moves freely, and inspects flex mount, ensuring the locking pin and pintle are clean and free of burrs.
15. The Ammunition Bearer then removes barrel from spare barrel case and inspects the bore for cleanliness. He inspects the flash suppressor for cracks and the front sight for tightness or damage. He ensures the gas collar is affixed to gas plug, barrel changing handle moves freely, and the barrel socket is clean.
16. The Ammunition Bearer returns the spare barrel and flex mount to the case, and ensures all SL-3 components are present.
17. Once examinations are completed, individual team members will report any discrepancies that cannot be fixed to the Squad Leader.
18. If there are no discrepancies, the team members will individually report. The Ammunition Bearer reports, "Ammunition Bearer correct." The Gunner reports, "Ammunition Bearer and Gunner correct." The Team Leader reports, "All correct."
19. Once the report is given, the Squad Leader announces ADDRAC and gives the command "Gun to be mounted here, front, action."
20. Team Leader rises, grasps right leg of tripod near the head with right hand, and grasps the ammunition box with his left hand. He rotates the tripod onto his right hip with the left leg up, and moves forward to gun position.
21. Upon arrival at the gun position, the Team Leader places the ammunition can to his front so it will be approximately on line with the tripod head when the tripod is opened.
22. The Team Leader grasps the right leg shoe with the right hand and left leg shoe with left hand. He then raises the tripod to the vertical position, chest high, and separates the legs with a quick jerk, ensuring the sleeve latch engages, locking the tripod in the open position.
23. The Team Leader then places the tripod on the ground with front leg pointing in the direction of fire, and stamps the rear legs into the ground.
24. Once the tripod is set, the Team Leader assumes prone position on left hip at the left of the tripod.
25. The Ammunition Bearer arrives at the same time the Team Leader assumes the prone position on left hip at the left of the tripod.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

26. Once at the gun position, the Ammunition Bearer removes the flex mount from spare barrel case and hands it to the Team Leader. He then places spare barrel case on line where the muzzle of the gun will be. The spare barrel is placed on the case with muzzle pointing down range and sight toward the gun.
27. The Ammunition Bearer then moves to the flank to provide security.
28. As soon as the Ammunition Bearer hands the Team Leader the flex mount, the Team Leader inserts the pintle into the pintle bushing and locks it down. He then lowers the traversing slide over the traversing bar of the tripod, centers it on the 0 graduation line, and locks it down.
29. The Gunner arrives to the gun position when the Team Leader receives the flex mount from the Ammunition Bearer.
30. The Gunner slides the recesses on the receiver into the mounts forward bushing, rotates the gun down into position on the rear of the mount, and inserts the locking pin to secure the gun.
31. Once the gun is mounted, the Gunner assumes the prone position behind the gun and raises the cover. The Team Leader places the belt o dummy ammunition ensuring the first round is against the cartridge stop and aligned with the feed aperture. The Gunner closes the cover, and when ready to fire, reports "Up" to the Team Leader.
32. The Team Leader reports "Gun up" to the Squad Leader.
33. Once the Team Leader reports "Gun up" the Squad Leader commands "Out of action."
34. The Gunner raises the cover. The Assistant Gunner removes the dummy ammunition. The Gunner inspects the receiver and chamber to ensure they are clear. He then pulls the trigger riding the bolt forward, and closes the cover.
35. The Gunner then removes the locking pin from the flex mount and removes the gun from the mount. He lowers rear sight, grasps the carrying handle with right hand, and returns to his original position.
36. The Team Leader unlocks the traversing slide, unlocks the pintle latch, and removes the flex mount from the tripod.
37. The Ammunition Bearer arrives at the gun position before Team Leader, removes the flex mount and places spare barrel in spare barrel case. The he receives flex mount from Team Leader and puts it in the spare barrel case. He closes spare barrel case, grasps case in right hand, and returns to original position.
38. The Team Leader grasps the tripod near the head with his right hand, and rotates it up to his right hip with left leg up. He then returns to original position.
39. The Team Leader drops to his right knee and places tripod in vertical position with rear shoes on the deck supporting it. With the right hand near the head and left hand, he lowers front leg and slides right hand down to release the sleeve latch. Then with the left hand, he closes left leg to the right, and lowers the tripod to the deck.
40. Team Leader assumes the prone position and reports "Up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

2. Placing the M240G medium machinegun into action must be completed within 2 minutes. The time will begin with the Squad Leader's command "Action" and ends when the team announces "Gun up."
3. This is an evaluation of the team and not the individual. Each member of the machinegun team must perform his responsibilities.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A135	CTG, 7.62mm, DUMMY	10 each
	Ammunition is not expended.		

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: 0331 - A - 709 RFS:

Change barrels for an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, as a machinegun team, while wearing fighting loads

Standard: In accordance with the references, without error, and in a time limit of 30 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Squad Leader gives the command "Change barrel."
2. With the bolt to the rear, the Gunner places the safety on "S" and depresses the barrel-locking latch, keeping his hand on the barrel-locking latch throughout the barrel change.
3. The Team Leader grasps the barrel-changing handle and removes the barrel from the gun placing it to the left of the spare barrel case. He then picks up the spare barrel by the changing handle and inserts it into the gun. He counts the number of clicks while rotating the charging handle down to ensure proper head space.
4. The Gunner depresses the barrel-locking latch to assist the Team Leader and then places the gun on FIRE and resumes his firing position.
5. The Team Leader reports the "Gun up" to the Squad Leader.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. A barrel change for a M240G medium machinegun must be completed within 30 seconds. The time begins with the command "Change barrel" and ends when the team announces "Gun up."
3. This is an evaluation of the team and not the individual. Each member of the machinegun team must perform his responsibilities.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 710

RFS:

(Table III) Execute a tripod mounted field zero firing exercise with the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun; 32 rounds of ammunition; and target at 500 meters; as a machinegun team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining beaten zone impacts on target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Machinegun team assumes position on the gun. The Team Leader is located to the left of the Gunner. The Gunner is behind the gun, and the Ammunition Bearer provides security.
2. Team Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a point target at 50 meters, firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner sets the rear sight elevation at the range to target.
4. The Gunner centers the rear sight windage.
5. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Team Leader with a 32 round belt of ammunition and Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
6. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Team Leader announces "Gun up."
7. Once the Gunner fires the initial burst, the Team Leader observes the impacts and gives the Gunner corrections until beaten zone is achieved on target.
8. The Gunner manipulates the traversing and elevating mechanism to the Team Leader's corrections until beaten zone is achieved on target.
9. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
10. The Team Leader uses the combination tool to unlock the front sight retaining strap and rotate it upwards. He then rotates aiming point clockwise if below, to move the sights to the target. One half turn will move the strike of the round 4 1/4 inches at 200 meters. If the post blade is more than halfway out, replace the post blade with number 2 blade.
11. If the target is to left of the aiming point the Team Leader moves the front sight protector to the left to move the sight to the target, using the hex wrench. He must loosen the adjusting screw and tighten the opposite side screw exactly the same amount. One half rotation of the adjusting screw will move the point of impact 3 1/8 inches. If the target is to the right of the aiming point, the front sight protector must be moved to the right.
12. The Gunner fires one 6 to 8 round burst for confirmation.
13. The crew uses the same procedures for the spare barrel.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with point target at 500 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	32 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 711

RFS:

(Table IV) Execute a tripod mounted firing exercise with the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun; 336 rounds of ammunition; NBC MOPP Level 4; and targets between 400 or 1000 meters, as a machinegun team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 16 out of a possible 21 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Machinegun team assumes position on the gun. The Team Leader is positioned to the left of the Gunner. The Gunner is positioned behind the gun, and the Ammunition Bearer provides security.
2. The Team Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a double E-silhouette at 800 meters, firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner sets the rear sight elevation at the range to target.
4. The Gunner loads a belt of 224 rounds and makes a Condition 1 weapon.
5. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Team Leader announces "Gun up."
6. Once the Gunner fires the initial burst, the Team Leader observes the impacts and gives the Gunner corrections within 25 seconds to achieve beaten zone on target.
7. The Gunner manipulates the traversing and elevating mechanism to the Team Leader's corrections to achieve beaten zone on target.
8. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
9. Engage a single, double E-silhouette target at 400 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

10. Engage a single, double E-silhouette target at 700 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 25 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
11. Engage vehicle type silhouette target at 1000 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 25 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
12. Engage multiple double E-silhouettes targets at 400 and 700 meters with 32 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 to engage the target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
13. Engage multiple double E-silhouettes targets at 550 and 800 meters with 32 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
14. Engage multiple double E-silhouettes targets at 400 and 700 and a vehicle type silhouette at 1000 meters, with 48 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in time limit of 45 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
15. Engage a moving vehicle type silhouette target at 800 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 25 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
16. Engage multiple double E-silhouette and moving vehicle type targets. Engage the double E-silhouettes at 500 meters and the moving vehicle at 800 meters, with 32 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Using steps 2, 3 5 through 8 to engage the target.
17. Make a Condition 4 weapon.
18. Don individual NBC protective equipment to MOPP Level 4. At a minimum, the mask and gloves must be worn for the NBC firing tasks in place of MOPP Level 4.
19. Load a belt of 112 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
20. Engage one double E-silhouette target at 800 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round burst and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 25 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
21. Engage one double E-silhouette target at 400 meters while in an NE posture MOPP Level 4, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 2 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
22. Engage multiple double E-silhouettes targets at 400 and 700 meters while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 32 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target while traversing and searching between targets, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.
23. Engage multiple double E-silhouettes and vehicle type silhouettes targets. Engage double E-silhouettes at 400 and 500 meters, vehicle type at 1000 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 48 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 45 seconds. Use steps 2, 3 and 5 through 8 to engage the target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

24. Make a Condition 4 weapon.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. Steps 3 and 6 through 8 will be followed for steps 14 through 23.
3. Time starts when the Team Leader announces "Gun up" for each firing step.
4. A minimum of 16 bursts on target out of 21 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows Marksman 16-17, Sharpshooter 18-19, and Expert 20-21.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with E-silhouette targets at 400, 500, 550, 700, and 800 meters and vehicle silhouettes at 800 and 1000 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	336 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 712

RFS:

(Table IV) Execute a bipod mounted firing exercise with the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a bipod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun; 224 rounds of ammunition; NBC MOPP Level 4; and targets between 100 to 400 meters, as a machinegun team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By achieving a minimum score of 9 out of a possible 12 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Machinegun team assumes position on the gun. The Team Leader is positioned to the left of the Gunner. The Gunner is positioned behind the gun, and the Ammunition Bearer provides security.
2. Team Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a double E-silhouett target at 300 meters, firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner sets the rear sight elevation at the range to target.
4. The Gunner centers the rear sight windage.
5. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Team Leader with a 32 round belt of ammunition and Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
6. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Team Leader announces "Gun up."

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Once the Gunner fires the initial burst, the Team Leader observes the impacts and gives the Gunner corrections until beaten zone is achieved on target.
8. Once the impacts are on target the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
9. The Team Leader uses the combination tool to unlock the front sight retaining strap and rotate upwards. Then he rotates the front sight post blade to move the sights to the target. One half turn will move the strike of the round 4 1/4 inches at 200 meters. If the post blade is more than halfway out, replace the post blade with number 2 blade.
10. If the target is to left of the aiming point, the Team Leader move the front sight protector to the left to move the sight to the target b using the hex wrench. Loosen the adjusting screw (counter-clockwise) o the right side of front sight assembly to the desired amount and tighte (clockwise) the opposite side screw exactly the same amount. One half rotation of the adjusting screw will move the point of impact 3 1/8 inches. If the target is to the right of the aiming point, the front sight protector must be moved to the right.
11. The Gunner fires one 6 to 8 round burst for confirmation.
12. The crew uses the same procedures for the spare barrel.
13. Load a belt of 128 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
14. Engage a single E-silhouette target at 200 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6-7 to engage the target.
15. Engage a single E-silhouette target at 400 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts while obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6 through 7 to engage the target.
16. Engage a moving vehicle type silhouette target at 300 meters, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts while obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 30 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6 through 7 to engage the target.
17. Engage multiple targets. Engage a single E-silhouette at 200 meters and a double E-silhouette at 400 meters, with 32 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target and obtaining a burst on each target, in a time limit of 30 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6 through 7 to engage the target.
18. Engage multiple targets. Engage a single E-silhouette target at 100 meters; single E-silhouette target at 200 meters; and a double E-silhouette target at 400 meters, with 48 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 roun bursts on each target, while obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 45 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6-7 to engage the target.
19. Make a Condition 4 weapon.
20. Don individual NBC protective equipment to MOPP Level 4. At a minimum, the mask and gloves must be worn for the NBC firing tasks in place of MOPP Level 4.
21. Load a belt of 64 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
22. Engage a single E-silhouette target at 100 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6-7 to engage the target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

23. Engage a single E-silhouette target at 300 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts while obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6-7 to engage the target.

24. Engage multiple single E-silhouette targets at 100 and 300 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 32 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts on each target, while obtaining a burst on each target in time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 and 6-7 to engage the target.

25. Make a Condition 4 weapon.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. Steps 3 and 6 through 7 will be followed for steps 14 through 18 and 22 through 24.
3. At a minimum, the mask and gloves must be worn for the NBC firing tasks in place of MOPP Level 4.
4. The time starts for each task when the Team Leader announces "Gun up."
5. A minimum of 9 bursts on target out of 12 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows Marksman 9, Sharpshooter 10, and Expert 11-12.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with E-silhouette targets at 100, 200, and 400 meters and vehicle silhouettes at 300 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	224 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
2. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249
3. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

EVENT: 0331 - A - 713 RFS:

Execute a predetermined data firing exercise with the M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun; 224 rounds of ammunition; range card; selected firing position; sector limits; and targets between 400 to 1000 meters; as a machinegun team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 6 out of a possible 8 points.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Machinegun team assumes position on the gun. The Team Leader is positioned to the left of the Gunner. The Gunner is positioned behind the gun, and the Ammunition Bearer provides security.
2. The machinegun team prepares the range card.
3. Team Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage the final protective line firing at sustained rate.
4. The Gunner sets the rear sight elevation at the range to target.
5. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Team Leader with a 32 round belt of ammunition and Team Leader loads the weapon.
6. The Gunner obtains the proper sight picture by looking through the zero apertures and centering the front sight blade in it.
7. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Team Leader announces "Gun up."
8. The Gunner fires one burst of 6 to 8 rounds.
9. If on target, the Gunner fires a burst to confirm grazing fire on the Final Protective Line.
10. If not on target the Team Leader gives corrections to the Gunner and the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism until grazing fire is achieved.
11. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner reads off the data from the traversing and elevating mechanism to the Team Leader and the Team Leader records the information.
12. Determine and record direction and elevation for 4 point targets; double E-silhouette targets at 400, 600, 800 meters; and a vehicle type silhouette target at 1000 meters, with a belt of 64 rounds, firing 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on each target. Using steps 2 through 11 to engage the target.
13. Determine and record direction and elevation for 2 area targets, grouped E-silhouette targets at 600 and 800 meters, with a belt of 32 rounds, firing 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on each target. Using steps 2-11 to engage the target.
14. Engage 4 point targets using range card data; double E-silhouette targets at 400, 600, 800 meters; and a vehicle type silhouette target at 1000 meters. Use a belt of 64 rounds, firing one 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on each target. Using steps 2 through 11 to engage the target. (Scored)
15. Engage 2 area targets using range card data and grouped E-silhouette targets at 600 and 800 meters. Use a belt of 16 rounds, firing one 6 to 8 round burst on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target. Using steps 2 through 11 to engage the target. (Scored)
16. Engage the final protective line using range card data, with a belt of 16 rounds, firing two 6 to 8 round bursts, and obtaining grazing fire when firing Final Protective Line (FPL). Using steps 2 through 11 to engage the target. (Scored)

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. There is no time limit for this task.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. A minimum of 6 bursts on target out of 8 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows: Marksman 6, Sharpshooter 7, and Expert 8.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with E-silhouette targets at 400, 600, and 800 meters and vehicle silhouettes at 1000 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A131	CTG, 7.62mm, LINKED 4&1	224 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 717 RFS:

Place the M2 heavy machinegun into action on an M3 tripod

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, and 10 rounds of dummy ammunition, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with the references, without error, and in a time limit of 2 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Squad Leader ensures the squad members have the following equipment Assistant Gunner-tripod and one box of ammunition; Gunner-receiver with traversing and elevating mechanism attached and head space and timing gauge; Ammunition Man-barrel, barrel cover, and box of ammunition.
2. On the command "Fall in" the squad forms on line with 5 paces between team members.
3. On the command "Take equipment" squad members take 1 step forward and pick-up equipment.
4. On the command "Form for gun drill" squad members assume the prone position with their equipment in the following positions: Assistant Gunner has tripod to his left with trail legs to the rear, front leg uppermost, ammunition box to his right, latch to the front. Gunner has receiver across his front with back plate to the right and retracting slide handle uppermost. Ammunition Bearer has barrel to his right with muzzle to the rear and ammunition box to his left front with the latch to the front. Squad Leader has ammunition box to his right as he faces the crew.
5. On the command "Examine equipment" each member examines his equipment.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. The Assistant Gunner inspects the tripod to ensure the indexing levers and clamps on the front and trail legs function and are in the low position. He ensures the front and trail legs are closely folded and the front leg clamp is hand tight. He ensures the sleeve lock latch and pintle lock release cam are in working order, the pintle lock release cam is down, and the pintle bushing is free from dirt and burrs. He then opens the ammunition box to ensure the metallic links are clean, belt is properly loaded and placed in the can with the double loop end up. He then closes the ammunition box.

7. The Gunner inspects the receiver group to ensure the barrel support and breech bearing are free of dirt and the gun pintle is free of dirt. He ensures the feed mechanism and bolt switch are properly assembled to feed from the left, striker projects through the aperture in the face of the bolt, rear sight is set at 1000 yards and the windage zero, traversing and elevating mechanism is securely attached to the receiver traversing hand-wheel is centered, elevating screws are equally exposed above and below the hand-wheel, back plate is latched and locked in place, and bolt latch release is locked in the down position by the bolt latch release lock.

8. The Ammunition Bearer inspects the barrel and ammunition to ensure the barrel threads are free of dirt. He then opens the ammunition box, ensuring the links are clean and the belt is properly loaded with the double looped end up. He then closes the ammunition box.

9. When Ammunition Bearer completes his inspection he moves to the Gunner with barrel in right hand and ammunition in left. With the aid of the Gunner, he screws the barrel into the barrel extension and adjusts the head space and timing. The Ammunition Bearer remains to the left and on line with the Gunner.

10. The Squad Leader examines his ammunition.

11. Once inspection is complete, the Ammunition Bearer reports "Ammunition correct." The Gunner reports, "Gun and ammunition correct." The Assistant Gunner reports, "All correct."

12. Once the report is given, the Squad Leader announces ADDRAC and gives the command "Gun to be mounted here, front, action." The time begins now.

13. The Assistant Gunner grasps the left trail leg near the center with his left hand and springs to his feet. Grasping the tripod head with his right hand, he lifts the tripod across the front of his body with the front leg up and carries it to the desired position. Upon his arrival, he places trail leg pointing upward. Steadying the tripod with his left hand on the front leg, he loosens the front leg clamp, positions the tripod leg, and tightens the front leg clamp. He slides his left hand down the left trail leg and snaps the left leg out, engaging the sleeve latch. He then aligns the tripod for direction, drops the mount to the ground, and stamps the right and left trail shoe in. He then assumes a prone position behind the mount.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. The Gunner and Ammunition Bearer move together. When the tripod is nearly mounted, the Gunner places both hands on the spade grips. The Ammunition Bearer grasps the ammunition box with his left hand and the gun carrying handle with his right. Both men lift the gun and move rapidly to the position. The Ammunition Bearer places the ammunition box on line. Then the Gunner, assisted by the Ammunition Bearer inserts the pintle into the pintle bushing. The Ammunition Bearer stamps the front shoe into the ground, releases the carrying handle, lowers his right hand and lifts the gun pintle lock release cam. When the pintle is fully seated, he presses down the pintle lock release cam with his right hand, turns to his left, and provides security for the gun.

15. The Assistant Gunner holds the left spade grip with his left hand and, with his right hand lowers the traversing and elevating mechanism to the traversing bar, ensuring the traversing hand-wheel is to the left and the lock lever is to the rear. He then assumes a semi prone position to the left of the gun. He unlatches and raises the cover of the ammunition box, removes the ammunition belt, inserts the double looped end into the feed way, and taps the feed way with his right hand to ensure it is closed.

16. The Gunner grasps the retracting slide handle with his right hand palms up. He pulls it to the rear, and then releases it. The gun is half loaded. He then assumes the prone position behind the gun and sights in. He then tells the Assistant Gunner "Up." Then the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up" to the Squad Leader. The time stops at this time.

17. To take the gun out of action, the Squad Leader gives the command "Out of action."

18. The Gunner pulls the bolt to the rear, with his right hand and, with his left hand, raises the cover. The Assistant Gunner lifts the ammunition out of the feed way, replaces the ammunition in the box, and closes and latches the box.

19. The Gunner visually and physically inspects the chamber and bore for ammunition. He then presses the trigger which allows the bolt to go home on an empty chamber and closes the cover. The Gunner grasps both spade grips with both hands and rises to his feet. At the same time, the Ammunition Bearer arrives at the position and grasps the ammunition with his left hand and places his right foot on the front leg shoe. With his right hand, he lifts up on the pintle lock release cam and grasps the carrying handle.

20. The Gunner and Ammunition Bearer lift the gun from the tripod, turn right, and carry the gun back to the original position. They set the gun down with the muzzle to the left and retracting slide handle up. The Gunner pulls the retracting slide handle towards the rear and the Ammunition Bearer unscrews the barrel and picks up his ammunition and barrel. He then moves 5 paces to the rear, places the barrel and ammunition box on the ground to their original position, and remains standing.

21. The Gunner rotates the bolt latch release lock to the right and releases the bolt latch. He checks his sights to ensure they are properly set.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

22. The Assistant Gunner assumes a kneeling position behind the tripod and releases the sleeve lock latch with his right hand. He rises to his feet, grasps the front leg with his left hand, and rotates the tripod to a vertical position on the trail legs. With his right hand, he loosens the front leg clamp, folds down the front leg, and then tightens the clamp. With the right hand, he rotates the tripod on the right trail leg, releases the sleeve latch, and folds the left trail leg against the right. Then he lifts the tripod across the front of his body with the front leg up, turns to the right, returns to his original position.

23. The Ammunition Bearer comes forward, picks up the remaining ammunition box, and places it to the right of the Assistant Gunner, latch to the front. He then returns to his original position and assumes a prone position.

24. The Assistant Gunner places the tripod on the ground, assumes a prone position to the right of the tripod and announces "Up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. The emplacement of the M2 heavy machinegun must be completed in a time limit of 2 minutes. Time starts when the Squad Leader announces "Action" and ends when he announces "Gun up."

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M240G	7.62mm medium machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A135	CTG, 7.62mm, DUMMY	10 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 718 RFS:

Place the M2 heavy machinegun into action vehicle mount

Condition: Given a tripod mounted SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun; 10 rounds of dummy ammunition; and M1045 hardback HMMWV, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with the references and in a time limit of 1 minute.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Squad Leader gives the command for mounting the gun onto the vehicle and announces "Action."
2. The Gunner departs and goes to the vehicle and prepares the vehicle to receive the gun.
3. The Gunner removes the turret lock pin.
4. The Gunner installs the universal weapons adapter.
5. The Gunner replaces the turret lock pin.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. The Gunner loosens the locking bolts on the universal weapons adapter on the HMMWV by turning the bolts counter-clockwise.
7. The Gunner inserts the lower end of the pintle adapter into the universal weapons adapter.
8. The Gunner tightens the bolts by turning it clockwise. Then he pulls up on the pintle adapter to ensure it is secured.
9. The Gunner removes the quick-release pin from the pintle adapter.
10. The Gunner inserts the MK64 MOD 7 gun cradle into the top of the pintle adapter and replaces the quick-release pin.
11. The Gunner ensures the traversing and elevation mechanism is inserted into the pivot arm assembly.
12. The Gunner removes the train and elevating quick-release pin.
13. The Gunner attaches the train and elevating assembly to the holes in the rear of the gun cradle.
14. The Gunner replaces the quick-release pin and rotates it to the locked position.
15. The Gunner unscrews the train lock handle and hex bolt, separating the clamp into 2 parts.
16. The Gunner places the 2 halves of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal.
17. The Gunner replaces the bolt and the train lock handle, and tightens them, alternately utilizing a 9/16 inch wrench.
18. The Gunner tightens the train lock handle and the hex bolt.
19. The Gunner removes the hex head bolts from the positioning clamp.
20. The Gunner places both parts of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal, ¼ inch below the train and elevating clamp.
21. The Gunner inserts the hex head bolts in the positioning clamp and tighten the bolts to lock the clamp in place, ensuring it does not move up or down on the pedestal.
22. The Gunner secures the second clamp ¼ inch above the train and elevates the clamp, utilizing step 15.
23. The Assistant Gunner removes the gun from the tripod and attaches the M2 mounting adapter to the machinegun. He then takes the machinegun to the Gunner.
24. The Ammunition Bearer and Squad Leader disassemble the remaining S 3 components and return them to the vehicle and secure them. Once the SL-3 components are secure, the Ammunition Bearer/Driver gets in the driver seat and the Squad Leader gets into the passenger seat. They then prepare to continue the mission.
25. The Assistant Gunner lays the gun on top of the vehicle and climbs on top of the vehicle.
26. The Gunner partly unscrews the wing-nut on the threaded stud of the bracket mounting assembly.
27. The Gunner and Assistant Gunner raise the gun to the gun cradle and align the stud with the forward groove in the side plate of the gun cradle. They push the bracket mounting assembly up until the heads of the 2 mounting pins align with the 2 forward keyholes. They then push the heads of the 2 mounting pins into the keyholes and allow the bracket mounting assembly to slide down.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

28. The Gunner tightens the wing-nut behind the side plate of the cradle.
29. The Assistant Gunner inserts the 2 hooks on the empty case catch bag through the rear holes in the gun cradle.
30. The Assistant Gunner engages the single front hanger on the catch bag with the hook on the gun cradle.
31. The Gunner and Assistant Gunner then load the gun. Once the gun is loaded, the Assistant Gunner gets in the vehicle behind the driver.
32. Once the Squad is in the vehicle and the machinegun is loaded, the Squad Leader announces, "Gun up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. The emplacement of the M2 heavy machinegun on the vehicle mount must be completed in a time limit of 1 minute. Time starts when the Squad Leader announces "Action" and ends when he announces "Gun up."

REFERENCES

1. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 719

RFS:

(Table II) Execute a tripod mounted field zero firing exercise with the M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun; 28 rounds of ammunition; NBC MOPP Level 4; and target at 550 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By achieving point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun team assumes position on the gun, with the Squad Leader to the right of the gun in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun, Assistant Gunner to the left of the Gunner, and Ammunition Bearer providing security.
2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a double E-silhouette target at 550, meters firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner raises the rear sight by lifting straight up until it snaps into the upright position.
4. The Gunner adjusts the range scale by rotating the elevation screw knob to reflect the range of 500 meters.
5. The Gunner rotates the windage knob until the zero index mark on the rear sight is aligned with the index mark on the top of the receiver.
6. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Assistant Gunner with a 28 round belt of ammunition, and the Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
7. The Gunner obtains the proper sight picture by looking through the zero apertures and centering the front sight blade.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
9. The Gunner fires one burst of 5 to 7 rounds.
10. If on target, the Gunner fires a burst to confirm the zero.
11. If not on target, the Squad Leader gives corrections to the Gunner and the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism until burst is on target.
12. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
13. If sight is above or below the target, the Assistant Gunner adjust the sight to the target by turning the elevation screw knob on the rear sight. He turns it counter-clockwise if the sight is below the target, and clockwise if above.
14. If the sight is to the right or left of the target, the Assistant Gunner adjusts the rear sight by turning the windage knob clockwise to move the sight to the left, and counter-clockwise to move the sight to the right.
15. The Gunner fires another burst of 5 to 7 rounds.
16. The squad repeats procedure, if needed, to confirm zeros by firing a burst on the target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with point target at 500 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	28 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 720

RFS:

(Table II) Execute a tripod mounted firing exercise with the M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun; 294 rounds of ammunition; NBC MOPP Level 4; and targets between 400 to 1000 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 16 out of a possible 21 points.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun team assumes position on the gun, with the Squad Leader to the right of the gun in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun, Assistant Gunner to the left of the Gunner, and Ammunition Bearer providing security.
2. The Gunner loads a belt of 196 rounds and makes a Condition 1 weapo
3. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a double E-silhouette target at 800 meters, firing at sustained rate.
4. The Gunner raises the rear sight by lifting straight up until it snaps into the upright position.
5. The Gunner adjusts the range scale by rotating the elevation screw knob to reflect the range of 550 meters.
6. The Gunner obtains the proper sight picture by looking through the zero apertures and centering the front sight blade in it.
7. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
8. The Gunner fires one burst of 5 to 7 rounds.
9. If on target, the Gunner fires a burst to engage the target.
10. If not on target, the Squad Leader gives corrections to the Gunner and the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism until burst is on target.
11. Engage a single, double E-silhouette at 400 meters, with 14 rounds firing two 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
12. Engage a single, double E-silhouette target at 700 meters, with 14 rounds, firing 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in time limit of 25 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
13. Engage vehicle type silhouette target at 1000 meters, with 14 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 25 seconds.
14. Engage multiple double E-silhouettes targets at 400 and 700 meters with 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
15. Engage multiple double E-silhouette targets at 550 and 800 meters, with 28 rounds, firing 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtainin a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
16. Engage multiple double E-silhouette targets at 400 and 700 meters and a vehicle type at 1000 meters. Use 42 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 45 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
17. Engage moving vehicle type silhouette targets at 800 meters, with 14 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target in a time limi 25 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
18. Engage multiple double E-silhouette and moving vehicle type targets. Engage double E-silhouette at 500 meters and moving vehicle a 800 meters. Use 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

- 19. Don individual NBC protective equipment to MOPP Level 4. At a minimum, the mask and gloves must be worn for the NBC firing tasks, in place of MOPP Level 4.
- 20. Load a belt of 98 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
- 21. Engage a single, double E-silhouette target at 800 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 14 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 25 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
- 22. Engage a single, double E-silhouette target at 400 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 14 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
- 23. Engage multiple double E-silhouette targets at 400 and 700 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4. Use 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, while traversing and searching between targets, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.
- 24. Engage multiple double E-silhouette and vehicle type silhouette targets. Engage double E-silhouette targets at 400 and 500 meters and vehicle type at 1000 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4. Use 42 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 45 seconds. Use steps 3 through 10 to engage the target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
- 2. Steps 2 through 4, 6 through 9, and 11 will be followed for steps 17 through 24.
- 3. The time starts when the squad leader announces "Gun up" for each task.
- 4. A minimum of 16 bursts on target out of 21 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows Marksman 16-17, Sharpshooter 18-19, and Expert 20-21.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

- 1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with E-silhouette targets at 300, 450, 500, and 600 meters and vehicle silhouettes at 500, 700, 850 and 1000 meters
- 1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with E-silhouette targets at 400, 550, 700, and 800 meters and vehicle silhouettes at 800 and 1000 meters
- 2. Range should be suitable for live fire from stationary and moving vehicles

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	294 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0331 - A - 721

RFS:

(Table III) Execute a vehicle mounted firing exercise with an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a vehicle mounted, SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun; 182 rounds of ammunition; NBC MOPP Level 4; and targets between 300 to 1000 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: Obtaining a minimum score of 11 out of a possible 14 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun team assumes position on the gun with the Squad Leader in the front passenger seat in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun in the turret, Assistant Gunner in the rear passenger seat, and Ammunition Bearer/Driver driving the vehicle.
2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a stationary personnel target at 450, meters firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner raises the rear sight by lifting straight up until it snaps into the upright position.
4. The Gunner adjusts the range scale by rotating the elevation screw knob to reflect the range of 450 meters.
5. The Assistant Gunner assists the Gunner and loads the weapon with a 112 round belt of ammunition.
6. The Gunner obtains the proper sight picture by looking through the zero apertures and centering the front sight blade in it.
7. The Gunner fires one burst of 5 to 7 rounds.
8. If not on target the Squad Leader gives corrections to the Gunner and the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism until beaten zone is on target.
9. Engage a single, stationary vehicle type target at 850 meters from stationary firing position, with 14 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.
10. Engage multiple, moving vehicle targets at 800 meters and a stationary vehicle target at 1000 meters from a stationary firing position. Use 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 rounds bursts, and obtainin a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.
11. Engage multiple, stationary vehicles at 300 and 500 meters while the Gunners vehicle is moving. Use 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.
12. Engage multiple targets. Engage a stationary personnel target at 600 meters in a moving vehicle and at 800 meters from a stationary firing position, with 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 rounds bursts on eac target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.
13. Make a Condition 4 weapon.
14. Don individual NBC protective equipment to MOPP Level 4. At a minimum, the mask and gloves must be worn for the NBC firing tasks in place of MOPP Level 4.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

- 15. Load a belt of 84 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
- 16. Engage a single vehicle type target at 500 meters from a stationary firing position, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 14 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 20 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.
- 17. Engage multiple targets: a moving vehicle and stationary vehicle targets from a stationary firing position. Engage the moving vehicle type at 800 meters and a stationary vehicle target at 1000 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 28 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 35 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.
- 18. Engage multiple targets: a stationary personnel and vehicle target from a stationary firing position. Engage the stationary personnel at 300 meters and vehicle type at 500 and 700 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 42 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 45 seconds. Use steps 2 through 8 to engage the target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
- 2. The time starts when the squad leader announces "Gun up" for each task.
- 3. A minimum of 11 bursts on target out of 14 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows: Marksman 11, Sharpshooter 12, and Expert 13-14.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	182 each

REFERENCES

- 1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2

EVENT: 0331 - A - 722

RFS:

(Table IV) Execute a predetermined data firing exercise with the M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, 140 rounds of ammunition, range card, selected firing position, and targets between 400 to 1000 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 7 out of a possible 15 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

- 1. The machinegun team assumes position on the gun with the Squad Leader to the right of the gun in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun, Assistant Gunner to the left of the Gunner, and Ammunition Bearer providing security.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage the final protective line firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner raises the rear sight by lifting straight up until it snaps into the upright position.
4. The Gunner adjusts the range scale by rotating the elevation screw knob to reflect the range of the Final Protective Line (FPL).
5. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Assistant Gunner with a 28 round belt of ammunition and Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
6. The Gunner obtains the proper sight picture by looking through the zero apertures and centering the front sight blade in it.
7. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
8. The Gunner fires one burst of 5 to 7 rounds.
9. If on target the Gunner fires a burst to confirm grazing fire on the Final Protective Line (FPL).
10. If not on target, the Squad Leader gives corrections to the Gunner and the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism until impact is on target.
11. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner reads off the data from the traversing and elevating mechanism to the Squad Leader and the Squad Leader records the information.
12. Determine and record direction and elevation for 2 double E-silhouette targets and targets at 600 meters. With a belt of 28 rounds firing 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 8 and 10 through 11 to engage the target.
13. Determine and record direction and elevation for 2 double E-silhouette targets and targets at 600 and 800 meters. Use a belt of 28 rounds, firing 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 8 and 10 through 11 to engage the target.
14. Engage 4 double E-silhouette targets using range card data and targets at 400, 600, 800, and 1000 meters. Use a belt of 28 rounds, firing 5 to 7 round burst on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 8 and 10 through 11 to engage the target.
15. Engage area targets using range card data, with a belt of 14 rounds, firing 5 to 7 round burst on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 8 and 10 through 11 to engage the target.
16. Fire final protective line using range card data, with a belt of 1 rounds, firing two 5 to 7 round bursts, and obtaining burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 8 and 10 through 11 to engage the target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. There is no time limit to this task.
3. A minimum of 6 bursts on target out of 8 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows: Marksman 6, Sharpshooter 7, and Expert 8.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M2 .50 cal with E-silhouette targets at 400, 600, 800 and 1000 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M2	.50 cal heavy machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A576	CTG, CAL .50, 4&1 LINKED, F/M2	140 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 723 RFS:

Place the MK19 heavy machinegun into action on an M3 tripod

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun, and 10 rounds of dummy ammunition, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with the references, without error, and in a time limit of 2 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Squad Leader ensures the squad members have the following equipment Assistant Gunner-tripod and 1 box of ammunition, Gunner-MK19, Ammunition Bearer-MK64 gun cradle with traversing and elevating mechanism attached and 1 box of ammunition.
2. On the command "Fall in" the team forms on line with 5 paces between squad members.
3. On the command "Take equipment" squad members take 1 step forward and pick-up equipment.
4. On the command "Form for gun drill" squad members assume the prone position with their equipment. The Assistant Gunner places the tripod to his left with trail legs to the rear and front leg uppermost. The ammunition box is placed to his right, latch to the front. The Gunner places the MK19 across his front, flash suppressor to the left, top cover up. Ammunition Bearer places the cradle to his right, pintle and traversing and elevating mechanism outboard. The ammunition box is placed to his left, latch to the front. Squad Leader has ammunition box to his right as he faces the crew.
5. On the command "Examine equipment" each member examines his equipment.
6. The Assistant Gunner inspects the tripod to ensure the indexing levers and clamps on the front and trail legs function and are in the low position. He ensures the trail legs are closely folded and the front leg clamp is tight with front leg at a 60 degree angle. He ensures the sleeve lock latch and pintle lock release cam are in working order, the pintle lock release cam is down, and the pintle bushing is free from dirt and burrs. He then opens his ammunition box and inspects the ammunition to ensure it is clean, serviceable, and placed in the box correctly (female link first). He then closes the ammunition box.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. The Gunner inspects the MK19 to ensure the weapon is clean, bolt is forward, top cover is closed, the weapon is on SAFE, and charger handle are forward and locked in the up position.
8. The Ammunition Bearer inspects the cradle to ensure the pintle is clean and all pins and bolts are seated. He prepares the traversing and elevating mechanism by centering both hand-wheels. He then inspects the ammunition to ensure the correct type of ammunition is on hand and the can is dent free. He ensures all ogives are tight and the ammunition is clean.
9. The Squad Leader examines his ammunition.
10. Once inspection is complete, the Ammunition Bearer reports "Ammunition correct." The Gunner reports, "Gun and ammunition correct." The Assistant Gunner reports, "All correct."
11. Once the report is given, the Squad Leader announces ADDRAC and gives the command "Gun to be mounted here, front, action." The time begins now.
12. The Assistant Gunner grasps the left trail leg near the center with his left hand and springs to his feet. He grasps the tripod head with his right hand, lifts the tripod across the front of his body with the front leg up, and carries it to the desired position. Once at the firing position, he aligns the front leg tripod leg for direction, and with one quick motion, snaps the trail legs apart, making the sleeve lock latch snap in place. He then stamps the right and left trail shoe into the ground and assumes a prone position behind the mount.
13. When the tripod is nearly mounted, the Ammunition Bearer stands up and grasps the ammunition box with his left hand and the cradle with his right hand. When he arrives at the gun position, he places the ammunition box on line with and 2 feet to the left of the tripod head, latch facing the tripod. He takes the lid off and ensures the ogive ends of the rounds are pointed down range. He then hands the MK64 cradle to the Assistant Gunner, stamps the front shoe of the tripod, turns left, and retrieves the ammunition box, which the Assistant Gunner left. Upon dropping off the second ammunition box, he turns to his left, and provides security for the gun.
14. The Assistant Gunner secures the gun cradle to the tripod, using the pintle lock release cam. He secures the traversing and elevating mechanism to the tripod by locking the traversing slide lock lever.
15. When the Assistant Gunner has completed placing the cradle on the mount, the Gunner carries the MK19 receiver to the tripod with the barrel in his left hand and the control grip in his right.
16. The Assistant Gunner grasps the barrel while the Gunner holds the grips. Together, they align the grooves on the receiver with the lugs in the gun cradle and slide the receiver forward. The Gunner secures the rear of the weapon by inserting the retaining pin through the cradle and sear assembly.
17. The Gunner opens the top cover, and the Assistant Gunner inserts the first round into the feeder, female link first. He pushes the first round across the primary feed pawl, and moves the feed slide assembly to the left by pushing the secondary drive lever to the right.
18. The Gunner closes the top cover and charges the weapon. The Gunner presses the trigger which places the lead round in the bolt extractor. He charges the weapon for the second time, forcing the lead round from the bolt extractors into the bolt fingers. The weapon is ready to fire.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

19. When the Assistant Gunner raises the rear sight, the Gunner announces "Gun up." The time stops.
20. To take the gun out of action, the Squad Leader gives the command "Out of action."
21. The Gunner pulls the bolt to the rear with his right hand, and with his left hand, raises the cover. The Assistant Gunner removes the ammunition out of the feed way and off the face of the bolt. He replaces the ammunition in the box and closes and latches the box.
22. The Gunner visually and physically inspects the chamber and bore for ammunition. Then he presses the trigger and lets the bolt go home on an empty chamber. The Gunner closes the top cover.
23. The Assistant Gunner releases the MK19 from the gun cradle. The Gunner lifts the MK19 off the mount and moves to a position 10 paces behind the tripod. He places the MK19 on the ground across his front, the flash suppressor to the left, and the top cover up.
24. Once the Gunner has moved away from the tripod, the Ammunition Bearer moves forward and kneels to the left of the tripod. The Assistant Gunner removes the cradle and gives it to the Ammunition Bearer.
25. The Ammunition Bearer grasps the cradle with his right hand, picks up the front ammunition box with his left hand, and moves to his original position. He places the cradle to his right, pintle and traversing and elevating mechanism outboard, ammunition box to his left latch to the front. He remains standing.
26. The Assistant Gunner releases the sleeve lock latch, rises to his feet, grasps the front leg, and rotates the tripod to a vertical position. He releases the sleeve latch and collapses the trail legs. He loosens the front leg clamp, folds down the front leg, and tightens the clamp. He returns with the tripod to his original position and remains standing.
27. The Ammunition Bearer comes forward and picks up the remaining ammunition box, and places it to the right of Assistant Gunner, latch to the front. He then returns to his original position and assumes a prone position.
28. The Assistant Gunner places the tripod on the ground, assumes a prone position to the right of the tripod, and announces "Up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. The emplacement of the MK19 heavy machinegun on an M3 tripod must be completed in a time limit of 2 minutes. Time starts when the Squad Leader announces "Action" and ends when he announces "Gun up."

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B472	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, DUMMY F/MK19	10 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3

EVENT: 0331 - A - 724

RFS:

Place the MK19 heavy machinegun into action vehicle mount

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun, 10 rounds of dummy ammunition, and an M1044, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with the references, without error, and in a time limit of 2 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Upon the command "Action," the Gunner will unload and clear the MK1 heavy machinegun, move to the vehicle, and remove the turret pin.
2. The Gunner will install the universal weapons adapter or the M93 vehicle mount.
3. The Gunner will replace the turret lock pin.
4. The Gunner will loosen the locking bolts on the universal weapons adapter on the HMMWV by turning the bolts counter-clockwise.
5. The Gunner will insert the lower end of the pintle adapter into the universal weapons adapter.
6. The Gunner will tighten the bolts by turning it clockwise, and pull up on the adapter to ensure it is secured.
7. The Gunner will remove the quick-release pin from the pintle adapter.
8. While the Gunner is performing steps 1 through 7, the Assistant Gunner/Ammunition Bearer and Driver will remove the MK19 heavy machinegun, the MK64 MOD 7 gun cradle, and traversing and elevating mechanism from the tripod. They move to the left side of the vehicle, with the barrel facing the rear of the vehicle, and hand them up to the Gunner. The Gunner will then rotate his body counter-clockwise and insert the MK64 MOD 7 gun cradle into the top of the pintle adapter and replace the quick-release pin. The Squad Leader will fold up the M3 tripod, move to the rear of the vehicle, and secure it in the bracket.
9. While the Gunner is performing step 8 the Squad Leader, Assistant Gunner/Ammunition Bearer and driver will proceed to their designated seats (the Squad Leader will sit in the front passenger side seat, the Assistant Gunner/Ammunition Bearer will sit in the rear passenger side seat). The Gunner will ensure the traversing and elevating mechanism is inserted into the pivot arm assembly or lock down the traversing and elevating mechanism on the traversing bar on the M93 vehicle mount. If the M93 vehicle mount is being used, the MK19 heavy machinegun can be mounted at this time.
10. The Gunner will remove the train and elevating quick-release pin.
11. The Gunner will attach the train and elevating assembly to the holes in the rear of the gun cradle.
12. The Gunner will replace the quick release pin and rotate it to the locked position.
13. The Gunner will unscrew the train lock handle and hex bolt, separating the clamp into 2 parts.
14. The Gunner will place the 2 halves of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. The Gunner will replace the bolt and the train lock handle, and tighten them, alternately utilizing a 9/16 inch wrench.
16. The Gunner will tighten the train lock handle and the hex bolt.
17. The Gunner will remove the hex bolts from the positioning clamp.
18. The Gunner will place both parts of the clamp around the HMMWV pedestal ¼ inch below the train and elevating clamp.
19. The Gunner will insert the hex bolts in the positioning clamp and tighten the bolts to lock them in place, ensuring that it does not move up or down on the pedestal.
20. The Gunner will secure the second clamp ¼ inch above the train and elevating clamp utilizing step 15.
21. The Gunner will mount the MK19 heavy machinegun.
22. The Gunner will partly unscrew the wing-nut on the threaded stud of the bracket mounting assembly.
23. The Gunner will align the stud with the forward groove in the side plate of the gun cradle.
24. The Gunner will push the bracket assembly up until the heads of the 2 mounting pins align with the 2 forward keyholes.
25. The Gunner will push the heads of the 2 mounting pins into the keyholes and allow the bracket mounting assembly to slide down.
26. The Gunner will tighten the wing-nut behind the side of the cradle.
27. The Gunner will insert the 2 hooks on the empty case catch bag through the rear holes in the gun cradle.
28. The Gunner will engage the front hanger on the catch bag with the hook on the gun cradle.
29. The Gunner will load the MK19 heavy machinegun, sight in on a give target and sound off "Gun up!"

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. The emplacement of the MK19 heavy machinegun on the vehicle mount must be completed in a time limit of 2 minutes. Time starts when the Squad Leader announces "Action" and ends when he announces "Gun up."

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for MK19 40mm grenade launcher with a point target at 400 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B472	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, DUMMY F/MK19	10 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0331 - A - 725

RFS:

Field zero the MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun, and 4 rounds of ammunition, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By achieving point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun squad assumes position on the gun with the Squad Leader to the right of the gun in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun, Assistant Gunner to the left of the Gunner, Ammunition Bearer providing security.
2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a point target at 400 meters, firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner moves the rear sight slide to the meter mark that represents the estimated distance to the target.
4. The Gunner sets the windage knob at the zero index line.
5. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Assistant Gunner with a 4 round belt of ammunition, and Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
6. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in to target, the Gunner announces "Sighted" and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
7. The Gunner fires a single round.
8. The Squad Leader observes the impact and gives corrections to the Gunner.
9. If on target, the Gunner fires a round to confirm the zero.
10. If not on target, the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism from the Squad Leaders corrections until impact is on target.
11. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
12. If the sight is above or below the target, the Assistant Gunner adjusts the sight to the target by turning the elevation knob on the rear sight counter-clockwise, if the sight is below the target, and clockwise, if above.
13. If the sight is to the right or left of the target, the Assistant Gunner adjusts the rear sight by turning the windage knob clockwise to move the sight to the left, and counter-clockwise to move the sight to the right.
14. If the adjustment is correct, the Gunner fires a second round, and it should be on target. If so, fire the rest of rounds to confirm zero. If not, the squad repeats steps 3 through 14.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B576	CTG, 40MM, TP	4 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 726 RFS:
(Table I) Execute a MK19 tripod mounted firing exercise

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun; 110 rounds of ammunition; NBC MOPP Level 4; and targets between 400 to 1500 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: Obtaining a minimum score of 8 out of a possible 11 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun squad assumes position on the gun with the Squad Leader to the right of the gun in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun, Assistant Gunner to the left of the Gunner, Ammunition Bearer providing security.
2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a point target at 600, meters firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner moves the rear sight slide to the meter mark that represents the estimated distance to the target.
4. Load a belt of 80 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
5. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces, "Sighted" and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
6. The Squad Leader observes the impact and gives corrections to the Gunner.
7. If on target, the Gunner fires a burst to engage the target.
8. If not on target, the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism from the Squad Leader's corrections until impact on target.
9. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
10. Engage a BMP target (point target) at 1100 meters, with 10 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 2 minutes. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target. In a time limit of 20 seconds.
11. Engage a troop target (area target) at 600 meters, with 10 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 1 minute and 30 seconds. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Engage BMP target (point target) at 1500 meters, with 10 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts, obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 2 minutes. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
13. Engage multiple targets. Engage BMP target (point target) at 1100 and troop target (area target) at 600 meters, with 20 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts on each target while traversing and searching between targets, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 3 minutes. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
14. Engage multiple targets with a moving BMP target at 1100 meters and a stationary troop target (area target) at 600 meters. Use 20 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts on each target while traversing and searching between targets, and obtaining a burst on each target in a time limit of 3 minutes. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
15. Don individual NBC protective equipment to MOPP Level 4. At a minimum, the mask and gloves must be worn for the NBC firing tasks in place of MOPP Level 4.
16. Load a belt of 30 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
17. Engage a point target at 400 meters, while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 10 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts, and obtaining burst on target in a time limit of 1 minute. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
18. Engage multiple targets. Engage a moving BMP target at 1100 meter and a stationary troop target (area target) at 600 meters while in an NBC posture MOPP Level 4, with 20 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round burst on each target, while traversing and searching between targets, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 2 3 minutes. Use steps through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. Steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 will be followed for steps 10 through 18.
3. The time starts when the squad leader announces "Gun up" for each task.
4. A minimum of 8 bursts on target out of 11 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows: Marksman 8, Sharpshooter 9, and Expert 10-11.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for MK19 40mm grenade launcher with a point target at 400 meters, an area target at 600 meters, and BMP targets at 1100 and 1500 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B576	CTG, 40MM, TP	110 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
 2. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 727

RFS:

(Table II) Execute a vehicle mounted MK19 firing exercise

Condition: Given a vehicle mounted, SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun; 74 rounds of ammunition; and targets between 400 to 1000 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 4 out of a possible 7 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun squad assumes position in the vehicle with the Squad Leader in the front passenger seat in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun in the turret, Assistant Gunner in the rear passenger seat, and Ammunition Bearer/Driver driving the vehicle.
2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a stationary personnel target at 400, meters firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner moves the rear sight slide to the meter mark that represents the estimated distance to the target.
4. The Gunner sets the windage knob at the zero index line.
5. The Gunner aligns the sights on the base of the target using the traversing and elevating mechanism.
6. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Assistant Gunner with a 4 round belt of ammunition, and the Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
7. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces "Sighted," and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
8. The Gunner fires a single round.
9. The Squad Leader observes the impact and gives corrections to the Gunner.
10. If on target, the Gunner fires a round to confirm the zero.
11. If not on target, the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism from the Squad Leaders corrections until impact is on target.
12. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.
13. If the sight is above or below the target, the Assistant Gunner adjusts the sight to the target by turning the elevation knob on the rear sight counter-clockwise if the sight is below the target, and clockwise, if above.
14. If the sight is to the right or left of the target the Assistant Gunner adjusts the rear sight by turning the windage knob clockwise to move the sight to the left and counter-clockwise to move the sight to the right.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. If the adjustment is correct, the Gunner fires a second round, and it should be on target. If so, fire the rest of rounds to confirm zero. If not, the squad repeats steps 3 through 14.
16. Load a belt of 30 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
17. Engage a BMP target at 800 meters, with 10 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 1 minute. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
18. Engage a (area) troop target at 600 meters, with a 10 round belt, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts and obtaining a burst on target, in a time limit of 1 minute and 30 seconds. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
19. Engage a BMP target at 1100 meters, with a 10 round belt, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts, on target in a time limit of 2 minutes. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
20. Load a belt of 20 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
21. Engage multiple targets. Engage BMP target at 800 and (area) troop target at 600 meters with a belt of 20 rounds, firing bursts of 3 to 5 rounds while traversing and searching between targets, and obtaining a burst on each target, in a time limit of 3 minutes. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
22. Load a belt of 20 rounds and make a Condition 1 weapon.
23. Engage a (area) troop target at 600 meters, with the vehicle moving with a 10 round belt. Firing 3 to 5 round bursts, and obtain a burst on target in a time limit of 1 minute and 30 seconds. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.
24. Engage a moving BMP target at 800 meters, with a belt of 10 rounds firing 3 to 5 round bursts while searching, and obtaining a burst on target in a time limit of 1 minute and 30 seconds. Use steps 2 through 3 and 5 through 9 to engage the target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. Steps 2 and 3 and 5 through 9 will be followed for steps 17 through 24.
3. The time starts when the squad leader announces "Gun up" for each task.
4. The total possible points for vehicle mounted fire is 7 points and a minimum of 4 points is required to meet the standard for this exercise. The scoring procedures are as follows: Marksman 4, Sharpshooter 5, and Expert 6-7.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for MK19 40mm grenade launcher with an area target at 600 meters and BMP targets at 800 and 1100 meters
2. Range should be suitable for live fire from stationary and moving vehicles

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B576	CTG, 40MM, TP	74 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
 2. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
-

EVENT: 0331 - A - 728

RFS:

(Table III) Execute a predetermined firing exercise with a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given a tripod mounted, SL-3 complete MK19 heavy machinegun; 109 rounds of ammunition; range card; selected firing position; and targets between 400 to 1500 meters, as a machinegun squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By obtaining a minimum score of 4 out of a possible 7 points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The machinegun squad assumes position on the gun with the Squad Leader to the right of the gun in order to observe and give commands, Gunner behind the gun, Assistant Gunner to the left of the Gunner, Ammunition Bearer providing security.
2. Squad Leader announces ADDRAC command to engage a point target at 400 meters, firing at sustained rate.
3. The Gunner moves the rear sight slide to the meter mark that represents the estimated distance to the target.
4. The Gunner sets the windage knob at the zero index line.
5. The Gunner aligns the sights on the base of the target using the traversing and elevating mechanism.
6. The Ammunition Bearer supplies the Assistant Gunner with a 4 round belt of ammunition, and the Assistant Gunner loads the weapon.
7. Once the weapon is loaded and the Gunner has sighted in on target, the Gunner announces "Sighted" and the Assistant Gunner announces "Gun up."
8. The Gunner fires a single round.
9. The Squad Leader observes the impact and gives corrections to the Gunner.
10. If on target, the Gunner fires a round to confirm the zero.
11. If not on target, the Squad Leader gives correction to the Gunner and the Gunner adjusts the traversing and elevating mechanism from the Squad Leader's corrections until impact is on target.
12. Once the impacts are on target, the Gunner maintains position behind the gun and ensures shoulder pressure remains the same.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. If the sight is above or below the target, the Assistant Gunner adjusts the sight to the target by turning the elevation knob on the rear sight counter-clockwise if the sight is below the target, and clockwise, if above.
14. If the sight is to the right or left of the target, the Assistant Gunner adjusts the rear sight by turning the windage knob clockwise to move the sight to the left, and counter-clockwise to move the sight to the right.
15. If the adjustment is correct, the Gunner fires a second round, and it should be on target. If so, fire the rest of rounds to confirm zero. If not, the squad repeats steps 3 through 14.
16. Determine and record direction and elevation for BMP (point) targets at 400, 600, 1100, and 1500 meters. Use a belt of 40 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 11 to engage the targets. (NOT SCORE)
17. Determine and record direction and elevation for troop (area) target at 600, 800, and 900 meters. Use a belt of 30 rounds, firing two 3 to 5 round bursts on each target, and obtaining a burst on target. Use steps 2 through 11 to engage the targets. (NOT SCORED)
18. Engage BMP (point) targets using range card data. Engage targets at 400, 600, 1100, and 1500 meters, with a belt of 20 rounds, firing on 3 to 5 round burst on each target, and obtaining a burst on each target. Use steps 2 through 11 to engage the targets. (Scored)
19. Engage troop (area) target using range card data, target at 600, 800, and 900 meters, with a belt of 15 rounds, firing one 3 to 5 round burst on each target, and obtaining a burst on target. Use steps 2 through 11 to engage the targets. (Scored)

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. There is no time limit for these tasks.
3. A minimum of 4 bursts on target out of 7 target exposures is required to meet the standards. The scoring procedures are as follows: Marksman 4, Sharpshooter 5, and Expert 6-7.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for MK19 40mm grenade launcher with area targets at 600, 800, and 900 meters and BMP targets at 400, 600, 1100, and 1500 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK19	40mm grenade machinegun	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B542	CTG, 40mm, LINKED, HE DP F/MK19	109 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
 2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX E

INFANTRY MORTARMAN COURSE

Description

The Infantry Mortarman Course is located at Infantry Training Battalion (ITB), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon successful completion of the Infantry Rifleman Course, a Marine will receive MOS 0341.

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Mortarman in an Infantry Mortar Squad/Section/Weapons Platoon/Weapons Company.

Administrative Notes

The enclosed tasks represent the 0341 specific tasks. The remainder of the tasks are drawn from MCO 1510.89A MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) as directed by MCO 1510.121 MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) PROGRAM.

Prerequisites

The Marine will have completed Marine Corps Boot Camp.

EVENT: 0341 - A - 041

RFS:

Perform ten meter firing for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, ammunition, M40 field protective mask, NBC gloves, and a basic machine gun target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving 35 points of 51 points in accordance with the FM 23-14.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure 2 threads are showing on the front sight post.
2. Center the rear peep sight by rotating it clockwise as far as it will go, then rotating counter-clockwise 5 clicks or half turns.
3. Center the rear sight windage knob by rotating it toward the muzzle until the peep sight is completely to the right, then rotate the windage knob toward the butt stock 12 clicks to the left.
4. Set elevation knob a range of 700 meters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Assume a bipod supported prone position.
6. Fire 3 single rounds loaded individually at the center base of the aiming point on aiming paster 1.
7. Correct for windage by rotating the windage knob to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
8. Correct for elevation by rotating the peep sight to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
9. Repeat steps 5 through 8.
10. Repeat steps 5 though 9 utilizing aiming paster 2.
11. Using controlled burst firing, fire two 3 round bursts on pasters and 4, in no time limit.
12. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
13. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
14. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
15. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
16. Fire four 3 round bursts on pasters 1 through 4, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 20 seconds.
17. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
18. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, NBC, in a time limit of 40 seconds.
19. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
20. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 40 seconds.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Performance steps 1 through 10 are for 10 meter zero. Marines unable to zero with 12 rounds should be removed from the firing line for remedial training.
2. There is no reason to record the 10 meter zero, because it applies only to firing at the 10 meter basic machine gun target.
3. Performance steps 11, 13, and 15 are for practice.
4. Performance steps 16, 18, and 20 are for score.
5. One point is allowed for each round impacting within the scoring space with a maximum of three points per space. The maximum possible score is 51 points.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M249 squad automatic weapon with basic machinegun target at 10 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A064	CTG, 5.56mm, 4&1 LINKED, F/SAW	108 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 143 RFS:

Prepare mortar ammunition for firing

Condition: Given a fire command, mortar ammunition, and a fuse wrench, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By preparing the cartridge(s), in accordance with the fire command.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the cartridge from the container.
2. Examine the round for burrs, deformities, cleanliness, and serviceability.
3. Using a fuse wrench, set the fuze, if required, by turning the fuze setter ring in a clockwise direction until the time scale is aligned with the index line.
4. Reduce the charge by removing increments or propellants, if require
5. Remove the safety wire.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range and impact area suitable for mortars (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	1 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required. All available DODICs should be used to complete this task to standard.		

Weapon: M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	1 each
Expenditure of ammunition is not required. All available DODICs should be used to complete this task to standard.		

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 145 RFS:

Manipulate the mortar for a small deflection and elevation change

Condition: Given a fire command and a mounted, M224 60mm mortar or a mounted M252 81mm mortar.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: To achieve a small deflection change of 20 to 60 mils and a small elevation change of 35 to 90 mils, within 35 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the fire command and echo the fire command.
2. Place the deflection on the sight.
3. Place the elevation on the sight.
4. Level the elevation bubble.
5. Level the cross level bubble.
6. Traverse half way to the posts.
7. Re-level the cross level bubble.
8. Perform steps 6 and 7 until the vertical hairline is within 2 mils of the correct sight picture.
9. Check both bubbles and re-level, if necessary.
10. Announce "Gun up."

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range and impact area suitable for mortars (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	C870	CTG, 81mm, SMK SCREEN RP LWCMUK	2 each
	C871	CTG, 81mm, ILLUM W/FZ UK	2 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 146

RFS:

Manipulate the mortar for a large deflection and elevation change

Condition: Given a fire command and a mounted M224 60mm mortar or a mounted M252 81mm mortar.

Standard: To achieve a large deflection change in excess of 200 mils, but less than 300 mils, and a large elevation change in excess of 100 mils, but less than 200 mils, within 60 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the fire command and echo the fire command.
2. Place the deflection on the sight.
3. Move the bipod until the vertical line is on the correct sight picture.
4. Rough level.
5. Level the elevation bubble.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Ensure the sight picture is within 20 mils of the correct sight picture.
7. If necessary, traverse half way to the posts.
8. Re-level the cross level.
9. Perform steps 8 and 9 until the vertical hairline is within 2 mils of the correct sight picture.
10. Check both bubbles and re-level, if necessary.
11. Announce "Gun up."

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range and impact area suitable for mortars (if live ammunition is used)

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	4 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 152

RFS:

Receive a Call For Fire (CFF)

Condition: Given a forward observer's Call For Fire (CFF) request, corrections, DA Form 2399, and a pencil.

Standard: By recording the Call For Fire (CFF) without error.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive and record the observer Identification and the warning order on DA Form 2399.
2. Read back the information from the first radio transmission to the forward observer.
3. Receive and record the target location on DA Form 2399.
4. Read back the information from the second radio transmission to the forward observer.
5. Receive and record the description of the target, the method of engagement, and the method of fire and control on DA Form 2399.
6. Read back the information from the third radio transmission to the forward observer.
7. Transmit the message to observer to the forward observer.
8. Receive and record the forward observer's corrections on DA Form 2399.
9. Read back the information from the forward observer's corrections.
10. Record the sight data and number of rounds expended.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

11. Receive and record the forward observer's End Of Mission (EOM) and battle damage assessment on DA Form 2399.
12. Read back the information from the forward observer's End Of Mission (EOM) and battle damage assessment from DA Form 2399.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 162

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M224 60mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 60mm mortar, tools, and authorized cleaning gear and lubricants.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08206A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for foreign matter in cannon tube.
2. Look for bulges, dents, cracks, missing or damaged parts, or evidence of gas leakage around breech cap.
3. Place firing selector at (TRIGGER FIRE) T, (SAFE) S, and (DROP FIRE) D. Check safety by squeezing the trigger. Trigger should not fire mortar with firing selector on S or D. Trigger should click loudly with firing selector at T.
4. Check for illumination of range indicator assembly.
5. Check for smooth operation of elevating mechanism.
6. Check for smooth operation of traversing mechanism.
7. Check for smooth operation of cross-leveling mechanism.
8. Leg must move in and out smoothly with plain wing-nut loosened.
9. Extend shock absorbers. They must return smoothly, without binding to original position when released.
10. Ensure collar locks securely.
11. Check M7 base plate for cracks or breaks.
12. Check locking cap for smooth 360 rotation.
13. Insert base cap of canon into socket of M8 base plate. Close latch. Ensure latch pin seats and locks, and check for retention of base plate on cannon.
14. Check M64A1 sight unit for the illumination of telescope, coarse elevation scale, coarse elevation scale arrow, cross-level vial, fine elevation scale, fine elevation index arrow, coarse azimuth (deflection) index arrow, elevation vial, fine azimuth (deflection) scale, and coarse azimuth (deflection) scale.
15. Check eye piece for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
16. Check eye-shield vent holes for dirt.
17. Ensure latching lever secures sight unit mount to dovetail.
18. Ensure bubbles in level vials will move and vials are not cracked or loose in mount.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

19. Ensure vial cover rotates freely.
20. Check elevation knob and deflection knob for smooth operation.
21. Ensure backlash on knobs doesn't exceed 0.5 mils.
22. Ensure the fine elevation scale slips only when the screws are loosened.
23. Check to assure the locking knobs provide tension on the deflection and elevation control knobs.
24. Inspect bore sight lens for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
25. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
26. Ensure mounting surfaces are free of nicks and burrs.
27. Check night aiming devices for illumination in a darkened area.
28. Check for missing or damaged radiation warning, data plate, or other parts.
29. Check for evidence of tampering.
30. Check 10558A-SD weapons record book for entries of round expenditure.
31. Check M14 aiming posts for accountability.
32. Check M14 aiming posts for cleanliness and serviceability.
33. Check the aiming post case for excessive wear and cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08206A-10/1A Operator's Manual, M224 60mm Lightweight Company Mortar
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 163

RFS:

Bore sight an M224 60mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M224 60mm mortar, mounted in the upper saddle, and a M115 boresight.

Standard: By calibrating the mortar with a zero tolerance for deflection and elevation within 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Mount the bore sight.
2. Insure the sight data reads 3200 on the deflection and 0800 on the elevation.
3. Level both bubbles on the M64A1 sight.
4. Cross-level the bore sight.
5. Level the elevation on the bore sight.
6. Level the M64A1 sight for elevation by turning the elevation control knob.
7. Loosen the screws on the elevation control knob and slip the scale to zero mils.
8. Tighten the screws on the elevation control knob.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Direct the Ammunition Bearer to move the sight box 10 meters forward and left or right, as required.
10. Assure the bore sight sighting line is on the right side of the circle.
11. Refer the vertical hairline of the M64A1 sight to the left side of the circle.
12. Slip the deflection fine scale to zero mils.
13. Loosen the screws on the deflection fine scale and align the bore sight index line to the bore sight index arrow.
14. Tighten the screws on the deflection control knob.
15. Assure the 3200 on the deflection course scale is aligned to the course deflection index arrow.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 164

RFS:

Perform pre-fire safety checks for an M224 60mm mortar in conventional mode

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, mounted M224 60mm mortar.

Standard: In accordance with FM 23-90.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for mask by ensuring there are no obstructions forward of the gun, such as hills, buildings, or trees.
2. Check for overhead clearance by ensuring there are no obstructions above or over the gun, such as camouflage netting, trees, or building eaves.
3. Notify the Fire Direction Center (FDC) of any mask or overhead interference.
4. Ensure the sight is locked into the dovetail slot of the bipod.
5. Ensure the open end of the socket cap is pointed in the direction of fire.
6. Ensure the barrel is locked to the base plate.
7. Ensure the selector lever is on (DROP FIRE) D.
8. Ensure the bipod is connected to the upper or lower saddle of the barrel.
9. Ensure the collar locking knob is secured and wrist tight.
10. Ensure the locking nut is hand tight.
11. Ensure the spread cable is taut.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0341 - A - 169

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 81mm mortar, authorized cleaning gear and lubricants.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09922A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for foreign matter in cannon.
2. Look for bulges, dents, cracks, rust, and missing or damaged parts, on the cannon or blast attenuator device. Look for evidence of gas leakage around breech plug and firing pin.
3. Ensure the weapon has been bore scoped and pullover gauged within 9 days prior to firing.
4. Check mount for cracks, broken welds, rust, loose, missing, or damaged parts.
5. Ensure smooth operation of elevating mechanism.
6. Ensure smooth operation of traversing mechanism.
7. Ensure smooth operation of cross-leveling mechanism.
8. Ensure the barrel clamp assembly operates properly and holds the barrel securely.
9. Extend buffers. They must return smoothly, without binding, to original position when released.
10. Check base plate for cracks, loose, missing, or damaged parts.
11. Check socket cap for smooth 360 rotation.
12. Check M64A1 sight unit for the illumination of telescope, coarse elevation scale, coarse elevation scale arrow, cross-level vial, fine elevation scale, fine elevation index arrow, coarse azimuth (deflection) index arrow, elevation vial, fine azimuth (deflection) scale, and coarse azimuth (deflection) scale.
13. Check eye piece for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
14. Check eye-shield vent holes for dirt.
15. Ensure latching lever secures sight unit mount to dovetail.
16. Ensure bubbles in level vials will move and vials are not cracked or loose in mount.
17. Ensure vial cover rotates freely.
18. Inspect elevation knob and deflection knob for smooth operation.
19. Ensure backlash on knobs doesn't exceed 0.5 mils.
20. Ensure the fine elevation scale slips only when the screws are loosened.
21. Ensure the locking knobs provide tension on the deflection and elevation control knobs.
22. Inspect bore sight lens for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
23. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
24. Check bore sight eye-shield for damage.
25. Ensure mounting surfaces are free of nicks and burrs.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

26. Check bore sight straps and clamp assembly for serviceability.
27. Check night aiming devices for illumination in a darkened area.
28. Check for missing or damaged radiation warning, data plate, or other parts.
29. Check for evidence of tampering.
30. Check 10558A-SD weapons record book for entries of round expenditure.
31. Check M14 aiming posts for accountability.
32. Check M14 aiming posts for cleanliness and serviceability.
33. Check the aiming post case for excessive wear and cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 170

RFS:

Bore sight an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, mounted M252 81mm mortar, and an SL-3 complete M45 boresight.

Standard: By calibrating the mortar with a zero tolerance for deflection and elevation within 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Attach the bore sight.
2. Ensure the sight data reads 6400 on the deflection and 0800 on the elevation.
3. Level both bubbles on the M64A1 sight.
4. Cross level the bore sight.
5. Level the elevation on the bore sight.
6. Level the M64A1 sight for elevation by turning the elevation control knob.
7. Loosen the screws on the elevation control knob and slip the scale to zero mils.
8. Tighten the screws on the elevation control knob.
9. Identify a distant aiming point at least 200 meters away.
10. Ensure the bore sight vertical hairline is center of the distant aiming point by traversing while looking through the bore sight and cross leveling.
11. Refer the vertical hairline of the M64A1 sight to the center of the distant aiming point.
12. Slip the deflection fine scale to zero mils.
13. Loosen the screws on the deflection fine scale, and align the bore sight index line to the bore sight index arrow.
14. Tighten the screws on the deflection control knob.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Ensure the M64 Along the deflection course scale are aligned to the course deflection index arrow.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 171

RFS:

Perform pre-fire safety checks for an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, mounted, M252 81mm mortar.

Standard: In accordance with FM 23-90.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check mask by ensuring there are no obstructions forward of the gun such as hills, buildings, or trees.
2. Check overhead clearance by ensuring there are no obstructions above or over the gun such as camouflage netting, trees, or building eaves.
3. Notify the Fire Direction Center (FDC) of any mask or overhead interference.
4. Ensure the sight is locked into the dovetail slot of the bipod.
5. Ensure the open end of the socket cap is pointed in the direction of fire.
6. Ensure the barrel is locked to the base plate.
7. Ensure the firing pin recess is facing upward and the firing pin is present and tight.
8. Ensure the bipod locking latch is locked, securing the barrel clamp against the lower stop band.
9. Ensure the fixed leg-locking knob is tight and the fixed leg teeth are meshed.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 257

RFS:

Engage targets with grenades for distance and accuracy

Condition: Given practice grenades and targets at 20, 30, and 40 meters; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on 2 of 3 targets at each station within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage a fighting position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
2. Engage a trench target at 40 meters with 3 grenades, from the standing position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Engage a mortar position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
4. Engage a troop in the open at 20 meters with 3 grenades, from the alternate prone position.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	12 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-30 Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 301 RFS:

Perform operator maintenance on a AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PVS-7 night vision goggles, and authorized clear materials.

Standard: In accordance with TM 11-5855-262-10-2.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Open the carrying case and inventory items.
2. Check the maintenance record, and verify completion of the 180-day service.
3. Inspect all lenses for dirt or fingerprint residue. If necessary, clean and dry lenses with water and lens tissue.
4. Inspect lenses for cracks or damage. Scratches and gouges are acceptable if operation is not affected.
5. Ensure the battery cap and battery cap retainer are present.
6. Remove the battery cap and inspect for moisture, cracks, and corroded or defective spring contacts. Inspect for the presence of preformed packing inside the cap.
7. Rotate diopter adjustment rings to make sure the eye pieces move freely through the range of motion and are not loose.
8. Inspect eye pieces for dirt, dust, and cracked or torn cups. Inspect for bent, broken, or improperly fitting eyecup. If necessary, clean with water.
9. Slide each eye piece back and forth to check for binding or looseness.
10. Rotate objective lens focus ring to ensure free range of movement.
11. Inspect the infinity focus-locking ring for tightness.
12. Inspect for cracked, torn, or missing lens cap. Inspect cord for cuts, damage, or frayed ends. Re-tie ends if necessary.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. Remove any batteries and turn the switch from reset/OFF to ON to IR/pull. Each position should have a definite stopping point. Inspect for broken or missing knob.
14. Re-install batteries and check IR, and momentary IR if so equipped functions by following the operating instructions in paragraph 2-27.
15. Remove goggles from the head mount while in operation. Goggles automatically shut off.
16. Inspect head mount for cuts, tears, fraying, holes, cracks, or defective fasteners.
17. Inspect head mount for dirt, dust, or corrosion.
18. Inspect head mount for dirt, dust, or corrosion.
19. Press the socket-release button and check for free motion.
20. Rotate the IR focus lens to ensure free movement.
21. Inspect for dirt, dust, scratches, or damage. If necessary, clean with water and dry with lens tissue. Install compass assembly and turn on goggles. When the illumination button is depressed, compass is visible.
22. Remove all items from the carrying case and shake out loose dirt and foreign material.
23. Inspect the carrying case for tears, cuts, excess wear, or damage to mounting clips.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Night Vision Goggles
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 374

RFS:

Locate an unknown position by resection

Condition: Given a lensatic compass, topographical map, protractor, and map pen.

Standard: By determining a six-digit grid coordinate of an unknown position within 100 meters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Orient the map.
2. Visually identify 2 known points on the map.
3. Determine the magnetic azimuth to one of the known points from your unknown position, utilizing a lensatic compass.
4. Convert the magnetic azimuth to a grid azimuth.
5. Convert the grid azimuth to a back azimuth.
6. Utilizing the back azimuth, draw a line on the map from the known point back towards your unknown position which extends beyond the estimated distance of the unknown position.
7. Repeat steps 3 through 6.
8. Determine the grid coordinates of the unknown position on the map where the lines cross.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 730

RFS:

Lay a mortar using the compass method

Condition: Given a general location, an SL-3 complete 60mm or 81mm mortar, an M2 compass or lensatic compass, and an azimuth of lay, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By establishing a direction stake and lay the mortar on the base plate stake.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Squad Leader marks the location of the base plate with a base plate stake.
2. The Squad Leader places the compass on the base plate stake and levels it.
3. The Squad Leader rotates compass to the desired azimuth.
4. The Squad Leader assumes a prone or kneeling position behind the compass.
5. The Squad Leader sights in through the sights of the compass.
6. The Squad Leader directs the Ammunition Man to position himself 25 meters forward of the base plate stake on the mounting azimuth.
7. The Ammunition Man responds to the Squad Leader's hand and arm signals by moving the direction stake accordingly.
8. The Squad Leader directs the Ammunition Man to set in the direction stake, using hand and arm signals.
9. The Gunner mounts the mortar on the base plate stake.
10. The Gunner lays the mortar on the direction stake.
11. The Gunner calls "Gun up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 731

RFS:

Engage targets with a mortar using direct lay

Condition: Given a general location, a mounted SL-3 complete 60mm or 81mm mortar, prepared ammunition, as a mortar squad, while

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

wearing fighting loads.

Standard: Within 3 rounds, achieve impact within effective casualty radius to the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Squad Leader announces the fire command.
2. The Squad Leader estimates the range to the target.
3. The Squad Leader converts range estimate into elevation and charge.
4. The Gunner places the initial deflection of 3200 on the sight.
5. The Gunner places the elevation on the sight.
6. The Gunner levels the gun with the correct sight picture.
7. The Gunner bisects the target.
8. The Gunner braces the bipod/mount.
9. The Assistant Gunner will, on command, half load and fire the mortar.
10. The Gunner re-levels the gun.
11. The Gunner re-bisects the target.
12. The Gunner refers the sight to the blast.
13. The Gunner traverses and minor adjusts back to the target.
14. The Squad Leader makes range corrections.
15. The Gunner repeats steps 5 through 14 until the impact of the round has effect on target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range and impact area suitable for mortars

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B643	CTG, 60MM, HE, W/FZ PD M935	4 each
Weapon: M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A085	CTG, CAL .22, SHORT F/DEV M32A1	10 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars

EVENT: 0341 - A - 732

RFS:

Lay a mortar using reciprocal lay

Condition: Given a mounted SL-3 complete 60mm or 81mm mortar, and commands from an M2 aiming circle operator, as a mortar

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: To a tolerance of 1 mil, using an M2 aiming circle or a base mortar sight within 115 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Gunner lays the mortar in the general direction of fire.
2. The Gunner, upon receiving the command "Aiming point this instrument," refers the sight to bisect the lens of the aiming circle, or base piece.
3. The Gunner announces "Aiming point identified," once the vertical hairline of the sight is bisecting the lens of the aiming circle or base piece.
4. The Gunner places the deflection on the sight unit after receiving the deflection from the aiming circle/base piece.
5. The Gunner performs the 5 steps of crew drill to relay on the aiming circle/base piece.
6. The Gunner announces "Gun#___ ready for re-check."
7. The Gunner repeats steps 4 and 5 until the deflection announced from the aiming circle/base piece is within 1 mil of the deflection on the sight.
8. The Gunner announces "Gun#___ one mil out/zero mils out, gun laid."
9. The aiming circle operator announces "Refer your sight to 2800 and place out your aiming posts."
10. The Gunner refers the sight to 2800 deflection and sends out the Ammunition Man 100 meters, or as far as terrain allows, up to 100 meter
11. The Gunner utilizes hand and arm signals to direct the Ammunition Man in the placement of the far post.
12. The Ammunition Man drives the post into the ground and remove cant from the posts as directed by the Gunner.
13. On signal from the Gunner, the Ammunition Man runs half the distance to the gun and responds to the Gunner's hand and arm signals to place in the near post.
14. The Ammunition Man drives the post into the ground and removes cant from the posts as directed by the Gunner.
15. The Gunner calls the Ammunition Man in with hand and arm signals, once the correct sight picture has been attained, and announces "Gun#___ up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars

EVENT: 0341 - A - 733

RFS:

Mount the M224 60mm mortar

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 60mm mortar, tools, a designated location, a direction of fire, and an emplaced direction stake, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By preparing the gun for action within 90 seconds and within 2 mils of the direction stake.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. All crew members inspect the mortar components.
2. The Ammunition Man places the base plate against the base plate stake at approximately 11 o'clock, with the open end of the locking cap facing the direction of fire.
3. The Assistant Gunner opens the bipod legs, centers the elevation tube, and locks down the plain wing-nut.
4. The Assistant Gunner places the bipods approximately 2 feet in front of the base plate, with the shock absorbers facing the base plate.
5. The Assistant Gunner pushes down on the shock absorbers, raises the collar assembly, and opens the collar.
6. The Gunner places the base cap in the locking cap and rotates the carrying handle up, locking the barrel to the base plate.
7. The Gunner places the collar clamp in the lower saddle of the cannon.
8. The Gunner closes the upper half of the collar clamp and starts tightening the collar-locking knob.
9. The Gunner removes the sight unit from the sight case and checks the sight data. The deflection is placed on 3200 and the elevation on 1100. Close sight case.
10. The Ammunition Man assures the collar locking knob is tightened before the Gunner returns with the sight.
11. The Assistant Gunner runs the elevation up approximately 8 inches.
12. The Gunner places the sight unit dovetail in the dovetail slot.
13. The Gunner looks through the sight and moves the bipods until the vertical hairline of the M64A1 sight is on, or near, the direction stake.
14. The Gunner rough levels the mortar by manipulating the left leg assembly.
15. The Gunner levels the elevation bubble by turning the elevation hand crank until the elevation bubble on the M64A1 sight is level.
16. The Gunner re-levels the cross level by manipulating the fine cross level mechanism.
17. If the Gunner's vertical line in the sight is within 20 mils of the post, the Gunner traverses half the distance to the stake and minor adjusts.
18. If the Gunner's vertical line in the sight is in excess of 20 mils the Gunner must repeat steps 15 through 19.
19. The Gunner continues step 19 until the vertical line is within 2 mils of the stake and both bubbles on the sight are level.
20. The Gunner announces "Gun #___ up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 734

RFS:

Mount an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 81mm mortar, tools, a designated location, a direction of fire, and an emplaced direction stake, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By preparing the gun for action within 90 seconds and within 2 mils of the direction stake.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. All crew members inspect the mortar components.
2. The Ammunition Man places the base plate against the base plate stake at approximately 11 o'clock, with the open end of the socket cap facing the direction of fire.
3. The Assistant Gunner places the breach plug into the socket cap and rotates the firing pin recess up.
4. The Gunner prepares the bipod by loosening the fixed leg-locking knob and lowering the fixed leg until the location catch engages in the recess. He tightens the fixed leg locking knob, ensuring the teeth are meshed, and opens the barrel clamp.
5. The Gunner exposes 8 inches of the elevation shaft and leaves the elevation hand-wheel open.
6. The Gunner places the bipod approximately 2 feet in front of base plate.
7. The Gunner places the barrel clamp around the cannon, against the lower stopping band of the cannon, and locks the barrel clamp.
8. The Gunner removes the sight unit from the sight case and checks the sight data. The deflection is placed on 3200 and the elevation on 1100. The Gunner closes the sight case.
9. The Gunner places the sight unit dovetail in the dovetail slot.
10. The Gunner looks through the sight and moves the bipods until the vertical hairline of the M64A1 sight is on, or near, the direction stake.
11. The Gunner rough levels the mortar by manipulating the left leg assembly.
12. The Gunner levels the elevation bubble by turning the elevation hand crank until the elevation bubble on the M64A1 sight is level.
13. The Gunner re-levels the cross level by manipulating the fine cross level mechanism.
14. If the Gunner's vertical line in the sight is within 20 mils of the post, the Gunner traverses half the distance to the stake and minor adjusts.
15. If the Gunner's vertical line in the sight is in excess of 20 mils the Gunner must repeat steps 15 through 13.
16. The Gunner continues step 15 until the vertical line is within 2 mils of the stake and both bubbles on the sight are level.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

17. The Gunner announces "Gun up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars

EVENT: 0341 - A - 735

RFS:

Clear a misfire for an M224 60mm mortar in the conventional mode

Condition: Given a mounted SL-3 complete 60mm mortar, ammunition, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By returning the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The first crewmember that notices the failure to fire announces, "Misfire."
2. When a misfire occurs, all crewmen remain with the gun. During peacetime live fire training, the section or platoon moves to a safe position 50 meters to the rear and only the Gunner and Assistant Gunner remain on the gun to clear the misfire.
3. The Squad Leader/Gunner maintains a grip on the bipods.
4. From a sitting position, the Assistant Gunner kicks downward 3 times on the cooling fins near the carrying handle.
5. The Assistant Gunner places the selector switch on (TRIGGER FIRE) T and squeezes the trigger 2 times.
6. If the round fails to fire, the Assistant Gunner places the selector lever on (SAFE) S.
7. The mortar squad moves back 50 meters and waits for 1 minute to allow the cannon to cool and to prevent a hang-fire from injuring crewmen.
8. After waiting 1 minute, the Squad Leader/Gunner approaches the weapon in a low profile on the left side and sweeps the barrel with fingertips from near the top down to the base cap.
9. If the barrel is too hot, the Squad Leader/Gunner may cool the barrel with water, snow, or if time allows, wait longer. Then recheck for heat.
10. The Squad Leader/Gunner removes the sight, locks down the data, and places the sight in the sight case.
11. The Squad Leader/Gunner lowers the elevation by cranking the elevation all the way down, and then backing off 1/4 turn.
12. The Squad Leader/Gunner loosens the locking knob until the barrel can be rotated 90 degrees in the locking cap so the flat sides of the base cap are aligned to the flats of the locking cap.
13. The Squad Leader/Gunner tightens the locking knob and calls the Assistant Gunner up.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. The Assistant Gunner approaches the cannon in a low profile from the right rear.
15. The Assistant Gunner places his left calf in front of the fixed le assembly to stabilize the bipods.
16. The Assistant Gunner places his right hand at 6 o'clock on the barrel below the reinforced lip of the muzzle and his left hand at 12 o'clock below the reinforced lip of the muzzle.
17. The Squad Leader/Gunner lifts the barrel until it is horizontal, checking with the Assistant Gunner to see if he is ready to stop the cartridge. Once the barrel is raised to horizontal, it should never be lowered until the round is removed.
18. The Assistant Gunner places the fleshy portion of the heel of the thumbs over the muzzle, in preparation to stop the cartridge.
19. The Squad Leader/Gunner continues slowly lifting the base of the barrel past the horizontal position, while listening for the sound of the cartridge moving in the barrel.
20. The first crewman that hears the cartridge moving in the cannon will announce, "Sliding." If the cartridge is lodged in the barrel, remove the barrel from the bipod and place the barrel in the misfire pit. Then notify EOD.
21. Allowing the fuze to pass between the fleshy portion of the thumbs the Assistant Gunner stops the cartridge by applying pressure on the wide portion of the cartridge.
22. The Assistant Gunner removes the cartridge from the barrel and attempts to install the safety wire. Do not attempt to force the safety wire into the fuze. If the safety wire cannot be inserted into the fuze, place the cartridge in a misfire pit and notify EOD.
23. The Squad Leader/Gunner calls the Ammunition Man up.
24. The Ammunition Man receives the cartridge and inspects it for a dented primer or the lack of a dent in the primer. Identify the cause of the malfunction. If the primer is dented, re-pack the cartridge with all packing material and place the cartridge in the misfire pit and notify EOD. If the primer is not dented, attempt to fire the cartridge on a neighboring gun.
25. The Gunner inverts the barrel and shakes out any unburned increments or debris, then locks the barrel into the base plate and tightens the locking knob.
26. The Assistant Gunner swabs the bore of the mortar.
27. The Squad Leader/Gunner replaces the sight and re-lays the mortar on the last data given.
28. The Squad Leader/Gunner places the fire selector back on (DROP FIRE) D.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	1 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. TM 08206A-10/1A Operator's Manual, M224 60mm Lightweight Company Mortar
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 736 RFS:

Clear a misfire for an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given a mounted SL-3 complete 81mm mortar, ammunition, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By returning the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The first crewmember that notices the failure to fire announces "Misfire."
2. When a misfire occurs, all crewmen will remain with the gun. Durin peacetime live fire training, the section/platoon will move to a safe position 50 meters to the rear. Only the Gunner and Assistant Gunner will remain on the gun to clear the misfire.
3. The Gunner maintains a grip on the bipods.
4. From a sitting position, the Assistant Gunner kicks downward 3 time on the cooling fins near the breech plug.
5. If the round fails to fire, the mortar squad moves back 50 meters and waits for 1 minute to allow the cannon to cool and to prevent a han fire from injuring crewmen.
6. After waiting 1 minute, the Gunner approaches the weapon in a low profile on the left side and sweeps the barrel with his fingertips from the bottom of the blast attenuator down to the breech plug.
7. If the barrel is to hot, the Gunner may cool the barrel with water, snow, or, if time allows, wait longer. Then recheck for heat.
8. The Gunner removes the sight, locks down the data, places the sight in the case, and retrieves the firing pin wrench.
9. The Gunner attempts to remove the firing pin.
10. If the firing pin cannot be removed, the Gunner lowers the elevation by cranking the elevation all the way down, and then backing off 1/4 turn. He then removes the firing pin.
11. The Gunner inspects the firing pin for excessive wear, mushroomed tip, or breaks.
12. The Gunner places the firing pin in the sight case.
13. The Gunner grasps both ends of the traversing gear assembly to support the mortar throughout the rest of the procedure.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. The Gunner calls the Assistant Gunner and the Ammunition Man.
15. The Assistant Gunner and the Ammunition Man approach the cannon from the right rear, in a low profile.
16. The Assistant Gunner ensures the barrel clamp latch is down, then releases the barrel clamp assembly and rotates the barrel 90 degrees.
17. The Assistant Gunner re-clamps the barrel clamp.
18. The Assistant Gunner places his left calf in front of the fixed leg assembly to stabilize the bipods.
19. The Assistant Gunner places his right hand at 6 o'clock on the barrel on the bottom of the blast attenuator device and his left hand at 12 o'clock on top of the blast attenuator device.
20. The Ammunition Man places both hands on the cooling fins under the barrel.
21. The Ammunition Man lifts the barrel to a horizontal position, checking with the Assistant Gunner to see if he is ready to stop the cartridge. Once the barrel is raised to horizontal, it should never be lowered until the round is removed.
22. The Assistant Gunner places the fleshy portion of the heel of the thumbs over the muzzle, in preparation to stop the cartridge.
23. The Ammunition Man continues slowly lifting the base of the barrel past the horizontal position, while listening for the sound of the cartridge moving in the barrel.
24. The first crewman that hears the cartridge moving in the cannon will announce "Sliding." If the cartridge is lodged in the barrel, remove the barrel from the bipod and place the barrel in the misfire pit. Notify EOD.
25. The Assistant Gunner allows the fuze to pass between the fleshy portion of the thumbs and stops the cartridge by applying pressure on the wide portion of the cartridge.
26. The Assistant Gunner removes the cartridge from the barrel and attempts to install the safety wire. Do not attempt to force the safety wire into the fuze. If the safety wire cannot be inserted into the fuze, place the cartridge in a misfire pit and notify EOD.
27. The Ammunition Man inverts the barrel and shakes out any unburned increments or debris. He then lowers the barrel and inserts the breech plug back into the socket cap.
28. The Ammunition Man receives the cartridge and inspects it for a dented primer or the lack of a dent in the primer and identifies the cause of the malfunction. If the primer is dented, re-pack the cartridge with all packing material and place the cartridge in the misfire pit and notify EOD. If the primer is not dented, attempt to fire the cartridge on a neighboring gun.
29. The Gunner releases the barrel clamp and rotates the barrel until the firing pin recess is up.
30. The Gunner installs the firing pin.
31. The Assistant Gunner swab the bore of the mortar.
32. The Gunner replaces the sight and relays the mortar on the last data given.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	1 each

Expenditure of ammunition is not required.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 737 RFS:

Fire an M224 60mm mortar in the hand held mode

Condition: Given an M224 cannon and M8 base plate, an asbestos heat mitten, prepared ammunition, and targets between 400 and 1340 meters, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: Within 4 rounds, achieving impact within effective casualty radius to the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Gunner places fire selector on (TRIGGER FIRE) T.
2. The Gunner estimate range to target.
3. The Gunner kneels directly behind the cannon.
4. The Gunner places the ball of the left foot on the M8 base plate.
5. The Gunner identifies the charge to be used to engage targets at th estimated range.
6. The Ammunition Man prepares the round for firing.
7. On command half load, the Assistant Gunner releases the round and assumes a safe posture.
8. The Gunner elevates or depresses the cannon until the indicator bal floats next to the estimated range on the appropriate scale.
9. The Gunner sights in over the top or side of the cannon.
10. When the weapon is on target and the indicator ball is floating next to the estimated range, the Gunner starts applying pressure on the trigger to fire.
11. The Gunner checks alignment and range indicator until the round fires.
12. Gunner releases the trigger.
13. On command, the Assistant Gunner half loads and releases the round

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

- 14. The Gunner observes the impact and makes range corrections and weapon alignment corrections.
- 15. Repeat steps 8 through 15 until the rounds have effect on target.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

- 1. Live fire range and impact area suitable for visually acquiring and engaging with mortars

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	4 each

REFERENCES

- 1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 739 RFS:

Refer and realign a mortar

Condition: Given a mounted SL-3 complete mortar and a subsequent fire command, as a mortar platoon or section, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: To a tolerance of 1 mil, within 75 seconds of the command "Post."

PERFORMANCE STEPS

- 1. The mortar squad will receive the command "Referred deflection _____, realign aiming posts."
- 2. The Gunner will place the referred deflection on the sight unit and look in the sight without manipulating the mortar.
- 3. On command "Posts," the Ammunition Man will move out on the double to realign the posts.
- 4. The Ammunition Man will knock down the near pos, proceed to the far post, and respond to the Gunner's hand and arm signals.
- 5. On command of the Gunner, the Ammunition Man will move to the near post and place it in, using the same procedure.
- 6. When the Gunner calls the Ammunition Man in, the Ammunition Man will command the Gunner to "Center traverse and move bipods," if the gun is out of center traverse.
- 7. The Gunner will center the traverse and relay on the posts.
- 8. The Gunner will announce "Gun# ____ up."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

- 1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: 0341 - A - 740 RFS:

Engage targets using traverse and search fire

Condition: Given a mounted, SL-3 complete, M224 60mm or M252 81mm mortar, ammunition, fire commands, and a target, as a mortar team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By achieving a tolerance of 20 mils for both deflection and elevation for the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Mortar team receives a fire command "Prepare to traverse right to left."
2. Mortar team repeats fire command.
3. Gunner places the data on the sight.
4. Gunner traverses the bipods all the way left or right and backs off 2 turns.
5. Ammunition Man prepares ammunition for firing.
6. Gunner relays the mortar on the posts.
7. On command, the Assistant Gunner half loads and fires the initial round.
8. Gunner manipulates the traverse and elevation.
9. Gunner re-levels the cross level bubble.
10. Repeat steps 6 through 8 until all rounds called for in the fire command are expended.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range and impact area suitable for mortars

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	8 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0341 - A - 741

RFS:

Construct a mortar position

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete mortar, entrenching tools, sandbags, a designated position, and a direction of fire, as a mortar squad, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: To the proper dimensions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The squad will mount and lay the mortar in front of the position.
2. The squad will dig a mortar pit that is 3 feet deep and 8 feet in diameter.
3. The squad will dig an ammunition pit to the right or left rear of the mortar pit that is large enough to stack ammunition boxes 3 high and 3 deep, and allow separation of the different ammunition types.
4. The squad will mount and lay the mortar in the prepared pit.
5. The squad will build a parapet 3 feet thick and at least 20 inches high reinforced with sandbags, and sloping away from the position. The squad will leave an opening that is 3 feet wide in the parapet to provide a clear line of sight to the aiming posts.
6. The squad will dig a connecting trench from the mortar pit to the ammunition pit that is 18 inches wide and 20 inches deep, with a 45 degree angle in the trench.
7. The squad will dig a location for ready ammunition on the right side of the pit.
8. The squad will dig grenade sumps into the left and right side of the pit.
9. The squad will dig a drainage sump.
10. The squad will camouflage the position.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. Mortar team members will conduct the performance measures, working interchangeably.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Training area where digging is permitted

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX F

INFANTRY ASSAULTMAN COURSE

Description

The Infantry Assaultman Course is located at Infantry Training Battalion (ITB), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon successful completion of the Infantry Assaultman Course, a Marine will receive MOS 0351

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Assaultman in an Assault Section of a Weapons Platoon.

Administrative Notes

The enclosed tasks represent the 0351 specific tasks. The remainder of the tasks are drawn from MCO 1510.89A MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) as directed by MCO 1510.121 MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) PROGRAM.

Prerequisites

The Marine will have completed Marine Corps Boot Camp.

EVENT: 0351 - A - 041

RFS:

Perform ten meter firing for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, ammunition, M40 field protective mask, NBC gloves, and a basic machine gun target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving 35 points of 51 points in accordance with the FM 23-14.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure 2 threads are showing on the front sight post.
2. Center the rear peep sight by rotating it clockwise as far as it will go, then rotating counter-clockwise 5 clicks or half turns.
3. Center the rear sight windage knob by rotating it toward the muzzle until the peep sight is completely to the right, then rotate the windag knob toward the butt stock 12 clicks to the left.
4. Set elevation knob a range of 700 meters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Assume a bipod supported prone position.
6. Fire 3 single rounds loaded individually at the center base of the aiming point on aiming paster 1.
7. Correct for windage by rotating the windage knob to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
8. Correct for elevation by rotating the peep sight to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
9. Repeat steps 5 through 8.
10. Repeat steps 5 though 9 utilizing aiming paster 2.
11. Using controlled burst firing, fire two 3 round bursts on pasters and 4, in no time limit.
12. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
13. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
14. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
15. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
16. Fire four 3 round bursts on pasters 1 through 4, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 20 seconds.
17. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
18. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, NBC, in a time limit of 40 seconds.
19. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
20. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 40 seconds.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Performance steps 1 through 10 are for 10 meter zero. Marines unable to zero with 12 rounds should be removed from the firing line for remedial training.
2. There is no reason to record the 10 meter zero, because it applies only to firing at the 10 meter basic machine gun target.
3. Performance steps 11, 13, and 15 are for practice.
4. Performance steps 16, 18, and 20 are for score.
5. One point is allowed for each round impacting within the scoring space with a maximum of three points per space. The maximum possible score is 51 points.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M249 squad automatic weapon with basic machinegun target at 10 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A064	CTG, 5.56mm, 4&1 LINKED, F/SAW	108 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 257 RFS:

Engage targets with grenades for distance and accuracy

Condition: Given practice grenades and targets at 20, 30, and 40 meters; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on 2 of 3 targets at each station within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage a fighting position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
2. Engage a trench target at 40 meters with 3 grenades, from the standing position.
3. Engage a mortar position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
4. Engage a troop in the open at 20 meters with 3 grenades, from the alternate prone position.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
G878	FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN	12 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-30 Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 270 RFS:

Bore a hole using an improvised shape charge

Condition: Given a mission, an individual demolition kit, M7 non-electric blasting cap, M700 time fuse, an M60 fuse igniter, container, cavity liner, standoff sticks, and C4 explosives.

Standard: In accordance with FM 5-250.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the ends from the container.
2. Secure the cavity liner to the bottom of the container with the concave facing up.
3. Calculate the amount of explosive required to accomplish the mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Tightly pack explosives into the container ensuring absence of air pockets and the explosive height is 2 times the cone height.
5. Secure the standoff sticks to the container ensuring the standoff distance is 1 1/2 the cone's height.
6. Place the improvised shape charge.
7. Construct a non-electric initiation set.
8. Prime the explosive at the exact top center of the charge and cover the blasting cap with a small quantity of C4 explosive.
9. Initiate the improvised shape charge.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Demolitions Range

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	<u>Quantity</u>
<u>DODIC</u>		
M023	CHG, DEMO, 1 1/4 LB BLOCK C-41	1 each
M131	CAP, BLASTING, NON-ELEC	1 each
M670	FUZE, BLASTING, TIME	12 each
M766	IGNITOR, TIME, BLASTING, M60	2 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data; Field Expediant Charges
 2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 271 RFS:

Clear an obstacle with an improvised bangalore torpedo

Condition: Given an obstacle, an individual demolitions kit, 2 U-shaped pickets, C-4 explosives, detonating cord, M60 fuse igniter, M700 time fuse, and M7 non-electric blasting cap.

Standard: In accordance with FM 5-250.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Separate the packaging material from the C4 explosive.
2. Inspect the U-shaped pickets for dents or damage.
3. Place the C4 explosives into the concave portion of the 2 U-shaped pickets.
4. Mold the C4 explosive, using a non-sparking tool, into the concave portions run the entire length of U-shaped pickets.
5. Place a line of detonating cord on top of the C4 explosive of one o the pickets and make a single overhand knot every 6 to 8 inches. Ensur the detonating cord runs several feet past the U-shaped picket length s it can be tied into a firing system.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Place the other U-shaped picket onto the picket with the detonating cord previously set in. Ensure the C4 explosive from each picket is touching and detonating cord is in the middle.
7. Secure the 2 engineer stakes together with tape or wire.
8. Place the improvised bangalore under the obstacle.
9. Construct a non-electric initiation set.
10. Prime the detonating cord with the non-electric initiation set.
11. Fire the improvised bangalore torpedo.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Demolitions Range

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	<u>Quantity</u>
<u>DODIC</u>		
M023	CHG, DEMO, 1 1/4 LB BLOCK C-41	1 each
M131	CAP, BLASTING, NON-ELEC	1 each
M456	DETONATING CORD	20 each
M670	FUZE, BLASTING, TIME	12 each
M766	IGNITOR, TIME, BLASTING, M60	2 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data; Field Expediant Charges
2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions

EVENT: 0351 - A - 272

RFS:

Emplace a grapeshot charge

Condition: Given an individual demolition kit, ammunition can, projectiles, buffer material, C4 explosives, CD450-4J blasting machine, firing wire, M51 blasting cap test set, detonating cord, and M6 blasting cap.

Standard: In accordance with FM 5-250.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Make a hole in the center of the bottom of the ammunition can large enough to accept a blasting cap.
2. Place the plastic explosive uniformly in the bottom of the ammunition can.
3. Remove all voids or air spaces from the C4 explosive by pressing th C4 into the container using a non-sparking instrument.
4. Place 2 inches of buffer material (leaves, dirt, cardboard) directl on top of the explosive.
5. Place the projectiles (nails, bolts, rocks) on top of the buffer material.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Place a covering over the projectiles to prevent spilling when handling the charge.
7. Construct an electric initiation set.
8. Make a cap well in the plastic explosive charge through the hole in the bottom of the container.
9. Aim the charge at the center of the target from about 100 feet.
10. Prime the charge by inserting the blasting cap into the cap well, and then cover the blasting cap with a small quantity of C4 explosive.
11. Re-check the aim of the charge.
12. Fire the grapeshot charge upon command or upon entry of the enemy into the kill zone.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Demolitions Range

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	<u>Quantity</u>
<u>DODIC</u>		
M023	CHG, DEMO, 1 1/4 LB BLOCK C-41	1 each
M130	CAP, BLASTING, ELEC	1 each
M456	DETONATING CORD	15 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data; Field Expediant Charges
 2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 278 RFS:

Fall a tree using an external tree cutting charge

Condition: Given a squad demolition kit, an initiation set and/or firing system, C-4 or TNT explosives, and a tree or pole, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By falling the tree or pole in the required direction.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the diameter of the tree approximately 5 feet above the ground.
2. Calculate the amount of explosive necessary to cut the tree.
3. Remove the bark from around the tree approximately 5 feet above the ground and wide enough to accommodate the charge.
4. Shape the explosive so it is rectangular in shape, 1 to 2 inches thick, and twice as wide as it is high.
5. Orient the explosive's longest dimension horizontally and secure th explosive to the tree on the side in which it is intended to fall using duct tape.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Prime the explosive with an initiation set and move to the firing point.
7. Account for all personnel and then announce, "Fire in the hole", 3 times.
8. Seek cover and initiate the charge or initiate the charge and seek cover.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Demolitions Range

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
M131	CAP, BLASTING, NON-ELEC	1 each
M670	FUZE, BLASTING, TIME	12 each
M766	IGNITOR, TIME, BLASTING, M60	2 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 279

RFS:

Sever steel using a steel cutting charge

Condition: Given an individual demolition kit, an initiation set and/or firing system, C-4 or M118 sheet explosives, and a steel rail or plate, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By cutting the steel rail or plate into 2 sections.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the configuration of the steel to be cut.
2. Determine the composition of the steel to be cut.
3. Calculate the size of the charge by the configuration, composition, and size of the steel to be cut.
4. Shape the charge so the width of the charge's cross section is between 1 and 3 times its thickness.
5. Place and secure the explosives so the charge is continuous over the complete line of the proposed cut, and there is close contact between the charge and the target.
6. Prime the charge with an initiation set. Prime long charges every 5 feet. If butting C-4 packages end to end along the line of cut, prime every fourth charge.
7. Ensure the direction of initiation is perpendicular to the target.
8. Account for all personnel and then announce, "Fire in the hole," 3 times.
9. Seek cover, and initiate the charge or initiate the charge, and see cover.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Demolitions Range

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	Munitions/Demolitions	<u>Quantity</u>
<u>DODIC</u>		
M131	CAP, BLASTING, NON-ELEC	1 each
M670	FUZE, BLASTING, TIME	12 each
M766	IGNITOR, TIME, BLASTING, M60	2 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 750 RFS:

Construct an M98A1 Javelin fighting position

Condition: Given entrenching tools, as a Javelin team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: To the proper dimensions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear field of fire forward of the position.
2. Clear the back-blast area behind the fighting position of all personnel, obstructions, and loose objects.
3. The Assistant Gunner provides security and begins construction of range card.
4. The Gunner marks off an area for the fighting position, orientated towards the sector of fire.
5. The Gunner digs an elbow shelf 6 inches wide, 2 feet long, and 6 inches deep in the front of the fighting position.
6. The Gunner digs a primary back-blast slope 2 feet wide, 2 feet long and 1½ feet deep, in the rear of the fighting position.
7. The Gunner digs a secondary back-blast slope 1 foot wide, 1½ feet long, and 1 foot deep, gradually sloping behind the primary back-blast slope.
8. The Gunner digs the standing area 3 feet from front to rear, 6 feet wide, and armpit deep.
9. The Gunner places all the dirt from the fighting position behind the position for the 2 feet high back-blast berm.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Training area where digging is permitted

REFERENCES

1. Javelin Contractor's Handout
-

EVENT: 0351 - A - 751 RFS:

Engage a target with an M98A1 Javelin weapon system

Condition: Given a complete M98A1 Javelin weapon system, a target, and a hot and a cold position, as a Javelin team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By ensuring a hit on target

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Javelin team positions itself in a cold position, which provide cover and concealment.
2. The Team Leader/Assistant Gunner moves to the firing point to conduct a leader's reconnaissance.
3. The Gunner prepares the Javelin for firing by connecting the command launch unit to the round, removing the forward end cap, and turning the power switch on the command launch unit to the NIGHT position.
4. The Team Leader/Assistant Gunner moves back to the cold position.
5. The Javelin team moves to the firing point, with the Gunner utilizing the tactical carry and the Team Leader/Assistant Gunner carrying the spare battery coolant unit.
6. The Team Leader issues a fire command.
7. The Gunner verifies the target and activates the seeker trigger to begin missile cool-down.
8. The Gunner announces "Tracking."
9. The Team Leader/Assistant Gunner turns his back to the target, checks the back-blast area, and announces "back-blast area all clear, gun up."
10. The Gunner locks onto the target by adjusting the track gates around the target and squeezing the seeker trigger.
11. While maintaining pressure on the seeker trigger, the Gunner announces, "launch" and squeezes the fire trigger.
12. The Gunner disconnects and discards the expended Launch Tube Assembly after the missile has been launched.
13. The Javelin team returns to the covered and concealed position.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. Javelin Contractor's Handout
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0351 - A - 752

RFS:

Engage a target with a MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW)

Condition: Given a MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW), a rocket, a 6 round magazine of spotting ammunition, a hot and a cold position, a target, and a fire command, as an assault team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: By ensuring a hit on target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The assault team positions itself in a cold position, which provide cover and concealment.
2. The assault team receives a fire command and moves to the firing point, with the Gunner carrying the MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW) and the Assistant Gunner carrying the rocket.
3. The Gunner assumes a load position while the Assistant Gunner removes the forward end cap of the rocket.
4. The Assistant Gunner hands the magazine to the Gunner.
5. The Gunner loads the magazine into the magazine well while the Assistant Gunner loads the rocket into the MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW).
6. The Gunner assumes a firing position and locates a target in the telescopic sight or night vision sight.
7. The Gunner charges the MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW) and cocks the spotting rifle by pulling the cocking handle to the rear and releasing.
8. The Gunner fires the spotting rifle until the rounds impact the target.
9. The Gunner announces "On target."
10. The Assistant Gunner turns his back to the target, checks the back blast area, and announces "Back-blast area all secure."
11. The Gunner announces "Rocket," and fires the rocket by depressing the launch lever and squeezing the fire trigger.
12. The Assistant Gunner removes and discards the expended rocket.
13. The assault team returns to the covered and concealed position.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for SMAW

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	MK153	Shoulder launched Multipurpose Assault Weapon (SMAW)
	<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
	HX06	RKT 83mm, HEAA (SMAW)
		2 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83mm (SMAW) MK153 MOD 0
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX G

INFANTRY ANTITANK ASSAULT GUIDED MISSILEMAN COURSE

Description

The Antitank Assault Guided Missileman Course is located at Infantry Training Battalion (ITB), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon successful completion of the Antitank Assault Guided Missileman Course, a Marine will receive MOS 0352.

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a TOW Gunner in an Infantry Battalion.

Administrative Notes

The enclosed tasks represent the 0352 specific tasks. The remainder of the tasks are drawn from MCO 1510.89A MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) as directed by MCO 1510.121 MARINE CORPS COMMON SKILLS (MCCS) PROGRAM.

Prerequisites

The Marine will have completed Marine Corps Boot Camp.

EVENT: 0352 - A - 041

RFS:

Perform ten meter firing for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, ammunition, M40 field protective mask, NBC gloves, and a basic machine gun target, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving 35 points of 51 points in accordance with the FM 23-14.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure 2 threads are showing on the front sight post.
2. Center the rear peep sight by rotating it clockwise as far as it will go, then rotating counter-clockwise 5 clicks or half turns.
3. Center the rear sight windage knob by rotating it toward the muzzle until the peep sight is completely to the right, then rotate the windage knob toward the butt stock 12 clicks to the left.
4. Set elevation knob a range of 700 meters.
5. Assume a bipod supported prone position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Fire 3 single rounds loaded individually at the center base of the aiming point on aiming paster 1.
7. Correct for windage by rotating the windage knob to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
8. Correct for elevation by rotating the peep sight to move the peep sight the direction and distance required to center the 3 round shot group on the center base of the aiming paster.
9. Repeat steps 5 through 8.
10. Repeat steps 5 though 9 utilizing aiming paster 2.
11. Using controlled burst firing, fire two 3 round bursts on pasters and 4, in no time limit.
12. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
13. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
14. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
15. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, in no time limit.
16. Fire four 3 round bursts on pasters 1 through 4, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 20 seconds.
17. Don an M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
18. Fire eight 3 round bursts on pasters 7 through 8, traversing and searching, NBC, in a time limit of 40 seconds.
19. Remove and stow the M40 protective mask with hood and NBC gloves.
20. Fire five 3 round bursts on pasters 5 through 6, traversing and searching, in a time limit of 40 seconds.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Performance steps 1 through 10 are for 10 meter zero. Marines unable to zero with 12 rounds should be removed from the firing line for remedial training.
2. There is no reason to record the 10 meter zero, because it applies only to firing at the 10 meter basic machine gun target.
3. Performance steps 11, 13, and 15 are for practice.
4. Performance steps 16, 18, and 20 are for score.
5. One point is allowed for each round impacting within the scoring space with a maximum of three points per space. The maximum possible score is 51 points.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range for M249 squad automatic weapon with basic machinegun target at 10 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M249	5.56mm light machinegun - squad automatic weapon	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A064	CTG, 5.56mm, 4&1 LINKED, F/SAW	108 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-14 Squad Automatic Weapon, M249
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 215

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, authorized cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the thermal sight from the storage case.
2. Inspect the thermal sight for damage.
3. Rinse the thermal sight lens by pouring clean drinking water over the surface of the lenses.
4. Lightly dab a cotton pad moistened with lens cleaning solution on the thermal sight lens surface, covering surface completely.
5. Rinse lens cleaning solution off the thermal sight lens by pouring clean drinking water over the lens surface.
6. Clean thermal sight electrical connections with a cotton swab moistened with alcohol.
7. Clean the exterior of the thermal sight with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
8. Clean the thermal sight eye piece by wiping with rags to clean off loose dirt and dust.
9. Remove the optical sight from the optical sight shroud bag.
10. Inspect the optical sight for damage.
11. Blow loose dust off the surface of the optical sight lenses by using a rubber syringe. Use lens paper moistened with alcohol to remove grease and remaining dirt.
12. Clean optical sight electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
13. Clean the exterior of the optical sight with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
14. Clean the optical sight eye piece by wiping with rags to clean off loose dirt and dust.
15. Inspect the traversing unit for damage.
16. Clean traversing unit electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
17. Clean the exterior of the traversing unit with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
18. Inspect the tripod for damage.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

19. Clean the exterior of the tripod with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
20. Remove the missile guidance set cover.
21. Inspect the missile guidance set for damage.
22. Clean the exterior of the missile guidance set with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
23. Clean the missile guidance set electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
24. Inspect the battery assembly for damage or corrosion.
25. Clean battery assembly with a scrub brush for dirt. Wet a wiping rag with water, and wipe the battery assembly with the rag. Dry the battery assembly with a clean, dry cloth.
26. Open the battery power conditioner lid, and inspect the battery power conditioner for damage.
27. Clean the battery power conditioner with a wet wiping rag moistened with water.
28. Clean the battery power conditioner electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
29. Inspect the launch tube for damage.
30. Clean the launch tube by wiping the launch tube with a wiping rag moistened with water. Remove grease or dirt with a wet wiping rag with alcohol.
31. Remove the bore sight collimator from the carrying case and inspect for damage.
32. Blow loose dust off the surface of the lenses by using a rubber syringe. Clean the bore sight collimator lenses with lens paper moistened with alcohol.
33. Clean the external components of the bore sight collimator with a wet wiping rag moistened with water.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 216

RFS:

Assemble an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system on the tripod

Condition: Given a disassembled M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, a direction of fire, and an assigned position, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12 and within 4 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Lift the 3 friction locks on the tripod up and all the way to the release position.
2. Press the detent stop lever down on one of the tripod legs.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Pull the tripod leg out until the leg support reaches the bottom band on the leg.
4. Repeat steps 2 through 3 for the other 2 legs of the tripod.
5. Position the tripod with the grooved coupling clamp handle and the downhill leg of the tripod facing the direction of fire.
6. Using the detent stop lever, adjust tripod legs until the bubble in each level vial is between the 2 leveling marks on the bubble.
7. Lower the friction locks on each leg all the way to the locked position.
8. Open the grooved coupling clamp by pulling the grooved coupling clamp handle out.
9. Hold the traversing unit directly over the center of the tripod, and have the Assistant Gunner pull the coil cable down through the body of the tripod.
10. Set the traversing unit on the tripod.
11. Close the grooved coupling clamp to fasten the traversing unit to the tripod.
12. Place the azimuth lock on the traversing unit to the lock position.
13. Rotate the traversing unit side to side until the traversing unit locks into place, ensuring the launch tube-locking latch is positioned over the downhill leg of the tripod.
14. Pickup the launch tube and lift up the launch tube latch.
15. Place the 2 launch tube guide pins into the launch tube brackets on the traversing unit.
16. Lower the launch tube onto the traversing unit. Then secure the launch tube latch, ensuring it is locked into place.
17. Remove the optical sight from the shroud bag, and unlock the optical sight-locking latch.
18. Hold the optical sight with the tracker hock mount facing the traversing unit optical sight mounting plate.
19. Seat the optical sight tracker hock mount onto the optical mounting plate on the traversing unit. Rotate the optical sight down onto the traversing unit.
20. Grab the optical sight-locking latch with a palms up. Grip and pull latch handle up into the locked position, ensuring the optical sight is secured onto the traversing unit before releasing.
21. Remove the thermal sight from the thermal sight case, ensuring the thermal sight lens cover is latched onto the thermal sight.
22. Ensure the thermal sight-locking latch is in the rear position. Mount the thermal sight onto the thermal sight mounting plate on optical sight by lining up the Vee Ways on the thermal sight and on the optical sight.
23. Push the thermal sight-locking latch to the forward position, securing the thermal sight to the optical sight.
24. Remove the dust cover from the post-amplifier on the thermal sight.
25. Connect the post-amplifier cable to the post-amplifier on the thermal sight by aligning the keys and rails in the post-amplifier connector.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

26. Rotate the outer ring on the post-amplifier cable connector clockwise until the post-amplifier cable is secured.
27. Unlock the missile guidance set cover. Then lift the cover off of the missile guidance set.
28. Remove the dust cover from the missile guidance set battery assembly.
29. Insert the missile guidance set battery assembly into the missile guidance set. Ensure the electrical connector on the battery assembly is aligned with the electrical connector on the missile guidance set.
30. Lock the battery in the missile guidance set by rotating at least of the wing-nuts clockwise until battery locks in place.
31. Place the missile guidance set under the tripod.
32. Ensure there are no bent or unserviceable pins on the coil cable connector.
33. Connect the coil cable from the traversing unit unto the J1 connector on the missile guidance set by aligning the keys and rails.
34. Rotate the outer ring on the coil cable connector clockwise until the coil cable is secured. Ensure the coil cable connector has rotated down passed the red line on the J1 connector.
35. Open the lid on the battery power conditioner.
36. Remove the battery power conditioner cable from the lid.
37. Unlock the dust covers on both ends of the battery power conditioner cable on the thermal sight and the battery power conditione
38. Connect the battery power conditioner cable to the connector on th battery power conditioner, by aligning the keys and rails and rotating the outer ring clockwise until the cable is secure.
39. Connect the battery power conditioner cable to the J1 connector thermal sight by aligning the keys and rails and rotating the outer rin clockwise until the cable is secure.
40. Remove the battery power conditioner battery cover from the batter power conditioner, by sliding the battery power conditioner locks to th unlocked position.
41. Insert the battery power conditioner batteries into the battery power condition well, ensuring the electrical connectors are aligned.
42. Replace the battery power conditioner battery cover by aligning th cover into its proper place.
43. Secure the battery power conditioner cover by sliding the battery power conditioner locks into the locked position.
44. Turn the battery power conditioner on by placing the ON/OFF switch into the ON position and repeat the step by turning the ON/OFF/STBY on the thermal sight to the ON position.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
 2. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 0352 - A - 217

RFS:

Disassemble the M220E4 TOW2 weapon system from the tripod

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, assembled M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12 and within 4 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Turn the battery power conditioner off by placing the ON/OFF switch on the battery power conditioner into the OFF position. Repeat the step by placing the ON/OFF/STBY switch on the thermal sight into the OFF position.
2. Remove the battery power conditioner cover by sliding the battery power conditioner locks to the unlocked position.
3. Remove the battery power conditioner batteries from the battery well.
4. Disconnect the battery power conditioner cable from the J1 connector on the thermal sight by rotating the outer ring counter-clockwise.
5. Disconnect the battery power conditioner cable by rotating the outer ring counter-clockwise.
6. Replace the dust covers on both ends of the battery power conditioner cable, the thermal sight, and the battery power conditioner.
7. Replace the battery power conditioner cable in the battery power conditioner lid. Ensure the cable is secured.
8. Replace the battery power conditioner battery cover by aligning the cover into its proper place.
9. Secure the battery power conditioner cover by sliding the locks into the locked position.
10. Secure the lid on the battery power conditioner, ensuring the latches are rotated clockwise.
11. Rotate the outer ring on the coil cable connector counter-clockwise, and remove the coil cable from the missile guidance set.
12. Rotate the wing-nuts on the battery assembly counter-clockwise, and remove the battery assembly from the battery well on the missile guidance set.
13. Replace the dust covers on the battery assembly.
14. Secure the cover to the missile guidance set, by seating it onto the guides on the set and rotating the cover down onto the missile guidance set. Lock it down.
15. Rotate the outer ring on the post-amplifier connector on the thermal sight counter-clockwise.
16. Remove the post-amplifier cable from the thermal sight, and replace it into the post-amplifier cable connector on the traversing unit.
17. Replace the dust cover onto the post-amplifier connector on the thermal sight.
18. Pull the thermal sight-locking latch to the rear position. Remove the thermal sight from the thermal sight mounting plate on the optical sight.
19. Place the thermal sight into the thermal sight case. Ensure the thermal sight is positioned properly into the case.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

20. Lock the thermal sight case down with the thermal sight-locking latches.
21. Grab the optical sight with the left hand on the front of the optical sight, and the right hand on the locking latch with a palms up grip.
22. Unlock the optical sight-locking latch by pulling down until the optical sight is unlocked from the traversing unit.
23. Remove the optical sight from the optical sight mounting plate on the traversing unit, by lifting the optical sight up and out away from the traversing unit.
24. Place the optical sight into the optical sight shroud bag, by ensuring the electrical connector on the optical sight is facing the padded portion of the shroud bag.
25. Place the optical sight-locking latch into the locked position, and then properly secure the shroud bag.
26. Unlock the launch tube locking latch on the traversing unit, and lift up the forward end of the launch tube.
27. Remove the launch tube from the traversing unit.
28. Unlock the grooved coupling clamp on the tripod.
29. Lift the traversing unit up and away from the tripod, and have the Assistant Gunner pull the coil cable through the body of the tripod.
30. Reseat the coil cable to the traversing unit, ensuring coil cable is coiled into its proper place.
31. Unlock the friction locks on all 3 legs on the tripod.
32. Lift up on the tripod, ensuring all 3 legs return to the stowed position.
33. Relock the friction locks on all 3 legs.
34. Lock the grooved coupling clamp on the tripod.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
 2. TM 9-1425-472-12 TOW 2 Weapon System Guided Missile System M220E4
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 218

RFS:

Construct a ground mounted M220E4 TOW2 weapon system fighting position

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, a direction of fire, a designated position, and entrenching tools, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with FM 23-34.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the launcher.
2. Clear the fields of fire, while ensuring the sector are under observation.
3. Dig the weapon position first, then add overhead protection for the crew.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Build a parapet to the front and flanks of the position.
5. Disconnect the MGS and place it in the position made for it. Place the launcher into the position. Reconnect the MGS and check the bore sight.
6. Improve the position by adding overhead cover for the crew and system.
7. Camouflage the position.
8. Inspect the position and its camouflage. If possible, move at least 35 meters to the front of the position and study it.
9. Make the position 24 inches deep.
10. Make the parapet at least 18 inches thick to keep out small-arms fire and artillery fragments. It should provide 9 inches of muzzle clearance under the launch tube.
11. Do not place dirt or equipment in the back-blast area.
12. Scoop out a place for the MGS either under or to the front of the tripod.
13. Dig a storage/protective area for the crew and missiles to one flank at a 90-degree angle to the primary direction of fire. Use the strongest material available for the roof. Put canvas or plastic down before throwing dirt on the roof to keep the ceiling from leaking. Place at least 20 inches of dirt on top of the storage/protective area.
14. Ensure the ground behind the TOW is free of leaves and dirt out to 25 meters, so the back-blast does not leave a signature.
15. Ensure all the standard principles of camouflage are followed. For example, cover all fresh dirt with leaves and brush, replace withered foliage, always approach position from rear, etc.

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies, and Battalions
 2. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 221

RFS:

Load a ground mounted M220E2 TOW2 weapon system

Condition: Given an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system and an encased missile, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By preparing the weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Lock the traversing unit down into the negative eight (-8) degree locked position.
2. Raise the bridge-clamp on the traversing unit by raising the bridge clamp-locking lever, ensuring the bridge-clamp remains at a 90-degree angle.
3. Remove and retain the electrical connector dust cover from the encased missile.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Remove and retain the forward handling ring and quick release clamp from the encased missile.
5. Turn the encased missile so the electrical connector is facing up.
6. Slide the index lugs on the encased missile into the index slots located on the launch tube.
7. Slide the encased missile forward and down into the launch tube until the index lugs are firmly in place.
8. Lower the aft end of the encased missile, ensuring it is placed so the electrical connector will join with the bridge-clamp.
9. Push down on bridge-clamp and pull bridge-clamp locking lever backwards and down to lock the encased missile in the launch tube.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M220E4 TOW2

DODIC

Quantity

PB93

GUIDED MISSILE TOW II

1 each

Ammunition is not expended.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 223

RFS:

Conduct an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system checkout procedure

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, assembled M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the weapon system to ensure it is completely assembled.
2. Place the field of view selector switch on the thermal sight in the Narrow Field Of View (NFOV).
3. Fully rotate the range focus knob on the thermal sight counter-clockwise.
4. Fully rotate the brightness knob on the thermal sight clockwise.
5. Fully rotate the contrast knob on the thermal sight counter-clockwise.
6. Set the diopter focus ring on the thermal sight to + or - 0.
7. Set the course azimuth knob on the thermal sight to either 1 or 2.
8. Set the diopter focus ring on the optical sight to +3.
9. Set the reticule light switch on the optical sight to the ON position.
10. Raise the bridge-clamp locking lever and open the bridge-clamp.
11. Inspect the electrical connector on the bridge-clamp for dirt and corrosion.
12. Lower the bridge-clamp and the locking lever.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. Raise the bridge-clamp locking lever. Listen for the scissor-like sound.
14. Lower the bridge-clamp locking lever. Listen for the scissor-like sound.
15. Raise the arming lever on the bridge-clamp. Ensure the electrical connector on the bridge-clamp extends down approximately 1 inch.
16. Lower the arming lever on the bridge-clamp.
17. Check the launch tube latch on the traversing unit; ensuring the tube is securely attached to the trunnion.
18. Inspect the breech between the trunnion and the inside of the launch tube to ensure it is clear of dirt, missile wires, and foreign matter.
19. Lift the trigger cover on the traversing unit.
20. Press the trigger. Listen for a click.
21. Release the trigger. Listening for a click. Ensure the trigger springs back properly.
22. Close the trigger cover.
23. Set the thermal sight ON/OFF/STBY switch to the ON position.
24. Ensure the closed cycle cooler is on and running.
25. Lift the TEST/OPERATE switch cover on the missile guidance set.
26. Press and hold the TEST/OPERATE switch to the TEST position.
27. Check the display window of the missile guidance set to ensure all the PASS/FAIL indicators light up for 3 seconds.
28. Check the display window of the missile guidance set to ensure the BATT PASS indicator illuminates and the BATT FAIL indicator does not.
29. Check the display window of the missile guidance set to ensure the MSG PASS indicator illuminates and the MSG FAIL indicator does not.
30. Check the display window of the missile guidance set to ensure the PA PASS indicator illuminates and the PA FAIL indicator does not.
31. Check the display window of the missile guidance set to ensure the OSS PASS indicator illuminates and the OSS FAIL indicator does not.
32. Check to ensure 2 solid red dots appear in the azimuth/elevation cross on the missile guidance set.
33. Open the bore sight adjustment knob covers on the optical sight.
34. Rotate the azimuth and elevation bore sight adjustment knobs until the green center dot in the azimuth/elevation cross is illuminated and glowing steadily.
35. Close the bore sight adjustment knob.
36. Unlock the azimuth lock, the elevation lock, and brake on the traversing unit.
37. Traverse and elevate the traversing unit, using the control knobs. Ensure the dots in the azimuth/elevation cross on the missile guidance set follow the movement of the traversing unit.
38. Ensure the dots in the azimuth/elevation cross return to the center of the azimuth/elevation cross in the missile guidance set.
39. Lock the traversing unit by using the azimuth lock and elevation lock and brake.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

40. Remove the bore sight collimator from the bore sight collimator carrying case.
41. Inspect the mating surfaces of the thermal sight and bore sight collimator to ensure proper mating.
42. Attach the bore sight collimator to the thermal sight by aligning the mating surfaces. Push in and turn securing latches to lock into position.
43. Attach bore sight collimator power cable to the bore sight collimator connector 3J1.
44. Connect the other end of the bore sight power cable to the thermal sight connector J4.
45. Look into the optical sight eye piece.
46. Check to ensure the optical sight cross hairs and bore sight collimator reticule pattern appear.
47. Adjust the bore sight collimator elevation and azimuth adjustment knobs to align bore sight collimator reticule pattern with the optical sight cross hairs.
48. Ensure the bore sight collimator reticule pattern is center on the optical sight cross hairs.
49. Look into the thermal sight eye piece.
50. Adjust brightness, contrast, and range focus for best focus of the bore sight collimator reticule.
51. Ensure the bore sight collimator reticule pattern is clear.
52. Unlock the azimuth and elevation locking levers on the thermal sight.
53. Adjust the azimuth and elevation bore sight knobs on the thermal sight until the reticules are aligned.
54. Ensure the thermal sight reticule cross hairs are centered on the bore sight collimator reticule pattern.
55. Lock the azimuth and elevation locking levers on the thermal sight
56. Ensure the bore sight reticule is aligned.
57. Set the field of view selector switch to WFOV on the thermal sight
58. Ensure the center dot of the bore sight collimator reticule pattern is less than 1 diameter from the center of the thermal sight reticule cross hairs.
59. Look into the optical sight eye piece and re-check the alignment of the bore sight collimator reticule.
60. Remove the bore sight collimator power cable from the thermal sight J4 connection.
61. Remove the bore sight collimator power cable from the 3J1 connection.
62. Place the dust covers on the bore sight collimator power cable back into a LOCK position.
63. Place the bore sight collimator power cable into the bore sight collimator carrying case.
64. Replace the bore sight collimator to the carrying case.
65. Close the lid on the bore sight collimator carrying case, and secure it.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

66. Look into the thermal sight eye piece to ensure the battery light is off.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 229

RFS:

Inspect an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system encased missile

Condition: Given an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system encased missile, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the wooden missile crate for severe damage. Ensure the forward end is pointed down range.
2. Inspect the humidity indicator by looking through the window on the wooden missile crate to ensure the humidity indicator card on the missile is blue.
3. Remove the encased missile from the wooden missile crate.
4. Ensure the serial number from the encased missile matches the serial number on the wooden missile crate.
5. Inspect the humidity indicator card on the encased missile again to ensure the first reading was accurate.
6. Inspect the rear diaphragm on the encased missile for rips and tear
7. Inspect the rear half of the encased missile for cracks, dents, or bulges.
8. Remove the electrical connector dust cover on the encased missile.
9. Inspect the electrical connector on the encased missile for ease of movement, bent pins, and debris.
10. Inspect the rubber detent boot on the encased missile for dry rot and ease of movement.
11. Inspect the guide rails on the encased missile for damage.
12. Inspect the forward half of the encased missile for cracks, dents, or bulges.
13. Inspect the index lugs on the encased missile for stability, ensuring they are not bent and are aligned with the guide rails.
14. Remove the quick release clamp and forward handling ring from the encased missile.
15. Inspect the forward diaphragm on the encased missile for rips and tears.
16. Ensuring there are 4 small pinholes on the forward diaphragm.
17. Replace the forward handling ring and quick release clamp on the encased missile.
18. Replace the protective cover on the encased missile.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M220E4 TOW2

DODIC

Quantity

PB97 GUIDED MISSILE TOW

1 each

Ammunition is not expended.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 257

RFS:

Engage targets with grenades for distance and accuracy

Condition: Given practice grenades and targets at 20, 30, and 40 meters; while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving impact on 2 of 3 targets at each station within the effective casualty radius of the grenade.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage a fighting position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
2. Engage a trench target at 40 meters with 3 grenades, from the standing position.
3. Engage a mortar position at 30 meters with 3 grenades, from the kneeling position.
4. Engage a troop in the open at 20 meters with 3 grenades, from the alternate prone position.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Grenade pit with stationary targets at 20 to 40 meters

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: Munitions/Demolitions

DODIC

Quantity

G878 FUZE, DELAY, F/G811 PRAC GREN

12 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-30 Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 332

RFS:

Identify armored vehicles

Condition: Given armored vehicles.

Standard: By achieving identification of 80% of the vehicles by NATO designator.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine tank or non-tank. Note: If tank, follow steps 2, 3, 4, 6, and 8. If non-tank, follow steps 5, 6, 7, and 8.
2. Determine absence or presence of a copula.
3. Determine the type turret.
4. Determine absence or presence, type, and location of bore evacuator.
5. Determine location of turret.
6. Determine type of suspension.
7. Determine country of origin indicators.
8. Determine specific key identifying features.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Additional vehicles may be added to the above list by reviewing intelligence reports for current or expected areas of operation.

REFERENCES

1. Jane's Armor and Artillery 2000 (CD ROM)
 2. FM 2-11 Anti-Mechanized Operations
 3. CVIG Combat Vehicle Identification Guide (CD ROM)
 4. FM 100-2-3 The Soviet Army
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 471

RFS:

Operate a High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV)

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete HMMWV, NAVMC 10627, and TM 9-2320-280-10.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-2320-280-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the dispatcher has filled out the appropriate blocks on the NAVMC 10627.
2. Sign the "1st Operator" signature block on the NAVMC 10627.
3. Perform before operations checks listed at the bottom of the NAVMC 10627.
4. Ensure the hand brake is applied and the transmission is in the NEUTRAL position.
5. Place the rotary switch into the RUN position ensuring the WAIT TO START lamp comes on.
6. Wait 9 seconds to ensure the WAIT TO START lamp goes out.
7. Start the engine by placing the rotary switch into the START position, and release once the engine starts.
8. Fill out the appropriate information in the Trip Log on the NAVMC 10627.
9. Select transmission and transfer case gear.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

10. Release the hand brake, and place the vehicle in motion for forward or reverse movement.
11. Safely drive the vehicle, complying with traffic regulations.
12. Perform during operations checks listed at the bottom of the NAVMC 10627.
13. Upon completion of driving the vehicle, engage the hand brake. Place the transmission lever into the NEUTRAL position.
14. Turn the rotary switch to the STOP position.
15. Fill out the appropriate information in the Trip Log on the NAVMC 10627.
16. Perform after operations checks listed at the bottom of the NAVMC 10627 after operational checks.
17. Close out the NAVMC 10627, and return it to the dispatcher.

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-305 Manual for the Wheeled Vehicle Driver
 2. TM 2320-10/6, with changes 1 and 2, Operators Manual for Truck, Utility, 1-1/4 Ton
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 472

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for a M-1045/46 High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV)

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M1045/46 HMMWV.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-2320-280-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Visually inspect for obvious damage to body or frame that would impair operation.
2. Look under the vehicle for evidence of fluid leakage.
3. Visually check tires for under-inflation, leaks, cuts, gouges, cracks, or bulges.
4. Check the tire rims for damage and missing or loose wheel stud nuts and lug nuts.
5. Check the condition and operation of windshield, windows, windshield wiper arms and blades, mirrors, all locking and fastening devices, towing pintle, and weather seals.
6. Observe for unusual dip or sway in the suspension.
7. Check the shock absorbers for leaks, damage, and security of mounting.
8. Check for proper oil level.
9. Ensure drive belts are present and tight,. Check for cracking, fraying and breaks.
10. Inspect cooling fan blade assembly for security, cracks, and damage.
11. Check coolant level in surge tank for proper level.
12. Check power steering fluid for proper level.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. Check weather cap, air cleaner assembly, and air intake hose for security of mounting and damage.
14. Check brake fluid for proper level.
15. Start engine, apply service brakes, and move transmission shift lever through all operating ranges. Then check for proper transmission fluid level with the shift lever in NEUTRAL. Shut off the engine when done.
16. Check winch controls for proper operation, and check the winch cable for kinks, frays, and breaks.
17. Check the batteries for damaged casing, terminal posts, and security of mounting.
18. Check battery electrolyte level.
19. Check battery box for corrosion and cleanliness of battery box drain holes.
20. Check seat belts for proper operation of buckles, clasps, and for security of mounting.
21. Check condition and stowage of fire extinguisher.
22. Check the service lights, blackout lights, turn signals, and horn for proper operation.
23. With parking brake applied and transmission in NEUTRAL, start engine.
24. Check for proper reading of the engine oil pressure, coolant temperature, voltmeter, fuel, and air restriction gauges.
25. Ensure the service brakes are applied. Release the hand brake, and ensure the BRAKE WARNING lamp goes out.
26. Shift the transmission through all ranges, while checking for stiffness or binding.
27. Apply service brake pedal. Shift transmission to NEUTRAL, and shift transfer case shift lever through all ranges, while checking for stiffness or binding.
28. During operation, check for unusual noises or vibrations from the transmission, exhaust, transfer case, differentials, propeller shafts, axle shafts, and geared hub or wheels.
29. With the vehicle moving, apply brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Check for any pulling, grabbing, or abnormal operation.
30. With the vehicle stopped and the motor at idle, apply the parking brake. Put the transmission shift lever in DRIVE and ensure the vehicle remains stationary.
31. Drain fuel from the fuel drain cock, and check for contamination.
32. Inspect cargo shell door for bends, warping, binding, and ease of opening and closing.
33. Check weapons station for binding by rotating 360 degrees in both directions, at least 5 times.
34. Inspect weapon station hatch and hinge for bends, cracks, warping, or damage.
35. Inspect weapons station brake handle for ease of operation.
36. Inspect Gunner's sling assembly for tears or frays.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

37. Inspect TOW missile stowage rack latch assembly and support braces for presence and ease of operation. Inspect straps for tears and frays
38. Inspect Gunner's platform for binding, ease of operation, and missing platform locking pins.
39. Check the TOW power cable and wall mount for serviceability.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-2320-280-10 Technical Manuals for Highly Mobile Multi-Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV)
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 760 RFS:

Assemble an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system on the tripod

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M220E4 TOW2 weapon system and a direction of fire, as an anti-tank team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12, and within 4 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Gunner lifts the 3 friction locks on the tripod up and all the way to the release position.
2. The Gunner presses the detent stop lever down on one of the tripod legs.
3. The Gunner pulls the tripod leg out until the leg support reaches the bottom band on the leg.
4. The Gunner repeats steps 2 through 3 for the other 2 legs of the tripod.
5. The Gunner positions the tripod with the grooved coupling clamp handle and the downhill leg of the tripod facing the direction of fire.
6. Using the detent stop lever, the Gunner adjusts tripod legs until the bubble in each level vial is between the 2 leveling marks on the bubble.
7. The Gunner lowers the friction locks on each leg all the way to the locked position.
8. The Gunner opens the grooved coupling clamp by pulling the grooved coupling clamp handle out.
9. The Gunner holds the traversing unit directly over the center of the tripod, and the Assistant Gunner pulls the coil cable down through the body of the tripod.
10. The Gunner sets the traversing unit on the tripod.
11. The Gunner closes the grooved coupling clamp to fasten the traversing unit to the tripod.
12. The Gunner places the azimuth lock on the traversing unit to the lock position.
13. The Gunner rotates the traversing unit side to side until the traversing unit locks into place, ensuring the launch tube-locking latch is positioned over the downhill leg of the tripod.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. The Gunner picks up the launch tube and lifts up the launch tube latch.
15. The Gunner places the 2 launch tube guide pins into the launch tube brackets on the traversing unit.
16. The Gunner lowers the launch tube onto the traversing unit and secures the launch tube latch, ensuring it is locked into place.
17. The Assistant Gunner removes the optical sight from the shroud bag and unlocks the optical sight-locking latch.
18. The Gunner holds the optical sight with the tracker hock mount facing the traversing unit optical sight mounting plate.
19. The Gunner seats the optical sight tracker hock mount onto the optical mounting plate on the traversing unit, and rotates the optical sight down onto the traversing unit.
20. The Gunner grabs the optical sight-locking latch with a palms up grip, and pulls the latch handle up into the locked position. He ensures the optical sight is secured onto the traversing unit before releasing.
21. The Assistant Gunner removes the thermal sight from the thermal sight case, ensuring the thermal sight lens cover is latched onto the thermal sight.
22. Ensure the thermal sight-locking latch is in the rear position, the Gunner mounts the thermal sight onto the thermal sight mounting plate of optical sight by lining up the vee ways on the thermal sight and on the optical sight.
23. The Gunner pushes the thermal sight-locking latch to the forward position, securing the thermal sight to the optical sight.
24. The Gunner removes the dust cover from the post-amplifier on the thermal sight.
25. The Gunner connects the post-amplifier cable to the post-amplifier on the thermal sight by aligning the keys and rails in the post-amplifier connector.
26. The Gunner rotates the outer ring on the post-amplifier cable connector clockwise, until the post-amplifier cable is secured.
27. The Assistant Gunner unlocks the missile guidance set cover and lifts the cover off of the missile guidance set.
28. The Assistant Gunner removes the dust cover from the missile guidance set battery assembly.
29. The Assistant Gunner inserts the missile guidance set battery assembly into the missile guidance set, ensuring the electrical connector on the battery assembly is aligned with the electrical connector on the missile guidance set.
30. The Gunner locks the battery in the missile guidance set by rotating at least 2 of the wing-nuts clockwise until they lock the battery into place.
31. The Gunner places the missile guidance set under the tripod.
32. The Gunner ensures there are no bent or unserviceable pins on the coil cable connector.
33. The Gunner connects the coil cable from the traversing unit unto the J1 connector on the missile guidance set by aligning the keys and rails.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

34. The Gunner rotates the outer ring on the coil cable connector clockwise, until the coil cable is secured, ensuring the coil cable connector has rotated down past the red line on the J1 connector.
35. The Assistant Gunner opens the lid on the battery power conditioner.
36. The Assistant Gunner removes the battery power conditioner cable from the lid.
37. The Assistant Gunner unlocks the dust covers on both ends of the battery power conditioner cable and the dust covers on the thermal sight and the battery power conditioner.
38. The Gunner connects the battery power conditioner cable to the connector on the battery power conditioner by aligning the keys and rails and rotating the outer ring clockwise, until the cable is secure.
39. The Gunner connects the battery power conditioner cable to the J1 connector thermal sight by aligning the keys and rails and rotating the outer ring clockwise until the cable is secure.
40. The Assistant Gunner removes the battery power conditioner battery cover from the battery power conditioner, by sliding the battery power conditioner locks to the unlocked position.
41. The Assistant Gunner inserts the battery power conditioner batteries into the battery power condition well, ensuring the electrical connectors are aligned.
42. The Assistant Gunner replaces the battery power conditioner battery cover by aligning the cover into its proper place.
43. The Assistant Gunner secures the battery power conditioner cover by sliding the battery power conditioner locks into the locked position.
44. The Gunner turns the battery power conditioner on by placing the ON/OFF switch into the ON position. He then repeats the step by turning the ON/OFF/STBY on the thermal sight to the ON position.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-472-12 TOW 2 Weapon System Guided Missile System M220E4
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 761

RFS:

Disassemble the M220E4 TOW2 weapon system from the tripod

Condition: Given an assembled, SL-3 complete M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, as an antitank squad or team, while wearing fighting loads.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12, and within 4 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. The Gunner turns the battery power conditioner off by placing the ON/OFF switch on the battery power conditioner into the OFF position. The Gunner repeats the step by placing the ON/OFF/STBY switch on the thermal sight into the OFF position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

2. The Assistant Gunner removes the battery power conditioner battery cover from the battery power conditioner by sliding the battery power conditioner locks to the unlocked position.
3. The Assistant Gunner removes the battery power conditioner batterie from the battery power conditioner battery well.
4. The Gunner disconnects the battery power conditioner cable from the J1 connector on the thermal sight by rotating the outer ring counter-clockwise.
5. The Gunner disconnects the battery power conditioner cable from the battery power conditioner by rotating the outer ring counter-clockwise.
6. The Gunner replaces the dust covers on both ends of the battery power conditioner cable, the thermal sight, and the battery power conditioner.
7. The Assistant Gunner replaces the battery power conditioner cable into the battery power conditioner lid, ensuring the cable is secured.
8. The Assistant Gunner replaces the battery power conditioner battery cover, by aligning the cover into its proper place.
9. The Assistant Gunner secures the battery power conditioner cover, b sliding the battery power conditioner locks into the locked position.
10. The Assistant Gunner secures the lid on the battery power conditioner, ensuring the latches are rotated clockwise.
11. The Gunner rotates the outer ring on the coil cable connector counter-clockwise, and removes the coil cable from the missile guidance set.
12. The Gunner rotates the wing-nuts on the battery assembly counter-clockwise, and removes the battery assembly from the battery well on th missile guidance set.
13. The Assistant Gunner replaces the dust covers on the battery assembly.
14. The Assistant Gunner secures the missile guidance set cover to the missile guidance set, by seating the missile guidance set cover unto th guides on the missile guidance set and rotating the missile guidance se cover down unto the missile guidance set. The lock it down.
15. The Gunner rotates the outer ring on the post-amplifier connector on the thermal sight counter-clockwise.
16. The Gunner removes the post-amplifier cable from the thermal sight and places it into the post-amplifier cable connector on the traversing unit.
17. The Gunner replaces the dust cover onto the post-amplifier connector on the thermal sight.
18. The Gunner pulls the thermal sight-locking latch to the rear position, and removes the thermal sight from the thermal sight mounting plate on the optical sight.
19. The Assistant Gunner places the thermal sight into the thermal sight case, ensuring the thermal sight is positioned properly into the case.
20. The Assistant Gunner locks the thermal sight case down with the thermal sight-locking latches.
21. The Gunner grabs the optical sight with the left hand on the front of the optical sight and the right hand on the locking latch with a palms up grip.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

22. The Gunner unlocks the optical sight-locking latch, by pulling down until the optical sight is unlocked from the traversing unit.
23. The Gunner removes the optical sight from the optical sight mounting plate on the traversing unit, by lifting the optical sight up and out away from the traversing unit.
24. The Assistant Gunner places the optical sight into the optical sight shroud bag, by ensuring the electrical connector on the optical sight is facing the padded portion of the shroud bag.
25. The Assistant Gunner places the optical sight-locking latch into the locked position, and then properly secures the shroud bag.
26. The Gunner unlocks the launch tube locking latch on the traversing unit and lifts up the forward end of the launch tube.
27. The Gunner removes the launch tube from the traversing unit.
28. The Gunner unlocks the grooved coupling clamp on the tripod.
29. The Gunner lifts the traversing unit up and away from the tripod, and the Assistant Gunner pulls the coil cable through the body of the tripod.
30. The Assistant Gunner reseats the coil cable to the traversing unit ensuring the coil cable is coiled into its proper place.
31. The Gunner unlocks the friction locks on all three legs on the tripod.
32. The Gunner lifts up on the tripod, ensuring all three legs return to the stowed position.
33. The Gunner relocks the friction locks on all 3 legs.
34. The Gunner locks the grooved coupling clamp on the tripod.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 762

RFS:

Mount an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system to an M1045/46 HMMWV

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, stowed M220E4 TOW2 weapon system; a M-1045/46 HMMWV; and a direction of fire, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12, and within 4 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Gunner unlocks all 3 hatch cover latches on the weapons station of the vehicle and opens the weapons station hatch cover by pushing upward and outward.
2. Gunner secures the hatch cover by folding the hatch cover in half and turning the securing handles inboard, ensuring the missile guidance set mounting tray is towards the direction of fire.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Driver/Assistant Gunner unlatches the missile guidance set retaining straps that secure the missile guidance to the Gunner's platform.
4. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves inside the vehicle to the back and opens the cargo shell door by pulling the cargo shell door forward latch and allowing the cargo shell door to rise to the open position.
5. Driver/Assistant Gunner stands up through the cargo shell door opening.
6. Gunner grabs the missile guidance set handle, lifts the missile guidance set up through the weapon station hatch, and places the missile guidance set on the missile guidance set mounting tray, ensuring the missile guidance set handle is towards the Gunner.
7. Gunner secures the missile guidance set down to missile guidance set mounting tray by attaching at least 2 of the missile guidance set retaining latches provided on the missile guidance set mounting tray.
8. Gunner unlocks the missile guidance set cover, then lifts the cover from the missile guidance set, placing the cover onto the left rear seat.
9. Gunner unlocks the weapons station pedestal mount cover on the weapon station. He then opens the weapons station pedestal mount cover locking it into the open position.
10. Gunner unlocks the bottom grooved coupling clamp handle and bell safety on the grooved coupling clamp extension.
11. Ensuring the azimuth lock on the traversing unit is towards the Gunner, the Gunner grabs the control knobs on the traversing unit and lifts the traversing unit up through the weapons station.
12. Driver/Assistant Gunner pulls the coil cable from the traversing unit coil cable connector, and feeds the coil cable down through the weapons station pedestal mount.
13. Gunner rotates the traversing unit until the launch tube locking latch is positioned facing the direction of fire, and places the traversing unit onto the weapons station pedestal mount.
14. Gunner secures the traversing unit to the weapons station pedestal mount by securing the bottom grooved coupling handle on the grooved coupling clamp extension and bell safety.
15. Driver/Assistant Gunner removes the launch tube from the launch tube mount on the cargo shell door by unlatching the launch tube retaining strap, and hands the launch tube to the Gunner.
16. Gunner takes the launch tube from the Assistant Gunner and places the launch tube guide pins into the launch tube brackets on the traversing unit.
17. Gunner lifts up the launch tube latch on the traversing unit and lowers the launch tube onto the traversing unit, securing the launch tube latch, ensuring the launch tube is locked in place.
18. Driver/Assistant Gunner unlatches the optical sight retaining straps from the optical sight storage bracket, and places the optical sight on the roof of the vehicle.
19. Driver/Assistant Gunner holds the optical sight shroud bag while the Gunner unlocks the optical sight-locking latch and removes the optical sight from the optical sight shroud bag.
20. Gunner sets the optical sight hook mount onto the optical sight mounting plate on the traversing unit, and rotates the optical sight down onto the optical sight mounting plate.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

21. Ensuring the Gunner holds onto the optical sight with one hand, the Gunner grabs the optical sight-locking latch with a palms up grip, and pushes the optical sight-locking latch up into the locked position.
22. Ensure the optical sight is secured to the traversing unit prior to releasing the optical sight.
23. Driver/Assistant Gunner places the optical sight shroud bag onto the optical sight storage bracket.
24. Driver/Assistant Gunner unlatches the thermal sight retaining straps from the thermal sight case mounting bracket, and places the thermal sight case on the roof of the vehicle.
25. Driver/Assistant Gunner unlocks the thermal sight case and opens the thermal sight case lid, ensuring the thermal sight case lid opens towards the Driver/Assistant Gunner.
26. Gunner removes the thermal sight from the thermal sight case.
27. Gunner ensures the thermal sight-locking latch is in the rear position, and mounts the thermal sight onto the thermal sight mounting plate on the optical sight by lining up the "Vee Ways" on the thermal sight with the "Vee Ways" on the optical sight.
28. Gunner pushes the thermal sight-locking latch into the forward position, ensuring there is metal-to-metal contact.
29. Driver/Assistant Gunner re-secures the thermal sight case into the thermal sight case mounting bracket in the vehicle.
30. Gunner removes dust cover from the post-amplifier on the thermal sight.
31. Gunner connects the post-amplifier cable from the traversing unit to the post-amplifier on the thermal sight by aligning the "keys and rails" in the post-amplifier connectors on the thermal sight and the post-amplifier cable.
32. Gunner rotates the outer ring on the post-amplifier connector clockwise, until the post-amplifier cable is secured to the post-amplifier.
33. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves through the cargo shell door opening and pulls the cargo shell door down until it is secured in place.
34. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves inside the vehicle to the right rear seat, and opens the cable box.
35. Driver/Assistant Gunner removes the TVPC power cable from the cable box, and removes the dust cover from the power conditioner cable.
36. Driver/Assistant Gunner connects the TVPC power cable P2 connector to the power conditioner cable, by aligning the keys and rails on the TVPC power cable and the power conditioner cable.
37. Driver/Assistant Gunner rotates the outer ring on the TVPC power cable connector clockwise, until the TVPC power cable is secured to the power conditioner cable.
38. Driver/Assistant Gunner unwraps the power conditioner cable from the cable bracket on the vehicle, and passes the power conditioner cable to the Gunner.
39. Gunner connects the TVPC power cable to the TVPC power cable connector on the TOW vehicle power conditioner, by aligning the keys and rails on the TVPC power cable and the TOW vehicle power and conditioner

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

40. Gunner rotates the outer ring on the TVPC power cable connector clockwise, until the TVPC power cable is secured to the TOW vehicle power conditioner.
41. Driver/Assistant Gunner removes the thermal sight power cable 2W2 from the cable box, and removes the dust covers from both ends of the thermal sight power cable 2W2.
42. Driver/Assistant Gunner passes the "thin" end of the thermal sight power cable 2W2 to the Gunner.
43. Driver/Assistant Gunner removes the dust cover from the thermal sight power cable 2W2 connector on the vehicle power conditioner.
44. Driver/Assistant Gunner attaches the "thick end" of the thermal sight power cable 2W2 to the thermal sight power cable 2W2 connector on the thermal sight vehicle power conditioner, by aligning the keys and rails on the thermal sight power cable 2W2 connector and the thermal sight vehicle power conditioner connection.
45. Driver/Assistant Gunner rotates the outer ring on the thermal sight power cable 2W2 connector clockwise, until it is secured.
46. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves to the driver's seat and ensures the Vehicle Power Conditioner ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.
47. Gunner removes the dust covers from the thermal sight power cable 2W2 and the J1 connector on the thermal sight.
48. Gunner rotates the outer ring on the thermal sight power cable 2W2 connector clockwise, until it is secured.
49. Gunner inspects the coil cable connector to ensure there are no bent or unserviceable pins on the connector.
50. Gunner connects the coil cable from the traversing unit onto the J connector, by aligning the keys and rails on the coil cable connector and the J1 connector on the missile guidance set.
51. Gunner rotates the outer ring on the coil cable connector clockwise, until the coil cable is secured, ensuring the coil cable connector has rotated down past the red line on the missile guidance set J1 connector.
52. Gunner ensures the Driver/Assistant Gunner is seated in the driver's seat, and sets the ON/OFF/STBY switch on the thermal sight to the ON position.
53. Gunner sounds off "Gun up" to alert the crew the system is mounted

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 763

RFS:

Dismount an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system from an M1045/46 HMMWV

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, mounted M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, a M-1045/46 HMMWV, as an anti-tank team, while wearing fighting loads.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12, and within 4 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Gunner sets the ON/OFF/STBY switch on the thermal sight to the OFF position.
2. Gunner removes the coil cable from the missile guidance set by rotating the outer ring on the coil cable connector counter-clockwise until the coil cable is unsecured.
3. Gunner rotates the outer ring on the TVPC power cable connector counter-clockwise, until the TVPC power cable is unsecured from the TOW vehicle power conditioner.
4. Gunner rotates the outer ring on the post-amplifier connector counter-clockwise, until the post-amplifier cable is unsecured from the post-amplifier on the thermal sight.
5. Driver/Assistant Gunner removes the thermal sight power cable 2W2 from the thermal sight vehicle power conditioner, by rotating the outer ring of the thermal sight power cable 2W2 counter-clockwise.
6. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves inside the vehicle to the back, and opens the cargo shell door by pulling the cargo shell door forward latch and allowing the cargo shell door to rise to the open position.
7. Driver/Assistant Gunner places the thermal sight case on the roof of the vehicle.
8. Driver/Assistant Gunner unlocks the thermal sight case and opens the thermal sight case lid, ensuring the thermal sight case lid opens towards the driver/Assistant Gunner.
9. Gunner places the dust cover back onto the post-amplifier connector on the thermal sight, and unlocks the thermal sight by pulling the thermal sight-locking latch into the rear position.
10. Gunner removes the thermal sight from the thermal sight mounting plate on the optical sight, and places it into the thermal sight case, ensuring that the thermal sight is positioned properly inside the thermal sight case.
11. Driver/Assistant Gunner locks the thermal sight case by using the thermal sight case locking latches, and straps the thermal sight case down into the thermal sight case mounting bracket on the roof of the vehicle.
12. Driver/Assistant Gunner places the optical sight shroud bag on the roof of the vehicle.
13. The Gunner holds onto the optical sight with the left hand, and grabs the optical sight-locking latch with a palms up grip with the right hand.
14. Gunner pulls the optical sight-locking latch down until the optical sight is unlocked from the traversing unit.
15. Gunner removes the optical sight from the optical sight mounting plate on the traversing unit by lifting the optical sight upward and out away from the traversing unit.
16. Gunner places optical sight into the optical sight shroud bag, ensuring the electrical connector portion of the optical sight is facing the padded portion of the optical sight shroud bag.
17. Gunner places the optical sight-locking latch into the locked position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

18. Driver/Assistant Gunner secures the straps on the optical sight shroud bag, and secures the optical sight shroud bag to the optical sight storage bracket inside the vehicle.
19. Gunner unlocks the launch tube latch on the traversing unit and removes the launch tube off of the traversing unit by raising the nose end straight up, and lifting the launch tube guide pins out of the launch tube brackets.
20. Gunner hands the launch tube to the Driver/Assistant Gunner.
21. Driver/Assistant Gunner places the launch tube into the launch tube mount on the cargo shell door and secures the launch tube with the launch tube strap.
22. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves down through the cargo shell door opening and pulls the cargo shell door down, until it is secured in place.
23. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves inside the vehicle to the right rear seat, and opens the cable box.
24. Gunner unlocks the bottom grooved coupling clamp handle and bell safety on the grooved coupling clamp extension.
25. Gunner lifts the traversing unit off of the weapons station pedestal mount, and the Driver/Assistant Gunner pulls the coil cable up through the weapons station pedestal mount.
26. Driver/Assistant Gunner places the coil cable connector into the coil cable receptacle on the traversing unit.
27. Gunner secures the traversing unit to the pedestal mount inside the vehicle by securing the bottom grooved coupling handle and bell safety on the grooved coupling clamp extension.
28. Gunner grabs the missile guidance set cover and secures the cover to the missile guidance set by seating the missile guidance set cover onto the guides on the missile guidance set and rotating the cover down securing the latches.
29. Gunner grabs the handle on the missile guidance set and places the missile guidance set on the Gunner's platform inside the vehicle with the handle facing to the rear of the vehicle.
30. Driver/Assistant Gunner disconnects the TVPC power cable P2 connector from the power conditioner cable by rotating the outer ring of the TVPC power cable connector counter-clockwise, until the TVPC power cable can be removed from the power conditioner cable.
31. Driver/Assistant Gunner places the TVPC power cable into the cable box.
32. Driver/Assistant Gunner replaces the dust cover on the power conditioner cable and wraps the power conditioner around the cable bracket on the vehicle.
33. Driver/Assistant Gunner replaces both dust caps on the thermal sight power cable 2W2, and places the thermal sight power cable 2W2 into the cable box.
34. Driver/Assistant Gunner closes the lid on the cable box and moves back to the drivers seat.
35. Gunner closes weapon station pedestal mount and secures with the spring latch.
36. Gunner closes weapons station hatch cover by pulling the weapons station hatch cover handle up and over the weapons station hatch.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

37. Gunner secures the weapon station hatch cover with the 3 hatch cover locking latches.

38. Gunner secures the missile guidance set to the Gunner's platform by securing the 2 retaining straps over the top of the missile guidance set.

39. Gunner moves to the Gunners seat and ensure all gear is secured properly.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System

EVENT: 0352 - A - 764

RFS:

Load a vehicle mounted M220E4 TOW2 weapon system

Condition: Given an M220E4 TOW2 mounted upon a 988 HMMWV and an encased missile, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Gunner places the elevation and azimuth locks on the traversing unit into the LOCK position.

2. Gunner rotates the traversing unit until it locks into place. Then rotates the control knobs on the traversing unit until the trunnion locks into place.

3. Gunner pushes the bridge clamp locking lever forward, and then lift the bridge clamp to the OPEN position.

4. Driver/Assistant Gunner opens the forward end of the cargo hatch. Then pushes the cargo shell door up and back to a 90-degree angle.

5. Driver/Assistant Gunner releases missile #1 from the missile #1 slot on the missile rack, by opening the securing straps.

6. Driver/Assistant Gunner pulls up on the quick release clamp at the forward handling ring and removes it from the encased missile.

7. Driver/Assistant Gunner turns the inside portion of the protective cover on the electrical connector on the encased missile 2 complete turns counter-clockwise.

8. Driver/Assistant Gunner turns the protective cover counter-clockwise and removes it from the electrical connector.

9. Driver/Assistant Gunner rotates the encased missile until the electrical connector is facing in the up position, and hand the missile to the Gunner.

10. Gunner raises the aft end of the encased missile and slides the encased missile forward. Ensures the indexing lugs on the forward end of the encased missile are aligned into the indexing slots on the launch tube.

11. Gunner firmly lowers the aft end of the encased missile, ensuring the electrical connector will properly join with the bridge clamp.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Gunner lowers the bridge clamp over the encased missile. Presses down on top of the bridge clamp. Pulls down the bridge clamp locking lever to lock the bridge clamp over the missile. Then sounds off "Loaded."
13. Driver/Assistant Gunner closes the cargo shell door on the back of the vehicle.
14. Driver/Assistant Gunner moves to the front of the vehicle and occupies the driver side seat.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
 2. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 765 RFS:

Engage a target with an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system

Condition: Given a vehicle or ground mounted M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, an encased missile, an armored vehicle target, and a fire command, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By achieving a hit on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Gunner ensures the ON/OFF/STBY switch to the ON position.
2. Gunner unlocks the elevation and azimuth locks on the traversing unit.
3. Gunner holds the control knobs and acquires target using the optical site. Sounds off "Target acquired."
4. Gunner adjusts the focus control on the optical sight until the cross hairs in the optical sight are in focus. Note: When in condition of low visibility the Gunner will turn the reticule light switch to the ON position.
5. Gunner looks through the thermal sight and adjust the diopter adjustment ring to focus the reticule in the thermal sight.
6. Gunner ensures the BATTERY MONITOR light and the NOT READY light in the thermal sight are not lit.
7. Gunner sets the field of view selector on the thermal sight to WFOV and then adjusts the range focus, contrast, and brightness knobs, as necessary.
8. Gunner switches the field of view on the thermal sight to the NFOV, and then adjusts the range focus, contrast, and brightness knobs, as necessary.
9. Gunner determines the sight to be used to engage the target by the best image presented to acquire the target. Note: Whenever possible the desired sight to be used is the thermal sight.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

10. Driver/Assistant Gunner visually inspects the firing danger zone in front of the weapons system, and the back-blast area behind the weapon system. Sounds off, "Back-blast area all secure."
11. Driver/Assistant Gunner raises the arming lever on the bridge clamp, and sounds off "Gun up."
12. Driver/Assistant Gunner faces the rear of the weapons system and observes the back-blast area.
13. Gunner raises the trigger protective cover and sounds off "Launch."
14. Gunner presses the trigger, and continues to track the target.
15. Upon impact, the Gunner sounds off "Impact."
16. Gunner lowers the trigger protective cover, and locks the traversing unit with both the elevation and azimuth locks.
17. Driver/Assistant Gunner raises the bridge clamp locking lever, and raises the bridge clamp, which cuts the command-link wires.
18. Driver/Assistant Gunner raises the aft end of the empty launch container, and removes it from the launch tube.
19. Driver/Assistant Gunner physically and visually inspects the launch tube for serviceability, stability, and debris.
20. Driver/Assistant Gunner sounds off "Weapon clear."

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.
2. When vehicle mounted, Gunner will perform steps 11, 12, 17, 18, and 19.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. TOW live fire missile range with targets
2. PGTS - TOW
3. FTT

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
 2. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 3. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 766

RFS:

Perform immediate action for an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system misfire

Condition: Given an M220E4 TOW2 weapons system with a misfire, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By clearing the malfunction and returning the weapon into action.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. When the trigger is pressed and nothing happens, Gunner sounds off "Misfire."
2. Driver/Assistant Gunner repeats "Misfire."
3. Gunner continues to track the target for 1 minute.
4. Driver/Assistant Gunner times for 1 minute, and then sounds off "Minute up."
5. Driver/Assistant Gunner visually re-checks the firing danger zone in front of the weapons system, and the back-blast area behind the weapon system.
6. The Driver/Assistant Gunner sounds off "Back-blast area all secure."
7. Driver/Assistant Gunner inspects the arming lever on the bridge clamp to ensure it is in the up position at a 90-degree angle, and sounds off "Gun up."
8. Driver/Assistant Gunner faces the rear of the weapons system and observes the back-blast area.
9. Gunner raises the trigger protective cover and sounds off "Launch," and attempts to fire by pressing the trigger.
10. When the trigger is pressed and nothing happens, Gunner sounds off "Misfire."
11. Driver/Assistant Gunner repeats "Misfire."
12. Gunner continues to track the target for 1 minute.
13. Driver/Assistant Gunner times for 1 minute, and then sounds off "Minute up."
14. Gunner closes the trigger protective cover, and continues to track the target.
15. Driver/Assistant Gunner lowers the arming lever on the bridge clamp to disarm the system.
16. Driver/Assistant Gunner ensures the battery assembly is secured properly on the missile guidance set.
17. Driver/Assistant Gunner presses the test operator switch to ensure the battery passes.
18. Driver/Assistant Gunner ensures the coil cable attached to the missile guidance set to ensure the J1 connector is fully seated onto the electrical connector.
19. Driver/Assistant Gunner checks to make sure the bridge clamp locking lever is closed properly on the bridge clamp.
20. Driver/Assistant Gunner visually re-checks the firing danger zone in front of the weapons system, and the back-blast area behind the weapon system.
21. Driver/Assistant Gunner sounds off "Back-blast area all secure."
22. Driver/Assistant Gunner raises the arming lever on the bridge clamp, and sounds off "Gun up."
23. Driver/Assistant Gunner faces the rear of the weapons system and observes the back-blast area.
24. Gunner raises the trigger protective cover and sounds off "Launch," and attempts to fire by pressing the trigger.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

25. When the trigger is pressed and nothing happens, Gunner sounds off "Misfire."
26. Driver/Assistant Gunner repeats, "Misfire."
27. Gunner continues to track the target for 1 minute.
28. Driver/Assistant Gunner times for 1 minute, and then sounds off "Minute up."
29. Gunner closes the trigger protective cover, and locks the traversing unit with the azimuth and elevation locks.
30. Driver/Assistant Gunner lowers the arming lever on the bridge clamp
31. Gunner and Driver/Assistant Gunner walk away from the system at a 90-degree angle and notify the range safety officer.
32. Driver/Assistant Gunner and the range safety officer wait 30 minutes and then walk back to the system.
33. Driver/Assistant Gunner raises the bridge clamp locking lever and then raises the bridge clamp.
34. Driver/Assistant Gunner lifts the aft end of the missile and then pulls the missile out of the launch tube.
35. Driver/Assistant Gunner cradles the missile and ensures the missile is pointed down range in a safe direction.
36. Range safety officer designates a safe place to lay the missile.
37. Driver/Assistant Gunner carries the missile to a designated place.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
 2. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
-

EVENT: 0352 - A - 767

RFS:

Perform immediate action for an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system hang fire

Condition: Given an M220E4 TOW2 weapons system with a hang fire, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By clearing the malfunction and returning the weapon into action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. When the trigger is pressed, the gyros spin, and the missile does not fire, Gunner sounds off, "Hang fire."
2. Driver/Assistant Gunner repeats "Hang fire."
3. Gunner continues to track the target for 1 minute.
4. Driver/Assistant Gunner times for 1 minute, and then sounds off "Minute up."
5. Gunner closes the trigger protective cover, and locks the traversing unit with the azimuth and elevation locks.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Driver/Assistant Gunner lowers the arming lever on the bridge clamp
7. Gunner and the Driver/Assistant Gunner walk away from the system at a 90-degree angle and notify the range safety officer.
8. Driver/Assistant Gunner and the range safety officer wait 30 minute and then walk back to the system.
9. Driver/Assistant Gunner raises the bridge clamp locking lever and then raises the bridge clamp.
10. Driver/Assistant Gunner lifts the aft end of the missile and then pulls the missile out of the launch tube.
11. Driver/Assistant Gunner cradles the missile and ensures the missil is pointed down range in a safe direction.
12. Range safety officer designates a safe place to lay the missile.
13. Driver/Assistant Gunner carries the missile to a designated place.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task is a crew drill. The task can also be found in the collective chapter.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-34 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
 2. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX H

SCOUT SNIPER BASIC COURSE

Description

Scout Sniper Basic Course is located at Weapons Training Battalion, Quantico VA; Weapons Training Battalion, Camp Lejeune, NC; Advanced Infantry Training Company, School of Infantry, Camp Pendleton, CA; and Regimental Schools, Kaneohe Bay, HI.

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a basic scout sniper in a Scout Sniper Platoon of an Infantry Battalion.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

None.

EVENT: 8541 - A - 233

RFS:

Perform weapons handling procedures with the M40A1 sniper rifle

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle and dummy ammunition.

Standard: Without violating the 4 safety rules.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Fill the magazine.
3. Empty the magazine.
4. Demonstrate the weapons carry.
5. Demonstrate the proper assembly and positioning of the sling.
6. Load the rifle.
7. Make the rifle ready to fire.
8. Unload the rifle.
9. Make the rifle safe.
10. Apply immediate action.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

11. Apply remedial action.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The weapon must be stored without tension on the firing pin spring. Ensure the weapon is stored in a manner that will prevent damage to the scope or the weapon, such as a climate controlled armory with individual racks or hooks per weapon system.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	5 each

Ammunition is not expended.

REFERENCES

1. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1

EVENT: 8541 - A - 234 RFS:

Perform preventive maintenance on the M40A1 sniper rifle

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, operator's manual, approved cleaning equipment, cleaning solvents and lubricants.

Standard: Ensuring the weapon is clean, lubricated and serviceable.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Place the weapon in Condition 4.
3. Disassemble the rifle.
4. Clean the rifle.
5. Lubricate the rifle.
6. Assemble the rifle.
7. Perform a function check.
8. Make entries in the gun book.
9. Ensure the rifle gun case and bag are clean and serviceable.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The scout sniper must know the M40A1 rifle's characteristics and understand the weapon's cycle of operation.
2. Check gun book for appropriate entries and serviceability.
3. The scout sniper must know the proper torque for his assigned weapon.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 8541 - A - 235

RFS:

Zero the M40A1 sniper rifle

Condition: Given an M40A1 rifle with adjusted scope, an observer, ammunition, and any known distance target.

Standard: To ensure point of aim/point of impact is obtained once zeroed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Place scope on initial elevation, windage, and fine tune settings. Ensure the set screws are tight.
3. Assume a supported firing position.
4. Prepare for firing.
5. Fire 3 well aimed shots, while applying the fundamentals of marksmanship.
6. Record information in the data book.
7. Analyze data.
8. Apply required adjustments to scope.
9. Fire a second zeroing group (repeat steps 5 to 8).
10. Fire a well aimed 4 shot group to confirm zero.
11. Demonstrate field expedient zeroing techniques.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The 100 yard method can be used at ranges of 200 and 300 yards with main elevation knob set at 2 and 3 respectively.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	24 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1

EVENT: 8541 - A - 236

RFS:

Qualify with the M40A1 sniper rifle at known distances

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, observer, 35 rounds of ammunition, M49 spotting scope, and targets.

Standard: To engage 35 designated targets at various known ranges with a 80 percent accuracy (28 of 35 on target).

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume the firing position.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Engage a stationary target at 300 yards with 5 rounds to confirm zero.
5. Engage 3 stationary targets at 300, 500, 600, 700, and 800 yards and 5 stationary targets at 900 and 1,000 yards at the sustained rate of fire.
6. Determine method of engagement.
7. Engage moving target based on observer's commands.
8. Engage targets of limited exposure.
9. Engage multiple targets.
10. Assess the situation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The sustained rate of fire for the M40A1 is 1 round per minute.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range (minimum of 1000 meters) with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	70 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1

EVENT: 8541 - A - 237

RFS:

Qualify with the M40A1 sniper rifle at unknown distances

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, observer, 10 rounds of ammunition, M49 spotting scope, binoculars, and target.

Standard: To engage 10 designated targets at various ranges with 80 percent accuracy (8 of 10 targets hit).

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume the firing position.
3. Prepare a range card.
4. Prepare a field sketch.
5. Estimate range to all targets.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Prepare for firing.
7. Engage 10 stationary targets at various ranges with 2 rounds per target.
8. Assess the situation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	20 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 238 RFS:

Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M40A1 sniper rifle

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, observer, 10 rounds of ammunition, M49 spotting scope, targets and artificial illumination, during periods of low light and darkness.

Standard: To engage targets in low light without illumination and in darkness with illumination, while compensating for the effects of weather to achieve point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Acquire night vision.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Detect the target.
5. Present the rifle to the target while assuming the firing position.
6. Engage target based on observer's commands.
7. Assume the ready position.
8. Assess the situation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	20 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 244

RFS:

Perform weapons handling procedures with the M82A1A special application scoped rifle

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle and ammunition.

Standard: Without violating the 4 safety rules.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Fill the magazine.
3. Empty the magazine.
4. Demonstrate the weapons carry based on tactical scenario/employment method.
5. Load the rifle.
6. Make the rifle ready to fire.
7. Unload the rifle.
8. Make a Condition 4 weapon.
9. Apply immediate action.
10. Apply remedial action.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Ensure weapon is properly disassembled for storage and is stored in its prescribed carrying case. Cases should be stored side-by-side, and not stacked, to prevent damage to the weapon system.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M82A1A .50 cal Special Application Scoped Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A602 CTG, CAL .50, SRTA	5 each

Ammunition is not expended.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 245

RFS:

Perform preventive maintenance on the M82A1A special application scoped rifle

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle, operator's manual, approved cleaning equipment, cleaning solvents, and

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

lubricants.

Standard: Ensuring the weapon is clean, lubricated, and serviceable.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Place the weapon in Condition 4.
3. Disassemble the rifle.
4. Clean the rifle.
5. Lubricate the rifle.
6. Reassemble the rifle.
7. Perform a function check.
8. Make entries in the gun book.
9. Ensure the rifle gun case and bag are clean and serviceable.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The scout sniper must know the M82A1A rifle's characteristics and understand the weapon's cycle of operation.
2. Check the gun book for appropriate entries and serviceability.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 246

RFS:

Zero the M82A1A special application scoped rifle

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle with adjusted scope, an observer, ammunition, M49 spotting scope, and target.

Standard: To ensure point of aim/point of impact is obtained once zeroed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Place scope on initial elevation, windage, and fine tune settings. Ensure the set screws are tight.
3. Assume the supported prone firing position.
4. Prepare for firing.
5. Fire 3 well aimed shoots while applying the fundamentals of marksmanship.
6. Record information in the data book.
7. Analyze data.
8. Apply required adjustments to scope.
9. Fire a second zeroing group (repeat steps 5 to 8).
10. Fire a well aimed 4 shot group to confirm zero.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M82A1A	.50 cal Special Application Scoped Rifle	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A602	CTG, CAL .50, SRTA	20 each

REFERENCES

1. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 247 RFS:

Engage stationary targets with the M82A1A special application scoped rifle at known distances

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle, observer, ammunition, M49 spotting scope, and stationary targets at known distances out to the maximum effective range of the rifle.

Standard: To achieve point of aim/point of impact on target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume the firing position.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Engage target based on observer's commands.
5. Assess the situation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The sustained rate of fire for the M82A1A is 1 round per minute.
2. The rapid rate of fire for the M82A1A is 10 rounds per minute.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M82A1A	.50 cal Special Application Scoped Rifle	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A602	CTG, CAL .50, SRTA	10 each

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-01A Rifle Marksmanship
 2. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 3. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 8541 - A - 249

RFS:

Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M82A1A special application scoped rifle

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle, observer, ammunition, M49 spotting scope, targets, and artificial illumination, during periods of low light and darkness.

Standard: To engage targets in low light without illumination and in darkness with illumination, while compensating for the effects of weather to achieve point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Acquire night vision.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Detect the target.
5. Present the rifle to the target, while assuming the firing position
6. Engage target based on observer's commands.
7. Assume the ready position.
8. Assess the situation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M82A1A	.50 cal Special Application Scoped Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>	
A602	CTG, CAL .50, SRTA	5 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 251

RFS:

Prepare a sniper range card

Condition: Given a mission, a military map, pen or pencil, straight edge, protractor, lensatic compass, M40A1 sniper rifle with Unertl scope, M49 spotting scope, and binoculars.

Standard: To prepare a field expedient range card within 1 hour.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Estimate distance to target.
2. Identify reference points.
3. Establish 3 sectors.
4. Identify center azimuth.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Include marginal data.
6. Draw terrain features on range card.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 299

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for M49 spotting scope, binoculars, Unertl 10X scope, and Leupold 6X scope

Condition: Given an M49 spotting scope, binoculars, Unertl 10X scope, Leupold 6X scope, and approved cleaning equipment.

Standard: To ensure that optics function.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the optics for defects and serviceability.
2. Clean the optics.
3. Lubricate appropriate parts.
4. Demonstrate proper placement of the objective lens cap to prevent cross-threading (M49 spotting scope only).
5. Demonstrate authorized assembly/disassembly of all optical equipment

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If spotting scope body is camouflaged with paint, there is no requirement to lubricate body of the scope.
2. The use of adhesive material, such as tape, is not authorized for use on the surface of the binoculars for masking shine. A chemical reaction will take place which will cause the rubber coating to deteriorate.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
 3. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 303

RFS:

Mount and zero the KN203F SIMRAD night intensifier device

Condition: Given a KN203F SIMRAD night intensifier device, M40A1 sniper rifle scope, tools, and a zero range.

Standard: To mount and adjust the KN203F SIMRAD night intensifier device to point of aim/point of impact.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Turn on/off SIMRAD.
2. Mount the SIMRAD to the M40A1.
3. Adjust the FAB on the KN203.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate target

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	10 each

REFERENCES

1. SW215-AM-MMO-010 Operator's and organizational maintenance manual for night vision imaging system (NVIS), AN/PVS-9
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 304 RFS:

Perform focus/adjustment on the Unertl scope

Condition: Given a Unertl scope, scope tools, a white card, and a target 300 yards away.

Standard: To obtain a focused target with UNERTL scope.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Adjust focus.
2. Check for parallax.
3. Adjust if parallax is present.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The weapon must be placed in a stable position that will prevent the weapon from being moved while the scope is being checked for parallax.
2. When adjusting the scope for eye relief ensure that the scope rings do not touch the flanged parts of the ocular and objective lens housing.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
 3. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 326 RFS:

Prepare a field sketch

Condition: Given a mission, a military map, pen or pencil, straight

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

edge ruler, M49 spotting scope, binoculars, an objective, and an final firing point.

Standard: To sketch all pertinent information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Identify terrain features in objective area.
2. Measure any personnel or equipment in the objective area.
3. Determine scale to be used on the sketch.
4. Place a reference point on the sketch.
5. Draw features on the sketch.
6. Place marginal information on the sketch.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 331

RFS:

Describe foreign weapons and equipment

Condition: Given an assigned mission, an assigned objective, and operating from a concealed position with the proper equipment and optics.

Standard: To ensure accurate report is submitted to accomplish the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Describe foreign vehicles.
2. Describe foreign weapons and equipment.
3. Describe foreign small arms.
4. Describe foreign crew-served weapons.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The scout-sniper must also know the NATO weapons, vehicles, and aircraft.

REFERENCES

1. Janes Book Of Armored Vehicles (Current Year)
 2. FM 100-2-3 The Soviet Army
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 356

RFS:

Operate in support of actions in a built up area

Condition: Given an operations order for a mission in a built-up area, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position the scout sniper team in the built-up area, where it can best support the mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's concept of operations.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 375

RFS:

Navigate using aerial photographs

Condition: Given an operation order from higher authority, an area of operation, an aerial photo of the area, a 1:50,000 scale military map, compass, protractor, and a metric ruler.

Standard: To navigate utilizing aerial photograph to accomplish higher headquarters' mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Orient aerial photo.
2. Determine the six-digit grid coordinate of the objective.
3. Select routes to and from the objective area.
4. Determine checkpoints.
5. Determine azimuths between checkpoints.
6. Determine the distance between checkpoints.
7. Navigate to and from the objective area.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. Photo of maneuver / training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 376

RFS:

Navigate using relief sketch

Condition: Given a sketch of a military map, a lensatic compass, a starting point, and an objective.

Standard: To navigate to a given objective.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare a relief sketch from a military map.
2. Identify objective on relief sketch.
3. Identify landmarks and limiting features (streams, structures, distinct terrain features).
4. Identify north.
5. Identify sun rise location or sun set location.
6. Identify areas to avoid, such as potential enemy locations.
7. Navigate from starting point to objective.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 408

RFS:

Adjust naval gunfire

Condition: Given binoculars, radio, call signs/frequencies, map, compass, coordinate scale, a Fire Direction Center (FDC), and a direct support ship prepared to fire in response to the Call For Fire (CFF).

Standard: To achieve the desired effect on target within 6 rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Locate target.
2. Determine magnetic direction to target.
3. Prepare and transmit Call For Fire (CFF).
4. Adjust rounds onto target.
5. Assess target damage.
6. Terminate mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task will be trained on TSFO.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. TSFO - Trainer Support Forward Observer

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 8541 - A - 426

RFS:

Operate an HF radio set

Condition: Given a tactical situation, an HF radio set, all accessories, another station, frequencies, and call signs.

Standard: To make a communication check with the receiving station within 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the radio set.
2. Conduct operation check.
3. Establish a communication check.
4. Troubleshoot problems.
5. Perform operator level maintenance.

REFERENCES

1. TM 07748A-12/1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-104
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 427

RFS:

Operate a UHF radio set

Condition: Given a tactical situation, a UHF radio set, all accessories, another station, frequencies, and call signs.

Standard: To make a communication check with the receiving station within 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the radio set.
2. Conduct operation check.
3. Establish a communication check.
4. Troubleshoot problems.
5. Perform operator level maintenance.

REFERENCES

1. TO 31R2-2 PRC-113-1- Operator's Manual, AN/PRC-113
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 429

RFS:

Operate communications security equipment for HF radio set

Condition: Given a tactical situation, an AN/PRC-104 radio set, a KY-65 or KY-99, all accessories, another station, frequencies, and call signs.

Standard: To securely transmit and receive traffic.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare the equipment for secure voice operation.
2. Conduct a secure communications check.
3. Perform operator level preventive maintenance.

REFERENCES

1. TM 07748A-12/1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-104
 2. TM 11-5810-256-OP-2 Operating Procedures for Communication Security Equipment
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 430

RFS:

Operate communications security equipment for VHF radio set

Condition: Given a tactical situation, an AN/PRC-119 radio set, a KY-57, all accessories, another station, frequencies, and call signs.

Standard: To securely transmit and receive traffic.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare the equipment for secure voice operation.
2. Conduct a secure communications check.
3. Perform operator level preventive maintenance.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08940A-10-1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-119
 2. TM 11-5810-256-OP-2 Operating Procedures for Communication Security Equipment
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 432

RFS:

Operate satellite communication equipment

Condition: Given a satellite communication set, all accessories, frequencies, and call signs.

Standard: To assemble the radio set and conduct a communication check.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Install the battery.
2. Attach handset.
3. Attach antenna.
4. Select manual frequency.
5. Set in operating mode.
6. Turn on power.
7. Adjust volume.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Troubleshoot problems, if required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 5895-10-1 Operator's Manual, Radio Set AN/PSC-3
 2. TM 5895-34-12 Radio Set AN/PSC-3
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 481

RFS:

Camouflage sniper equipment

Condition: Given a roll of tape, various colors of spray paint, garnish of various colors, and pieces of vegetation found in the area of operations.

Standard: To effectively blend equipment to surrounding environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Camouflage rifles.
2. Camouflage optics.
3. Camouflage radio.
4. Camouflage equipment.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If appropriate materials are not available, the scout sniper will utilize field expedient materials.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 482

RFS:

Construct a ghillie suit

Condition: Given 2 rolls of garnish, a set of utilities, a cover, a 4 foot by 8 foot piece of IR netting, a 4 foot by 8 foot piece of canvas, glue, sewing materials, 1 pair of gloves, and 1 pair of boots.

Standard: To effectively blend in with environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Attach base netting to clothing.
2. Tie garnish to netting.
3. Camouflage boots.
4. Modify ghillie suit, as necessary.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Each sniper must have 1 ghillie suit.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 483

RFS:

Conduct route reconnaissance

Condition: Given an assigned mission, a military map, compass, and standard sniper team equipment.

Standard: To control the team and direct the collection of information without compromising the team.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
2. Issue a patrol order or fragmentary order.
3. Direct actions in the objective area.
4. Satisfy information requirements.
5. Report information on route.

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier
 2. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
 3. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 484

RFS:

Execute surveillance of an objective

Condition: Given an assigned mission, an observation log, NATO report formats, an M49 spotting scope, Unertl 10-power scope, binoculars, AN/PVS-7B night vision goggles, a sketching kit, radio, and communications log.

Standard: To report information, without being compromised.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Select a Final Firing Position (FFP).
2. Establish security.
3. Employ observation techniques appropriate to the equipment on hand.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 8541 - A - 485

RFS:

Operate from a hide

Condition: Given the appropriate weapons, ammunition, equipment, camouflage material, operation order, and an area of operation.

Standard: Observing, reporting, and engaging targets while remaining undetected.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Select a hide position.
2. Determine type of hide.
3. Establish security.
4. Construct the hide.
5. Observe, report, and engage targets.
6. Destroy and camouflage the hide before withdrawing.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 486

RFS:

Move to and from a target location

Condition: Given the appropriate weapons, ammunition, equipment, camouflage material, and an area of operation.

Standard: To accomplish higher headquarters' mission and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Camouflage self.
2. Camouflage weapons and equipment.
3. Move to within the designated range of the target.
4. Select and occupy final firing positions.
5. Prepare range card.
6. Engage target.
7. Withdraw from objective.
8. Participate in a debrief.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 8541 - A - 487

RFS:

Conduct a link-up

Condition: Given the necessary equipment and a mission to link-up with a stationary force.

Standard: To ensure team leader links-up with a stationary force.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Establish communications with the maneuver unit.
2. Coordinate routes, checkpoints, and link-up point with the supporte unit.
3. Coordinate link-up procedures with the supported unit.
4. Establish a no-communication plan.
5. Move to link-up point.
6. Ensure security is established at the link-up point.
7. Establish communications with the supported unit.
8. Execute the signal plan.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 488

RFS:

Select key targets in support of scout sniper mission

Condition: Provided a higher headquarters' operation order, an area of operation, a scout sniper team, required weapons, ammunition, optics, equipment, Rules Of Engagement (ROE), and a priority of targets.

Standard: To accomplish higher headquarters' mission and commander's intent by selecting only those targets for engagement that meet the established rules of engagement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Observe area.
2. Identify targets.
3. Prioritize targets.
4. Engage targets.
5. Make a report, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: 8541 - A - 489

RFS:

Plan a scout sniper team mission

Condition: Given an operations order, a tactical radio set, a communications plan, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To prepare and issue an operations order for a scout-sniper mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Study the mission.
2. Begin planning.
3. Issue a warning order.
4. Coordinate with friendly units.
5. Make reconnaissance and complete the estimate of the situation.
6. Develop a course of action.
7. Determine what type of fire support will be required.
8. Prepare a map overlay showing planned routes, fire support plan, an tactical control measures.
9. Issue a scout sniper patrol order using the 5 paragraph order forma
10. Supervise preparations and rehearsals.
11. Make final adjustments to the plan, as required.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 490

RFS:

Lead a scout sniper team mission

Condition: Given an operations order, a tactical radio set, a communications plan, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To accomplish higher headquarters' mission and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Depart friendly lines.
2. Navigate to and from the objective.
3. Maintain communications.
4. Control team actions.
5. Conduct assigned actions in the objective area.
6. Observe, select, and engage targets.
7. Depart objective area.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

8. Make reports, as appropriate.
9. Re-enter friendly lines.
10. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 494

RFS:

Establish a sniper control center

Condition: Given the required communications equipment, report formats, and other necessary equipment.

Standard: To receive, process, and disseminate reports from the scout sniper teams.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Select location.
2. Establish security.
3. Set up communications assets.
4. Perform operations checks on communications equipment.
5. Setup briefing/situation boards.
6. Open communications log.
7. Open situation log.
8. Process reports.
9. Perform situation update/brief at the ORP/SCC with the supported unit commander, as required.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 496

RFS:

Conduct a debrief

Condition: Given the necessary equipment, a debriefing format, and a representative from the applicable staff section.

Standard: To relay all information during the course of the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Move to designated area for debrief.
2. Lay out and account for all team and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observation logbook.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Conduct debrief following debriefing format.
5. Provide changes to original overlays.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 623 RFS:

Operate in support of offensive actions

Condition: Given an operation order for an offensive action, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position the scout sniper team so it can best accomplish the mission of support in the area of the planned offensive action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's concept of operations.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander, as required.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as necessary.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 624 RFS:

Operate in support of defensive actions

Condition: Given an operation order for a defensive action, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position a scout sniper team in an area of planned defensive action, where it can support, collect, and report information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's scheme of maneuver and fire support.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander, as required.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: 8541 - A - 626

RFS:

Operate in support of a Maritime Special Purpose Force (MSPF) Operation

Condition: Given an operations order for an MSPF mission, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position the scout sniper team where it can best support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's concept of operations.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander, as required.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. All possible MEU(SOC) missions supportable by scout snipers must be covered.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX I

INFANTRY PLATOON SERGEANTS COURSE

Description

The Infantry Platoon Sergeants Course is located at School Of Infantry (SOI), Advanced Infantry Training Company, (AITC) Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA.

Purpose

The course is designed to train the Infantry Unit Leader in knowledge and skills required to perform as a Section Leader/Platoon Sergeant in an Infantry Rifle Platoon, Assault Section, Machinegun Section, Anti-armor Section, Mortars Platoon (60mm & 81mm), or Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) member.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

Marines sent to this course must be a Staff Sergeant or a Select and currently be serving in a Staff Sergeant's billet.

EVENT: IULC - A - 001 RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M9 pistol

Condition: Given an M9 pistol, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 1005A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the pistol by placing it in Condition 4.
2. Return the slide fully forward.
3. Hold the pistol in the right hand with the muzzle slightly elevated with the forefinger press disassembly lever release button and with the thumb rotate the disassembly lever downward until it stops.
4. Pull the slide and barrel assembly forward and remove.
5. Compress the recoil spring and spring guide, while at the same time lifting and removing the recoil spring and spring guide.
6. Separate the recoil spring from the spring guide.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Push in on the locking block plunger while pushing the barrel forward. Lift and remove the locking block and barrel assembly from the slide.
8. Grasp the magazine firmly with the floor plate up and the back of the magazine tube against the palm of the hand.
9. Release the floor plate by pushing down on the floor plate retainer stud in the center of the floor plate, while at the same time sliding the floor plate forward for a short distance using the thumb.
10. While maintaining the magazine spring pressure with the thumb, remove the floor plate from the magazine.
11. Remove the floor plate retainer and magazine spring and follower from the magazine tube.
12. Remove floor plate retainer from the magazine spring.
13. Inspect slide assembly for free movement of decocking/safety lever
14. Ensure rear sight is not loose.
15. Check for cracks in locking block retaining slot.
16. Inspect bore and chamber for pitting or obstructions.
17. Check locking block plunger for free movement of locking block.
18. Inspect locking lugs and barrel lugs for cracks and burrs.
19. Inspect recoil spring for damage.
20. Inspect recoil spring guide for straightness and smoothness.
21. Ensure recoil spring guide is free of cracks and burrs.
22. Inspect receiver assembly for bends, chips and cracks.
23. Check slide stop for free movement.
24. Magazine catch assembly for free movement.
25. Check guide rails for excessive wear, burrs, cracks or chips.
26. Check magazine spring and follower for damage.
27. Inspect the lips of the magazine for cracks, burrs, dents, and bends.
28. Remove excess dirt from the magazine.
29. Clean the slide assembly with a cloth. For excessive dirt or carbon buildup, use a soft brush and CLP.
30. Ensure the decocking/safety lever, breech face, slide guides, and extractor are free of excess dirt and residue.
31. Wipe slide assembly dry with a cloth and apply a light coat of CLP
32. Using a cleaning rod, insert a cleaning patch soaked with CLP into the chamber end of the barrel and push out the muzzle to remove residue and carbon deposits.
33. Repeatedly insert a bore brush into the chamber end of the barrel, making sure it completely clears the muzzle before it is pulled back through the bore.
34. Wipe loose carbon deposits from bore with a clean patch soaked with CLP.
35. Dry the barrel by repeatedly pushing a swab through the bore.
36. Clean the locking block with a soft brush.
37. Apply a light coat of CLP to the barrel bore and chamber area.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

38. Lubricate the exterior surfaces of the barrel and locking block.
39. Clean the recoil spring and recoil spring guide using CLP and a soft brush or cloth.
40. Apply a light coat of CLP to the recoil spring and recoil spring guide.
41. Wipe the receiver assembly clean with a cloth and then apply a light coat of CLP.
42. Clean the magazine tube and follower with CLP and a cloth.
43. Clean the magazine spring, floor plate retainer, and floor plate with a cloth and then apply a light coat of CLP.
44. Grasp the slide with the bottom facing up and with the other hand grasp the barrel assembly with the locking block facing up.
45. Insert the muzzle of the barrel assembly into the forward open end of the slide, while at the same time lowering the rear of the barrel assembly by aligning the extractor cutout with the extractor.
46. Insert the recoil spring onto the recoil spring guide.
47. Insert the end of the recoil spring and recoil spring guide into the slide recoil spring housing, while at the same time compressing the recoil spring and lower the spring guide until fully seated onto the locking block cutaway.
48. Grasp the slide and barrel assembly, sights up, and align the slide onto the receiver assembly guide rails.
49. Push until the rear of the slide is a short distance beyond the rear of the receiver assembly and hold. At the same time, rotate the disassembly latch lever upward.
50. Insert the follower into the top coil of the magazine spring.
51. Insert the magazine spring with follower into the magazine tube.
52. Turn the magazine bottom up with the back side against the palm of the hand.
53. Attach and center the floor plate retainer to the bottom spring coil.
54. Push and hold the magazine spring and floor plate retainer down, while at the same time sliding the floor plate over the side walls until fully seated.
55. Insert the magazine into the magazine well of the pistol.
56. Depress the slide stop and ensure the slide goes home.
57. Retract the slide and release it. Ensure the magazine follower should push up on the slide stop, locking the slide to the rear.
58. Depress the magazine release button allowing the magazine to fall free.
59. Ensure the decocking/safety lever is in the SAFE position. Depress the slide stop allowing the slide to return fully forward and ensure the hammer falls to the full forward position.
60. Squeeze and release the trigger. Ensure the firing pin block moves up and down and that the hammer does not move.
61. Place the decocking/safety lever in the fire position.
62. Squeeze the trigger and ensure the hammer cocks and falls.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

63. Squeeze trigger and hold to the rear. Manually retract and release the slide while holding the trigger to the rear. Release the trigger. A click will be heard and the hammer does not fall.

64. Squeeze the trigger and the hammer will fall.

REFERENCES

1. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 013

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M16A2 service rifle

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 05538C-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the rifle.
2. Unsnap the sling.
3. Place the rifle on the butt stock, press down on the slip ring, and remove the hand guards.
4. Push the takedown pin as far as it will go and pivot the upper receiver from the lower receiver.
5. Push the receiver pivot pin and separate the upper and lower receivers.
6. Pull back on the charging handle and bolt carrier to remove the bolt carrier group.
7. Remove the charging handle.
8. Remove the firing pin retaining pin.
9. Put the bolt assembly in the locked position.
10. Drop the firing pin out of the rear of the bolt carrier.
11. Remove the bolt cam pin and then remove the bolt assembly from the carrier.
12. Remove the extractor pin and then remove the extractor and spring.
13. Press in on the buffer, depress retainer, and release the buffer. Then remove the buffer and the action spring.
14. Swab out the bore with a patch moistened with CLP.
15. Pull a bore brush through the bore and out the muzzle several times.
16. Pull a patch moistened with CLP through the bore and out the muzzle several times.
17. Thoroughly clean all areas of powder fouling on the upper receiver with CLP to include the chamber, locking lugs, and the gas tube.
18. Thoroughly clean the bolt carrier group with CLP to include the outer and inner surfaces, carrier key, firing pin recess and firing pin firing pin hole, locking lugs, ejector, and areas behind the bolt ring and upper lip of extractor.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

19. Thoroughly clean all areas of powder fouling, corrosion, and dirt on the lower receiver group to include the trigger mechanism, buffer, action spring, and inside lower receiver extension.
20. Inspect the bolt for cracks, fractures, and pits.
21. Inspect the firing pin to ensure it is not bent, cracked, or blunted.
22. Inspect the firing pin retaining pin to ensure it is not bent or badly worn.
23. Inspect the cam pin to ensure it is not cracked or chipped.
24. Inspect the extractor and extractor spring to ensure it is not chipped or broken and that the rubber insert is inside the extractor spring.
25. Lightly lubricate the inside of the upper receiver, bore and chamber, outer surfaces of barrel and front sight, and the surfaces under the hand guard with CLP.
26. Apply several drops of CLP to the front sight detent and depress several times to work the CLP into the spring.
27. Generously lube the bolt to include the cam pin area, bolt rings, and the outside of the bolt body with CLP. Use only a light coat of CL on the firing pin recess of the bolt.
28. Lightly lube the firing pin, charging handle, and inner and outer surfaces of the bolt carrier with CLP.
29. Generously lube the slide and cam pin area of the bolt carrier with CLP.
30. Lightly lube the inside lower receiver extension, buffer, and action spring with CLP.
31. Generously lube the takedown and pivot pins, detents, and the moving parts inside of the lower receiver and their pins.
32. Apply several drops of CLP to the moving parts of the adjustable rear sight to include the elevation knob, elevation screw shaft, windage knob, windage screw, and detent holes.
33. Ensure the correct windage and battle sight zero is reset on the weapon.
34. Insert action spring and buffer.
35. Insert extractor and spring, and then push in the extractor pin.
36. Slide bolt into carrier and replace the bolt cam pin.
37. Drop in and seat the firing pin.
38. Pull bolt out and replace the firing pin retaining pin.
39. Engage, then push the charging handle part way.
40. Slide in the bolt carrier group, then push the charging handle and bolt carrier group together.
41. Join the upper and lower receivers and engage the receiver pivot pin.
42. Close the upper and lower receiver groups and push in the takedown pin.
43. Place the rifle on the butt stock and press down on the slip ring. Then install the hand guards and release the ring.
44. Snap on the sling.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

45. Pull the charging handle to the rear and release. Place the selector lever on SAFE, pull the trigger, and ensure the hammer does not fall.
46. Place the selector lever on Semi, pull the trigger and hold to the rear. Hammer should fall.
47. Pull the charging handle to the rear and release. Release the trigger and pull again. Hammer should fall.
48. Place the selector lever on Burst. Pull the charging handle to the rear and release.
49. Pull the trigger and hold to the rear. Hammer should fall.
50. Pull the charging handle to the rear 3 times and release. Release trigger and pull again. Hammer should fall.

REFERENCES

1. TM 05538C-10/1A Operator's Manual, Rifle, 5.56mm, M16A2 W/E
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 037

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M249 squad automatic weapon

Condition: Given an M249 squad automatic weapon, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08671A-10/1

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the weapon.
2. Raise the cover assembly and pull the upper retaining pin at the rear of the receiver to the left.
3. Lower the butt pivot downward so that the rear opening on the receiver is completely free.
4. Hold the weapon with one hand on the butt stock and push in and upward on the rear end of the operating rod assembly with the thumb of the other hand.
5. Remove the operating rod assembly (spring, guide rod, and buffer).
6. Pull the cocking handle to the rear and slide the moving parts out of the rear of the receiver.
7. Rotate the bolt to disengage the lug and pull it out of the slide assembly.
8. Separate the slide assembly from the piston by pressing the retaining pin at the rear to the left and lifting off the slide assembly.
9. Close the cover.
10. Depress the locking lever of the barrel with the left hand. Hold the carrying handle with the right hand, and lift up and push the barrel forward.
11. Position the gas regulator lever between Normal and Max.
12. Place the tip of the spring guide rod in the notch in the front left of the gas block and hold the guide firmly in the notch.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. Holding the guide rod in position, turn the collar back and beyond the Normal position until the collar can be removed.
14. Remove the gas regulator from the gas block.
15. Push the hand guard retaining pin to the left using the spring guide rod, then remove the hand guard downward.
16. Using the spring guide rod, push the lower most retaining pin to the left and remove the butt stock and shoulder assembly by pulling it rearward, while supporting the trigger assembly.
17. Using the spring guide rod, push the lower most retaining pin to the left and remove the butt stock and shoulder assembly by pulling it rearward, while supporting the trigger assembly.
18. Turn the gas cylinder to the left or right to release the locking spring, then pull forward.
19. Remove the bipod from the receiver.
20. Inspect the bore and chamber.
21. Wipe the outside of the barrel with a lightly oiled rag. If heavy bore and/or chamber deposits are present, clean the bore and/or chamber with a bore brush and/or chamber brush.
22. Inspect barrel for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on flash hider, barrel extension, and barrel release.
23. Check front sight for looseness.
24. Check the cover assembly for smooth operation, spring tension, bent parts, or excessive wear and lightly oil moving parts.
25. Check for bends and cracks, free movement of the cocking assembly, and excessively worn, burred or chipped rails.
26. Check barrel locking latch and cover detent springs for spring tension.
27. Lightly oil all rails.
28. Check for broken pistol grip, and chipped or cracked trigger housing holding lugs.
29. Check tripping lever and sear for burrs, cracks, chips, and wear.
30. Check cocking action by pushing back on the tripping lever and ensuring that the sear raises. Pull the trigger and ensure the sear lowers. Push back on tripping lever.
31. With the safety pushed to the right, pull the trigger and ensure the sear will not lower.
32. With the safety pushed to the left, pull the trigger and ensure the sear lowers.
33. Lightly lubricate tripping lever and sear surfaces, ends of the trigger pin, safety shaft, and sear pivot pin.
34. Check the bolt and operating rod for burrs, cracks, broken pins, or a frozen roller.
35. Push down on the roller to make sure it will retract.
36. Check driving spring for broken strands.
37. Lightly oil driving spring, bolt and operating rod moving parts, polished areas, firing pin, and roller.
38. Clean and check bipod legs for operation.
39. Lightly oil bipod moving parts.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

40. Clean and check rear sight assembly for azimuth and elevation, and lightly oil knob detents.
41. Clean the gas vent hole of the regulator body using the scraper tool.
42. Clean the central hole of the regulator with the scraper tool by turning it clockwise and pushing it inward to the bottom of the housing
43. Use the protruding tips of the scraper to clean the 2 grooves of the regulator body.
45. Clean the front of the gas cylinder by inserting and turning the flat side of the scraper in the hole.
46. Clean the exterior grooves and the hole on the front of the piston using the scraper.
47. Place the bipod on the receiver.
48. Push the gas cylinder through the bipod yoke into the receiver.
49. Push the cylinder to the rear while countering the pressure of the locking spring and guiding the end of the cylinder into the receiver with the other hand.
50. Turn the cylinder until the spring clicks into the recess at the rear of the gas cylinder.
51. Replace all cleaning equipment removed from stowage areas.
52. Replace the hand guard on the receiver and slide it backwards until it stops, then push the hand guard retaining pin to the right.
53. Holding the barrel in one hand with the muzzle up, insert the gas regulator body into the lower end of the gas block and align the notch in the regulator body with the notch in the gas block.
54. Place the gas collar regulator lever on the protruding end of the body and align the spring with the stud. Firmly push downward and rotate the collar clockwise into the "N" position.
55. Depress the locking lever of the barrel backward with the left hand. Holding the carrying handle with the right hand, pull the barrel rearward, push downward and lock by releasing the locking lever.
56. Push the retaining pin to the left and install the trigger mechanism.
57. Align the lower hole in the butt stock and shoulder assembly with the rear hole in the trigger mechanism and push the lower pin to the right.
58. Assemble the bolt carrier to the piston and secure by pushing the retaining pin from left to right.
59. Place the spring on the firing pin.
60. Insert the bolt into the bolt carrier, pressing in order to compress the firing pin spring, then rotate the bolt and hook its driving lug into the bolt carrier.
61. Put the moving parts into the receiver with the feed cover open. Locate the bolt lugs in the rails. At the same time, locate the piston into the rear of the gas cylinder. Press the trigger with the forefinger of the other hand so that the sear does not prevent the moving parts from going forward.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

62. Hold the pistol grip with one hand and push the operating rod assembly into its housing in the rear of the piston with the other hand. Press in and down on the rear of the operating rod assembly until its 2 lugs are positioned in the receiver grooves.
63. Pivot the butt upward into position and push the retaining pin to the right.
64. Close the cover assembly.
65. Grasp the cocking handle palm up with the right hand and pull the bolt to the rear locking it in place.
66. While continuing to hold resistance on the cocking handle, use the left hand to move the safety to the SAFE position.
67. Push the cocking handle forward into the forward lock position.
68. Pull the trigger and ensure the weapon does not fire.
69. Grasp the cocking handle palm up with the right hand and pull and hold it to the rear.
70. Move the safety to the FIRE position.
71. While continuing to hold resistance on the cocking handle, use the left hand to pull the trigger and ease the bolt forward.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08671A-10/1 Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 5.56mm, M249
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 056

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M203 grenade launcher

Condition: Given an M16A2 service rifle with a mounted M203 grenade launcher, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1010-221-10.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clear the rifle.
2. Clear the M203 grenade launcher.
3. Inspect the launcher assembly for missing or damaged components.
4. Clean bore and chamber with bore brush, thong, and CLP.
5. Clean area around breech insert and firing pin hole using CLP.
6. Clean all dust and dirt from weapon using CLP and wiping rag.
7. Wipe the inside of barrel with wiping rag soaked in CLP.
8. Move the barrel forward and clean the locator slot clean.
9. Lubricate the locator slot and barrel tracks with CLP.
10. Apply a few drops of CLP through the firing pin hole. Keep the weapon pointed up for 10 to 15 seconds. Cycle the weapon and squeeze the trigger to spread the oil.
11. Turn launcher upside down and lubricate the safety detent with CLP
12. Check the leaf and quadrant sight for damage and functioning.
13. Ensure the launcher is firmly attached to the rifle.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. With the launcher on FIRE, cock the launcher and squeeze the trigger. Firing pin releases.
15. Hold the trigger to the rear and cock the launcher. Release the trigger and then squeeze the trigger. Firing pin releases.
16. With the launcher on SAFE, cock the launcher and squeeze the trigger. Firing pin does not release.
17. Hold the trigger to the rear and cock the launcher. Release the trigger and then squeeze the trigger. Firing pin does not release.
18. Move the barrel forward and back to be sure the barrel stop and barrel latch function.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1010-221-10 Operator's Manual, 40mm Grenade Launcher, M203 (Cl 1&2)
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 085

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M240G medium machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M240G medium machinegun, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08670A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the safety is on FIRE.
2. Pull the cocking handle to the rear to lock bolt back.
3. Place safety to "S."
4. Push in on the latches to open the cover assembly.
5. Remove ammunition.
6. Raise the feed tray.
7. Visually and physically inspect the chamber to make sure it is empty.
8. Lower feed tray.
9. If round is still in chamber remove it.
10. Place safety to "F"
11. Hold the cocking handle to the rear, depress the trigger, and ease the bolt forward to close and lock.
12. Close the cover assembly.
13. Depress the barrel locking latch and hold.
14. Turn the carrying handle to upright position.
15. Remove the barrel and pull straight out.
16. Depress the spring and remove trigger housing spring pin.
17. Pull trigger housing assembly down and back to remove.
18. Depress butt stock latch and lift the butt stock and buffer assembly to remove.
19. Press the drive spring in and up, and then pull it out.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

20. Depress cover latches and raise cover assembly.
21. Pull cocking handle to the rear and remove the bolt and operating rod assembly.
22. Close cover.
23. Push out cover spring pin as far as possible and remove.
24. Remove the cover assembly and feed tray.
25. Rotate the collar until it releases, then pull it out.
26. Pull the plug from gas regulator.
27. Remove the cover from the scraper tool.
28. Insert the scraper into the center hole of the plug. Twist the scraper back and forth to remove carbon from the center hole.
29. Fold the scraper and press the point into the groove. Twist the scraper back and forth to remove carbon from the groove on the plug.
30. Pivot the scraper blade and place the tip of the scraper into the groove of the plug and twist back and forth to remove carbon from the groove on the plug.
31. Utilizing the tip of the scraper, scrape carbon from the surfaces of the plug.
32. Utilizing the small reamer, insert reamer into each gas inlet hole of the plug, twisting the reamer as it is lowered into the holes to remove carbon buildup from the holes.
33. Utilizing the large reamer, insert reamer through hole into the gas port hole in the barrel, twisting reamer as it is lowered into the hole to remove the carbon buildup from the hole.
34. Utilizing a cleaning rod and swab dampened with CLP, remove dirt and corrosion from the bore.
35. Remove dirt and corrosion from other parts using a wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC.
36. Inspect for cracks, dents, burrs, or other damage on flash hider, barrel adapter, and carrying handle.
37. Place plug with gas inlet setting number 1 hole facing the barrel.
38. Install collar on the plug and rotate until collar slips onto the plug. Press and rotate to lock in place.
39. Lightly oil parts with CLP, LAW, or LSA in accordance with climatic considerations.
40. Check the cover assembly for smooth operation, spring tension, bent parts, or excessive wear.
41. Check the cocking handle for bends and cracks, free movement, excessive wear, burrs, or chipped rails.
42. Check the barrel locking latch and cover detent for proper tension.
43. Inspect the trigger assembly for broken grips, bent, cracked, or broken trigger actuating assembly, loose nut or bolt, and chipped or cracked trigger housing holding lug.
44. Check the tripping lever and sear for burrs, cracks, chips, and wear.
45. Check the cocking action by pushing back on the tripping lever, a sear will rise. Pull the trigger and the sear will lower.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

46. Check safety functions. When safety is placed to "S," pull the trigger and the sear will not lower. When safety is placed to "F," pull the trigger and the sear will lower.
47. Lightly lubricate the tripping lever and sear surfaces.
48. Utilizing the combination tool, insert into the bottom of the cavity of the piston end of the operating rod. Squeeze handles firmly and twist the combination tool back and forth to remove carbon.
49. Insert the screwdriver end of the combination tool into the cavity of the piston end of the operating rod to remove carbon residue in the bottom cavity.
50. Clean all other areas of the operating rod, firing pin, and spring pin with wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC. Lightly oil with LAW after cleaning.
51. Check the bolt and operating rod assembly for burrs, cracks, broke pins, or frozen roller.
52. Push down on the roller to ensure it retracts.
53. Check the driving spring for broken strands.
54. Insert the combination tool carefully into the fore end of the gas cylinder of the receiver body.
55. Ensure the combination tool shoulder is fully inserted and seated against the fore end of the gas cylinder in receiver body.
56. Apply slight pressure to the handles and twist back and forth to remove carbon.
57. Clean the gas cylinder bore with the gas cylinder cleaning brush dampened with CLP or RBC.
58. Utilizing a wiping rag dampened with CLP or RBC, remove dirt and corrosion from the area under the front access cover of the receiver and all other parts.
59. Position the feed tray and cover assembly.
60. Push the cover assembly forward, close cover, and insert the spring pin from the right side.
61. Open the cover assembly and ensure the cover detent holds the cover assembly open.
62. Set the bolt and operating rod assembly on top of the rails.
63. Extend the bolt to the unlocked position and push the assembly all the way in the receiver.
64. Close the cover assembly and lock.
65. Insert the driving spring into the operating rod assembly.
66. Push the driving spring in fully and lower it to seat the stud in the hole of the receiver.
67. Install the butt stock and buffer assembly ensuring it locks.
68. Position the trigger housing into place and insert the trigger housing spring pin.
69. Insert the barrel fully into the socket and push the carrying handle to the right as far as it will go to lock while counting the clicks. There should be between 2 to 7 clicks.
70. Place safety to "F."
71. Pull the cocking handle to rear to lock the bolt back.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

72. Place safety to "S."
73. Depress the trigger - nothing should happen.
74. Place safety to "F."
75. Hold the cocking handle to the rear.
76. Depress the trigger and ease the bolt forward to close and lock.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 104

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M2 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M2 heavy machinegun, cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 02498A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Unlock the bolt latch release.
2. Pull retracting slide handle to the rear and hold it to the rear.
3. Raise the cover.
4. Remove the ammunition belt from the feed way.
5. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and T-slot for rounds.
6. If round on the T-slot pull the bolt an additional 1/16 of an inch to the rear.
7. Push round up and out of the T-slot by reaching under the gun and force the round up the face of the bolt.
8. Utilizing a cleaning rod insert in muzzle end of barrel, push through until can be seen in the chamber then remove.
9. Press the bolt latch release and ease the bolt forward with retracting slide handle.
10. Retract bolt far enough for barrel locking spring lug to center in the 3/8-inch hole on right hand side of receiver.
11. Unscrew and remove barrel assembly.
12. Pull back plate latch lock straight back, while lifting up on back plate latch. Raise back plate assembly straight up and remove from receiver, place spade grips down to prevent damage
13. Push rear of driving spring rod assembly forward and to the left until free from the side of the receiver.
14. Remove driving spring rod assembly.
15. Retract bolt assembly far enough to align bolt stud with bolt stud hole in receiver and remove bolt stud.
16. Install pointed end of M4 cleaning rod into hole in receiver and depress buffer body lock while applying rearward pressure on barrel extension assembly.
17. Remove barrel buffer assembly, barrel extension assembly, and the bolt group from the receiver.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

18. Remove bolt assembly from the barrel extension assembly.
19. Separate the barrel buffer body group and the barrel extension group by pushing forward on tips of buffer accelerator.
20. Remove buffer assembly by pushing it out rear of barrel buffer bod
21. Rotate cartridge extractor upward and remove from left side of bol
22. Remove bolt switch by lifting straight up from bolt.
23. Place cocking lever in its rearmost position.
24. Release firing pin spring by pressing down on sear with swab holde section.
25. Using swab holder section, remove cocking lever pin and cocking lever.
26. Using thin end of cocking lever, rotate accelerator stop lock to center of recess of bolt.
27. Turn the bolt over and shake to remove the accelerator stop lock.
28. Using thin end of cocking lever, press accelerator stop from bolt.
29. Turn bolt over and use thin end of cocking lever to pry accelerato stop from bottom of bolt.
30. Depress sear and remove sear slide.
31. Remove sear and sear spring.
32. Tip the front end of the bolt upward and remove firing pin extension assembly.
33. Remove firing pin from firing pin extension assembly.
34. Drive accelerator pin assembly from barrel buffer body with swab holder. Remove buffer accelerator.
35. Use pointed end of M4 cleaning rod to remove breech lock pin assembly and breech lock from barrel extension assembly.
36. Remove belt holding pawl pin attaching front cartridge stop and rear cartridge stop assembly to receiver. Remove front cartridge stop and rear cartridge stop assembly.
37. Hold down on belt holding pawl assembly to prevent loss of springs
38. Remove belt holding pawl pin, belt holding pawl assembly, and 2 springs.
39. Raise loop of trigger lever pin and rotate pin until loop is in vertical position.
40. Reach inside receiver and hold trigger lever while removing trigge lever pin assembly. Remove trigger lever.
41. Utilizing the cleaning rods, bore brush, and RBC, dip the bore brush in RBC and run through chamber of barrel. Unscrew bore brush fro cleaning rods, remove rods from bore, re-screw bore brush to rods, and repeat process until clean.
42. Utilizing the cleaning rods and chamber brush, dip chamber brush i RBC and clean chamber using a clockwise twisting motion. Unscrew chamber brush from cleaning rods, remove rods from bore, re-screw chamber brush to rods, and repeat process until clean.
43. Remove chamber brush from the swab holder section, insert a cleaning swab in slot, then run clean swab through bore, from chamber end and back. Repeat until a clean swab is obtained.
44. Clean outside surface of the barrel with carbon removing compound.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

45. Wipe all surfaces dry with a clean wiping rag.
46. Inspect barrel locking notches for wear or breakdown.
47. Inspect barrel for rust.
48. Inspect bore for bulges, missing bands, or large pits.
49. Inspect chamber for bulges or large pits.
50. Lubricate barrel.
51. Inspect back plate guides for burrs or bent conditions.
52. Check back plate latch and back plate latch lock for proper functioning.
53. Ensure locking pins are in place.
54. Check trigger for proper functioning.
55. Check bolt latch release for proper functioning.
56. Ensure handle grips do not move freely and are not cracked.
57. Check bolt latch release lock for proper functioning.
58. Lubricate back plate assembly.
59. Clean all parts of the bolt assembly with a cleaning swab saturate with carbon removing compound.
60. Clean face of bolt with a cleaning swab saturated with RBC.
61. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
62. Inspect driving spring rod assembly for flat spots on springs, ensuring that springs operate freely and that rod and pin are not bent or broken.
63. Check movement of cartridge extractor in bolt. Cartridge extractor should raise and lower without binding.
64. Check movement of cartridge ejector observing for cracks and/or burrs.
65. Inspect bolt switch, cocking lever pin, cocking lever, accelerator stop lock, accelerator stop and sear slide for cracks, bends, and burrs
66. Inspect sear for cracks and burrs, and inspect sear notch for wear chips, or burrs. Inspect sear spring for breaks or lack of tension.
67. Inspect firing pin for cracks and chipped or sharp tip. Ensure th tip is smooth and well rounded.
68. Check firing pin extension for cracks, burrs, and free movement in bolt. Ensure shoulder that engages sear has a sharp angle and is free of chips and burrs.
69. Ensure bolt is free of burrs and cracks. Firing pin hole must not be visibly out of round.
70. Lubricate the bolt and driving spring rod assembly.
71. Clean all parts of the barrel buffer assembly with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
72. Wipe all parts dry with a clean wiping rag.
73. Inspect buffer body lock for tension, staking, and retention in barrel buffer body.
74. Inspect buffer accelerator for broken claws or tips.
75. Inspect accelerator pin assembly for broken or missing spring.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

76. Inspect buffer spring for cracks or breaks.
77. Breech lock depressors must have a slight vertical (up and down) movement, but not have a lateral (side to side) movement.
78. Lubricate Barrel buffer assembly.
79. Clean all parts of the barrel extension assembly with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
80. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rag.
81. Inspect barrel extension assembly to ensure it is not bent and that the bolt guide ways are smooth and free of burrs.
82. Visually inspect threads of barrel extension assembly for any damage.
83. Ensure barrel locking spring is staked and fully seated in its groove. Ensure the locking end of the spring has good tension and that the lug is not damaged.
84. Inspect breech lock pin assembly for broken or missing spring.
85. Check breech lock for smooth movement in guide ways of barrel extension assembly.
86. Lubricate barrel extension assembly.
87. Clean all surfaces of retracting slide handle with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
88. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
89. Inspect retracting slide handle for cracks or other visible damage observing for weak or broken retracting springs.
90. Ensure cotter pins are present and in good condition.
91. Ensure safety wire is in place and properly laced.
92. Lubricate retracting slide handle.
93. Clean all surfaces of receiver assembly with a cleaning swab saturated with carbon removing compound.
94. Wipe all parts dry with clean wiping rags.
95. Ensure the feed-way is clear of obstructions.
96. Inspect belt holding pawl brackets for looseness, bends, or cracks
97. Inspect side plates for bends that would effect movement of any internal components.
98. Inspect for cracks and burrs at back plate grooves.
99. Check operating rear sight, ensuring free-movement of the windage and elevation screws.
100. Ensure leaf assembly has good spring tension and sight assembly is secured tightly to receiver.
101. Ensure bolt stop is present and in good condition.
102. Ensure trigger lever moves freely without binding.
103. Ensure trigger lever pin locks in place.
104. Ensure cotter pin is in place on extractor switch.
105. Apply a light coat of lubricating oil to all parts of receiver group prior to assembly in accordance with lubrication guide.
106. Install trigger lever bar in receiver.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

107. Align hole in trigger lever bar with mounting hole in receiver.
108. Place trigger lever pin assembly, loop end vertical, in assembly hole on left side of receiver.
109. Match key on trigger lever pin assembly with keyway in side plate of receiver and install pin completely.
110. Rotate trigger lever pin assembly 90 degrees to lock securely in place and down out of way.
111. Check that trigger lever bar moves freely.
112. Place right hand rear cartridge stop assembly and front cartridge stop on belt holding pawl bracket.
113. Install belt holding pawl pin with hooked end to rear.
114. Seat belt holding pawl springs in place on belt holding pawl bracket.
115. Place belt holding pawl assembly on springs. Compress springs and insert belt holding pawl pin.
116. Install breech lock in barrel extension assembly with double beveled edge up and to the front of barrel extension assembly.
117. Install breech lock pin assembly in barrel extension assembly. Ensure both ends of breech lock pin assembly are flush with sides of barrel extension assembly.
118. Place buffer accelerator into barrel buffer body, aligning mounting holes.
119. Install barrel buffer pin assembly. Ensure both ends of the barrel buffer pin assembly are flush with the sides of the barrel buffer body.
120. Align key on barrel buffer assembly with key slot in barrel buffer body, and slide barrel buffer assembly into barrel buffer body.
121. Hold barrel buffer assembly with buffer accelerator up and engage notch on shank of barrel extension assembly with cross groove in piston rod of barrel buffer assembly.
122. Align breech lock depressors in grooves of barrel extension assembly and push barrel buffer assembly forward, joining the 2 assemblies.
123. Attach firing pin to firing pin extension assembly.
124. Place firing pin extension assembly into bolt with notch of firing pin extension assembly down.
125. Slide firing pin extension assembly forward so that tip of firing pin protrudes from face of bolt.
126. Place sear spring in recess on bolt.
127. Slide sear down into vertical grooves at rear of bolt with wedge shaped lug pointed outward and upward.
128. Compress sear spring by pressing down on sear. Install sear slid from left side of bolt in grooves of bolt with "V" notch down.
129. Insert pin end of accelerator stop through bottom of bolt.
130. Turn bolt over and place forked end of accelerator stop lock on notched end of accelerator stop.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

131. Using wedge shaped end of the cocking lever as a tool, press down on the flat end of the accelerator stop lock, and swing it into groove on the left side of bolt.
132. Insert cocking lever with rounded nose on lower end of lever to rear into the slot in top of the bolt.
133. Align hole in cocking lever with holes in the bolt. Insert cocking lever pin from left side.
134. Push cocking lever forward to charge firing pin and return cockin lever to rearward position.
135. Trip firing pin by depressing top of sear with swab holder sectio
136. Place cocking lever in forward position after testing the firing pin release.
137. Place bolt switch in position so that the feed groove is continuous for feed direction selected.
138. Hold cartridge extractor in vertical position and insert shank en of cartridge extractor into left side of bolt.
139. Rotate cartridge extractor downward to full horizontal position.
140. Check that flange on bottom of cartridge extractor has engaged shoulder on bolt.
141. Install bolt assembly into barrel extension and buffer assembly.
142. Install barrel buffer assembly, barrel extension assembly and bol assembly into the receiver.
143. Push bolt assembly forward into receiver until bolt latch engages notches in top of bolt assembly.
144. Raise bolt latch and push bolt assembly into receiver.
145. Align hole in bolt assembly with stud assembly hole in receiver and install bolt stud in hole in bolt assembly.
146. Place bolt in forward position.
147. Install driving spring rod assembly in upper right hand corner of bolt. Push forward and to the right until drive spring rod assembly engages in hole in side plate of receiver and not in the groove for the back plate.
148. Install back plate assembly in receiver grooves. Pull back plate latch lock while lifting up on back plate latch. Lower back plate assembly down until engaged in receiver.
149. Retract bolt far enough for barrel locking spring lug to center i barrel locking spring hole on right side of receiver.
150. Install and screw barrel assembly completely into receiver. Unscrew barrel assembly until 2 clicks are heard.
151. Place the weapon in the single-shot mode.
152. Open the cover and lock the bolt to the rear. The bolt should stay to the rear in single-shot mode.
153. Hold the retractor slide handle, press bolt latch release, and ride the bolt forward.
154. Press down on the trigger; weapon should fire. Check T-slot to ensure the firing pin does protrude.
155. Place the weapon in automatic fire mode.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

156. Pull the retractor slide handle to the rear and hold, bolt should not lock to the rear.
157. Release the pressure on the retractor slide handle and ride the bolt forward.
158. Make sure firing pin does not protrude.
159. Press trigger; weapon should fire.
160. Make sure the firing pin does protrude.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02498A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machineguns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
 2. FM 23-65 Browning Machinegun Caliber .50 HB, M2
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 123

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for SL-3 gear for a MK19 heavy machinegun

Condition: Given SL-3 gear for a MK19 heavy machinegun cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-15.1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove all dirt and rust from traversing and elevating mechanism.
2. Extend the traversing and elevating mechanism's elevating mechanism and clean far ends of elevating screw.
3. Clean elevation scale to ensure scale can be read without difficult
4. Rotate traversing hand-wheel and clean traversing screw.
5. Inspect the traversing and elevation mechanism for readability of scales and cleanliness of far ends of the traversing and elevating mechanism screws. Perform function check by testing for dead clicks.
6. Lubricate the traversing and elevating mechanism in accordance with lubrication guide, especially the threads on screws and hand-wheels.
7. Clean all dirt and rust from the M3 tripod.
8. Remove the tripod legs by unscrewing the leg clamping handle on the tripod. Press down on the indexing lever, and remove the leg of the tripod.
9. Remove all rust and dirt from the legs, utilizing CLP and wire brus
10. Remove all rust and dirt from the upper leg, ensuring the inside i free of dirt and corrosion.
11. Visually inspect the tripod components for wear, cracks, dents and damage. Ensure springs are free of rust, corrosion, and deformation.
12. Ensure all parts are properly installed and are in working condition.
13. Insert pintle into pintle bushing ensuring it locks in place.
14. Lubricate the tripod with CLP. Pay special attention to the sleeve and the sleeve latch.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Clean all surfaces of the MK64 carriage and cradle assembly with a dry rag.
16. Inspect the MK64 for binding and damaged or missing retaining pins chains, cotter pins, self locking screws, pintle, pintle lock assembly, and bolts. Check all welded areas for cracks. If paint is removed from the assembly, touch up or repaint.
17. Lightly lubricate all moving parts, and test for smooth operation while working in the lubricant.
18. Clean all surfaces of the pintle adapter assembly with a dry rag.
19. Inspect for missing or damage to the screw, cable, pintle, and quick release pin.
20. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
21. Lubricate the quick release pin.
22. Clean the train and elevation assembly with a dry rag.
23. Inspect for missing or broken screws, washers, nuts, handles, and the chain.
24. Check for bare metal where paint has worn off, and touch up the upper part of the adapter.
25. Lightly lubricate all moving parts, and test for smooth operation, while working in the lubricant.
26. Clean the pintle and MK64 mounting adapter with a clean dry rag.
27. Inspect pintle and mounts for cracks and damage. Check for missing bolts, cotter pins, and washers.
28. Lubricate all surfaces with CLP.
29. Clean the ammunition mount assemblies with a dry rag.
30. Inspect the ammunition mount assemblies for missing screws, chains cotter pins, retaining pins, welded pins, and straight pins. Check all welds for cracks. Check for binding or broken springs.
31. Lightly lubricate all surfaces with CLP.
32. Clean the gun and barrel cover with hot soapy water.
33. Inspect for broken zipper, excessive wear or deterioration

REFERENCES

1. TM 08686A-13&P/1 Mount, Machinegun, MK64
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 162

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M224 60mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 60mm mortar, tools, and authorized cleaning gear and lubricants.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08206A-10/1A.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for foreign matter in cannon tube.
2. Look for bulges, dents, cracks, missing or damaged parts, or evidence of gas leakage around breech cap.
3. Place firing selector at (TRIGGER FIRE) T, (SAFE) S, and (DROP FIRE) D. Check safety by squeezing the trigger. Trigger should not fire mortar with firing selector on S or D. Trigger should click loudly with firing selector at T.
4. Check for illumination of range indicator assembly.
5. Check for smooth operation of elevating mechanism.
6. Check for smooth operation of traversing mechanism.
7. Check for smooth operation of cross-leveling mechanism.
8. Leg must move in and out smoothly with plain wing-nut loosened.
9. Extend shock absorbers. They must return smoothly, without binding to original position when released.
10. Ensure collar locks securely.
11. Check M7 base plate for cracks or breaks.
12. Check locking cap for smooth 360 rotation.
13. Insert base cap of canon into socket of M8 base plate. Close latch. Ensure latch pin seats and locks, and check for retention of base plate on cannon.
14. Check M64A1 sight unit for the illumination of telescope, coarse elevation scale, coarse elevation scale arrow, cross-level vial, fine elevation scale, fine elevation index arrow, coarse azimuth (deflection) index arrow, elevation vial, fine azimuth (deflection) scale, and coarse azimuth (deflection) scale.
15. Check eye piece for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
16. Check eye-shield vent holes for dirt.
17. Ensure latching lever secures sight unit mount to dovetail.
18. Ensure bubbles in level vials will move and vials are not cracked or loose in mount.
19. Ensure vial cover rotates freely.
20. Check elevation knob and deflection knob for smooth operation.
21. Ensure backlash on knobs doesn't exceed 0.5 mils.
22. Ensure the fine elevation scale slips only when the screws are loosened.
23. Check to assure the locking knobs provide tension on the deflection and elevation control knobs.
24. Inspect bore sight lens for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
25. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
26. Ensure mounting surfaces are free of nicks and burrs.
27. Check night aiming devices for illumination in a darkened area.
28. Check for missing or damaged radiation warning, data plate, or other parts.
29. Check for evidence of tampering.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

30. Check 10558A-SD weapons record book for entries of round expenditure.
31. Check M14 aiming posts for accountability.
32. Check M14 aiming posts for cleanliness and serviceability.
33. Check the aiming post case for excessive wear and cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08206A-10/1A Operator's Manual, M224 60mm Lightweight Company Mortar
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 169 RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M252 81mm mortar

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete 81mm mortar, authorized cleaning gear and lubricants.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09922A-10/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Check for foreign matter in cannon.
2. Look for bulges, dents, cracks, rust, and missing or damaged parts, on the cannon or blast attenuator device. Look for evidence of gas leakage around breech plug and firing pin.
3. Ensure the weapon has been bore scoped and pullover gauged within 9 days prior to firing.
4. Check mount for cracks, broken welds, rust, loose, missing, or damaged parts.
5. Ensure smooth operation of elevating mechanism.
6. Ensure smooth operation of traversing mechanism.
7. Ensure smooth operation of cross-leveling mechanism.
8. Ensure the barrel clamp assembly operates properly and holds the barrel securely.
9. Extend buffers. They must return smoothly, without binding, to original position when released.
10. Check base plate for cracks, loose, missing, or damaged parts.
11. Check socket cap for smooth 360 rotation.
12. Check M64A1 sight unit for the illumination of telescope, coarse elevation scale, coarse elevation scale arrow, cross-level vial, fine elevation scale, fine elevation index arrow, coarse azimuth (deflection) index arrow, elevation vial, fine azimuth (deflection) scale, and coarse azimuth (deflection) scale.
13. Check eye piece for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
14. Check eye-shield vent holes for dirt.
15. Ensure latching lever secures sight unit mount to dovetail.
16. Ensure bubbles in level vials will move and vials are not cracked or loose in mount.
17. Ensure vial cover rotates freely.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

18. Inspect elevation knob and deflection knob for smooth operation.
19. Ensure backlash on knobs doesn't exceed 0.5 mils.
20. Ensure the fine elevation scale slips only when the screws are loosened.
21. Ensure the locking knobs provide tension on the deflection and elevation control knobs.
22. Inspect bore sight lens for dirt, cracks, or fogging.
23. Ensure bore sight level bubbles will move and vials are not broken or loose in mounting.
24. Check bore sight eye-shield for damage.
25. Ensure mounting surfaces are free of nicks and burrs.
26. Check bore sight straps and clamp assembly for serviceability.
27. Check night aiming devices for illumination in a darkened area.
28. Check for missing or damaged radiation warning, data plate, or other parts.
29. Check for evidence of tampering.
30. Check 10558A-SD weapons record book for entries of round expenditure.
31. Check M14 aiming posts for accountability.
32. Check M14 aiming posts for cleanliness and serviceability.
33. Check the aiming post case for excessive wear and cleanliness.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 185

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for a MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW)

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete MK153 shoulder-launched multipurpose assault weapon (SMAW), cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 08673A-10/1A.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place the weapon on SAFE.
2. Remove the rocket by turning the rocket counter-clockwise and pulling to the rear.
3. Remove the magazine by pushing the magazine release and pulling downwards on the magazine.
4. Pull cocking handle to the rear.
5. Visually inspect the chamber for spent ammunition or live rounds.
6. Release the cocking handle.
7. Remove the sling.
8. Remove the telescopic sight by turning the captivated thumbscrew counter-clockwise.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Depress the end of the recoil spring/buffer assembly.
10. Remove the tube cover.
11. Remove the recoil spring/buffer assembly.
12. Pull cocking lever to the rear.
13. Remove the cocking lever.
14. Remove the bolt/carrier assembly.
15. Disassemble the bolt/carrier assembly by rotating it counter-clockwise until the bolt separates into 2 pieces.
16. Clean the spotting rifle with an AP brush moistened with CLP, to remove all dirt, rust, and carbon.
17. Inspect the spotting rifle for carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
18. Lightly lubricate the spotting rifle with CLP.
19. Clean the recoil spring/buffer assembly with an AP brush moistened with CLP to remove all dirt, rust, and carbon.
20. Inspect the recoil spring/buffer assembly for carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
21. Lightly lubricate the recoil spring/buffer assembly with CLP.
22. Clean the bolt/carrier assembly with an AP brush moistened with CLP, to remove all dirt, rust, and carbon.
23. Inspect the bolt/carrier assembly carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
24. Lightly lubricate the bolt/carrier assembly with CLP.
25. Clean the launch tube with wiping clothes dampened with CLP and an 83mm bore brush.
26. Inspect the launch tube carbon, dirt, rust, and serviceability.
27. Utilize a dry cloth and a 83mm bore brush to remove all traces of CLP.
28. Clean the telescopic sights with ethyl alcohol and lens tissue.
29. Inspect the telescopic sights for dirt, rust, and serviceability.
30. Assemble the bolt/carrier by turning the rear insert carrier counter-clockwise, until it stops.
31. Insert the bolt/carrier into the spotting rifle.
32. Insert the cocking handle into the bolt/carrier.
33. Insert the recoil spring/buffer assembly.
34. Insert tube cover onto the spotting rifle.
35. Attach telescopic sight to the sight mount by rotating the captivated thumbscrew clockwise.
36. Attach sling.
37. Place weapon in the SAFE position.
38. Squeeze the trigger. Nothing should happen.
39. Place the weapon in the FIRE position.
40. Squeeze the trigger. Nothing should happen.
41. Place the charging lever in the CHARGE position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

42. Squeeze the trigger. Listen for the audible click.
43. Place the weapon in the SAFE position.
44. Squeeze the trigger. Nothing should happen.
45. Place the weapon in the FIRE position.
46. Depress launch lever. Nothing should happen.
47. Squeeze the trigger. Listen for an audible click.
48. Pull the cocking lever back.
49. Return cocking lever forward.
50. Place weapon in the CHARGE position.
51. Squeeze the trigger, listening for an audible click.
52. Depress launch lever forward.
53. Squeeze the trigger. Observe the charging lever returning to the forward position.
54. Place the weapon in the SAFE position.

REFERENCES

1. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83mm (SMAW) MK153 MOD 0
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 195

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M98A1 Javelin command launch unit

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete M98A1 Javelin command launch unit, and cleaning gear.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09397B-12/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Clean the main housing with rags by removing all dirt.
1. Inspect the main housing for damage.
2. Clean absorbers with rags by removing all dirt.
3. Inspect the absorbers for rips and tears.
4. Clean lens covers with rags by removing all dirt.
5. Inspect lens covers for damage.
6. Clean night vision sight lens with water.
7. Inspect the night vision sight lens for damage.
8. Inspect humidity indicator for serviceability.
9. Clean round interface connector with an all-purpose brush, by removing all dirt.
10. Inspect round interface connector for damage.
11. Clean round interface bracket with rags, by removing all dirt.
12. Inspect round interface bracket for damage.
13. Clean the right handgrip with rags, by removing all dirt.
14. Inspect the right handgrip for damage.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Clean the trigger with rags, by removing all dirt.
16. Inspect the trigger for damage.
17. Clean the GATE ADJ/CTRS switch with rags, by removing all dirt.
18. Inspect the GATE ADJ/CTRS switch for damage.
19. Clean the ATTK SEL switch, by removing all dirt.
20. Inspect the ATTK SEL switch for damage.
21. Clean the FLTR switch with rags, by removing all dirt.
22. Inspect the FLTR switch for damage.
23. Clean the left handgrip with rags, by removing all dirt.
24. Inspect the left handgrip for damage.
25. Clean the seeker trigger with rags, by removing all dirt.
26. Inspect the seeker trigger for damage.
27. Clean the SGT SEL switch with rags, by removing all dirt.
28. Inspect the SGT SEL switch for damage.
29. Clean the FOCUS switch with rags, by removing all dirt.
30. Inspect the FOCUS switch for damage.
31. Clean the power switch with rags, by removing all dirt.
32. Inspect the power switch for damage.
33. Clean the battery compartment with rags, by removing all dirt.
34. Inspect the battery compartment for damage.
35. Clean the BA5590/U battery with rags, by removing all dirt.
36. Inspect the BA5590/U battery for damage.
37. Clean the diopter ring with rags, by removing all dirt.
38. Inspect the diopter for damage.
39. Clean the eye piece with rags, by removing all dirt.
40. Inspect the eye piece for damage.
41. Clean the detector dewar cooler with rags, by removing all dirt.
42. Inspect the detector dewar cooler for damage.
43. Insert the BA5590/U battery into the battery compartment.
44. Close the battery compartment.
45. Set the power switch to the NIGHT position.
46. Adjust diopter ring for clarity.
47. Verify day indicators are lit.
48. Allow 2.5 minutes for the night vision sight to cool down.
49. Verify night sight NOT READY indicator goes out.
50. Turn power switch to TEST position and release.
51. Observe all 14 indicators being lit for about 5 seconds.
52. Observe all 14 indicators go out.
53. Observe software version data display.
54. Operate triggers, as prompted.
55. Observe checkerboard gray scale.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

56. Operate command launch unit switches.
57. Observe corresponding indicator lights as switch is activated.
58. Observe day indicator is lit.
59. Turn off the command launch unit and set aside.
60. Inspect command launch unit carry bag for tears, rips, and holes.
61. Remove and inventory the contents of the command launch unit carry bag.
62. Clean the command launch unit carry bag, by removing all dirt.
63. Replace all components to the command launch unit carry bag.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 196

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M98A1 Javelin missile

Condition: Given an M98A1 Javelin encased missile and authorized cleaning gear.

Standard: In accordance with TM 09397B-12/1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the forward end cap for damage.
2. Inspect the guide pin of the forward end cap for damage.
3. Remove forward end cap, and inspect seeker dome for damage.
4. Replace the forward end cap.
5. Inspect the BCU status indicator for serviceability of the BCU.
6. Inspect the BCU for damage.
7. Inspect the CLU interface connector for damage.
8. Inspect the bracket for damage.
9. Inspect the latch assembly for damage.
10. Inspect the latch release for damage.
11. Inspect the shoulder pad for damage.
12. Inspect the shoulder strap for damage.
13. Inspect the rear end cap for damage.
14. Inspect the launch tube assembly for damage.

REFERENCES

1. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: IULC - A - 215

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for an M220E4 TOW2 weapon system

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete, M220E4 TOW2 weapon system, authorized cleaning gear, and lubricant.

Standard: In accordance with TM 9-1425-450-12.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Remove the thermal sight from the storage case.
2. Inspect the thermal sight for damage.
3. Rinse the thermal sight lens by pouring clean drinking water over the surface of the lenses.
4. Lightly dab a cotton pad moistened with lens cleaning solution on the thermal sight lens surface, covering surface completely.
5. Rinse lens cleaning solution off the thermal sight lens by pouring clean drinking water over the lens surface.
6. Clean thermal sight electrical connections with a cotton swab moistened with alcohol.
7. Clean the exterior of the thermal sight with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
8. Clean the thermal sight eye piece by wiping with rags to clean off loose dirt and dust.
9. Remove the optical sight from the optical sight shroud bag.
10. Inspect the optical sight for damage.
11. Blow loose dust off the surface of the optical sight lenses by using a rubber syringe. Use lens paper moistened with alcohol to remove grease and remaining dirt.
12. Clean optical sight electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
13. Clean the exterior of the optical sight with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
14. Clean the optical sight eye piece by wiping with rags to clean off loose dirt and dust.
15. Inspect the traversing unit for damage.
16. Clean traversing unit electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
17. Clean the exterior of the traversing unit with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
18. Inspect the tripod for damage.
19. Clean the exterior of the tripod with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
20. Remove the missile guidance set cover.
21. Inspect the missile guidance set for damage.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

22. Clean the exterior of the missile guidance set with a clean wiping rag. Remove heavy dirt with a scrub brush. Remove grease with a wiping rag and alcohol.
23. Clean the missile guidance set electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
24. Inspect the battery assembly for damage or corrosion.
25. Clean battery assembly with a scrub brush for dirt. Wet a wiping rag with water, and wipe the battery assembly with the rag. Dry the battery assembly with a clean, dry cloth.
26. Open the battery power conditioner lid, and inspect the battery power conditioner for damage.
27. Clean the battery power conditioner with a wet wiping rag moistened with water.
28. Clean the battery power conditioner electrical connections with a swab moistened with alcohol.
29. Inspect the launch tube for damage.
30. Clean the launch tube by wiping the launch tube with a wiping rag moistened with water. Remove grease or dirt with a wet wiping rag with alcohol.
31. Remove the bore sight collimator from the carrying case and inspect for damage.
32. Blow loose dust off the surface of the lenses by using a rubber syringe. Clean the bore sight collimator lenses with lens paper moistened with alcohol.
33. Clean the external components of the bore sight collimator with a wet wiping rag moistened with water.

REFERENCES

1. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 311

RFS:

Write a warning order

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order from higher headquarters, paper, and pen.

Standard: In accordance with FMFM 6-5.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct initial estimate of the situation.
2. Determine how the mission will be organized, which attachments will be needed, and the time line. Identify implied missions will have to be accomplished if the mission is to succeed.
3. Write the situation paragraph as a brief statement of the friendly and enemy situation.
4. Write the mission, exactly as it was received from higher headquarters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Write general instructions to include general and special organization, uniform and equipment common to all, weapons ammunition and equipment, chain of command, and the time schedule.
6. Write special instructions to subordinate leaders, special purpose teams, and key individuals.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 315

RFS:

Write a five paragraph order

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order from higher headquarters, paper, and pen.

Standard: By developing an order which supports achievement of higher headquarters' mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the mission from higher headquarters' mission, commander' intent, and specified tasks.
2. Analyze the enemy situation to determine the effect on the unit.
3. Analyze the friendly situation to determine the effect on the unit.
4. Analyze the effect of attachments and/or detachments on the unit.
5. Analyze the higher scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
6. Determine the unit scheme of maneuver.
7. Determine the unit fire support plan.
8. Task organize the unit.
9. Analyze higher administration and logistics to determine the effect on the unit.
10. Determine unit administrative and logistic requirements.
11. Analyze higher command and signal plan.
12. Determine the unit command and signal plan.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 318

RFS:

Issue an order

Condition: Given a completed 5 paragraph order and a terrain model, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with FMFM 6-5.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the unit around the terrain model.
2. Take role to ensure all members are present.
3. If issuing a mission order, receive a status report for the unit and Team Leaders on the preparatory tasks assigned to them when the warning order was issued.
4. Precede the issuance of the order with the orientation.
5. Issue the entire order before taking questions.
6. Conduct a question and answer session.
7. Conclude the issue process with a time check, and announce the next event to be accomplished.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 319

RFS:

Prepare a patrol warning order

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order to conduct a patrol from higher headquarters, paper and pen, and assigned patrol members.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-11.3.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare brief statements on the enemy and friendly situations and capabilities.
2. Clearly state the mission of the patrol.
3. List all members of the patrol.
4. Establish the chain of command.
5. Assign positions and duties in elements and teams to all patrol members, as required.
6. Cover all necessary individual requirements in the assignment of positions and duties.
7. Follow established principles in organizing the patrol into element and teams.
8. Assign a weapon for each patrol member, to include the provision for a suppressed weapon capability.
9. List all special equipment required to accomplish the mission.
10. Designate the proper element to carry the special equipment.
11. Select a common uniform and equipment, based on weather, terrain, and mission.
12. Publish a time schedule which includes the date and time of the issuance of the patrol order; the rehearsal; the inspection schedule; and the issuance of supplies, equipment, and weapons.
13. Ensure all designated patrol members initial the patrol warning order.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. Issue specific instructions to key individuals, to include duties and responsibilities.
15. Issue warning order within 30 minutes of receiving a warning order from supported unit.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 320

RFS:

Issue a patrol order

Condition: Given a completed patrol order and a terrain model, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-11.3.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure all patrol members are present prior to issuing the order.
2. Conduct an orientation briefing for all members prior to issuing the patrol order.
3. Use a terrain model, map sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan.
4. Use as a map supplement, if feasible, an aerial photographic which has the scale determined and has a grid superimposed.
5. Provide a weather forecast for the patrol period.
6. Describe the terrain over which the patrol is to operate.
7. Identify the size, type, capabilities, suspected locations, and recent activities of enemy units known or suspected to be in the area of operations.
8. Provide planned routes of other patrols operating in the immediate area.
9. Brief the fire support plan, which includes all available fire support and the location of prearranged targets.
10. Identify any attachments to the patrol.
11. Specify the patrol mission.
12. Provide a complete concept of the patrol's operation.
13. Specify the task of each element and all key individuals.
14. Include all coordinating instructions to include: time of departure and return, primary and alternate routes, organization for movement, procedures for crossing danger areas while en route, actions on enemy contact, actions at rallying points, actions at the objective area, actions at obstacles, emergency extractions, and rules of engagement.
15. Brief the patrol in the event of enemy prisoner of war capture, injury to personnel, and inadvertent compromise.
16. Brief plan for insertion in detail.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

17. Specify times and places of rehearsals and inspections.
18. Brief those administrative and logistics items, requiring highlighting, not covered in the warning order or not previously mentioned.
19. Review all signals to be used within the patrol.
20. Brief communications as a separate annex to the patrol order.
21. Identify time and frequency of required reports to higher command element.
22. Cover patrol and unit challenge and passwords.
23. Specify the locations of the patrol leader, assistant patrol leader, and element leaders during all stages of the patrol.
24. Ensure all personnel understand the order and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 378

RFS:

Navigate using the AN/PSN-11 Precision Lightweight GPS Receiver (PLGR)

Condition: Given a map, protractor, map pen, designated objective(s), AN/PSN-11 PLGR, wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By arriving within 100 meters of each designated checkpoint.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine six-digit grid of objective from map plot.
2. Input destination coordinates into global positioning system.
3. Determine current location coordinates from global positioning system reading.
4. Determine azimuth and distance to objective from global positioning system.
5. Move towards objective.
6. Monitor progress.
7. Zeroize the AN/PSN-11 Precision Lightweight GPS Receiver (PLGR).

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5825-291-13 Satellite Signals: Navigation Set AN/PSN-11 (PLGR)
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: IULC - A - 381

RFS:

Construct a map overlay

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order, topographical map, protractor, overlay material, and map pen.

Standard: Which contains each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Orient the overlay to the area of operation.
2. Place register marks on the overlay.
3. Plot topographical deviations to the map.
4. Plot mission control measures.
5. Plot fire support control measures.
6. Plot unit symbols.
7. Plot weapons and equipment symbols.
8. Annotate title and objective.
9. Annotate time and date.
10. Annotate map reference.
11. Annotate author.
12. Annotate legend.
13. Annotate security classification.
14. Annotate additional information.
15. Submit copy to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Graphics
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 409

RFS:

Plan for the employment of supporting arms

Condition: Given a map and a mission order with a commander's intent for fire support.

Standard: To support the scheme of maneuver in accordance with higher headquarters' order and commander's intent for fire support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine organic and non-organic fire support assets available.
2. Identify fire support control measures.
3. Plan targets in support of the scheme of maneuver.
4. Identify priority targets on known, suspected, and likely enemy positions/avenues of approach.
5. Submit list of targets to higher headquarters.
6. Receive target list from higher headquarters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Analyze higher headquarters' target list.
8. Make changes to fire support plan.
9. Integrate fire support plan with scheme of maneuver.
10. Disseminate fire support plan.
11. Adjust the fire support plan based on METT-TSL.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-7 MAGTF Fires
 2. FMFM 6-18 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
 3. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
 4. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
 5. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 411

RFS:

Direct a Close Air Support (CAS) strike

Condition: Given a scenario involving a Close Air Support (CAS) strike with no Forward Air Controller (FAC), a topographic map, compass, protractor, a target, an attack aircraft with ordnance, and an information sheet containing: an aircraft call sign, mission number, type ordnance load, enemy situation, friendly situation, attack restrictions, and a radio frequency.

Standard: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for the aircraft's arrival by establishing communications.
2. Obtain the commander's approval before sending the Close Air Support (CAS) request.
3. Consider the air threat situation.
4. Confirm location of all friendly ground units.
5. Plan for and implement Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses (SEAD), as required based on the assessment of the air threat.
6. Send immediate requests to the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC).
7. Transmit immediate Close Air Support (CAS) requests within 2 minute of target identification.
8. Transmit the 9 line brief to the pilot when the aircraft reaches the CP.
9. Coordinates SEAD fires, if required.
10. Transmit the Time To Target (TTT) to the pilot after the 9 line brief.
11. Ensure target is properly marked during aircraft's acquisition window.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Mark the target using artillery, mortars, or Naval Gunfire (NGF). The mark should be within 300 meters of the target and 30 seconds before Time To Target (TTT).
13. Give the pilot final adjustment, in meters, from the marking round (reference point, to the target).
14. Ensure the aircraft is safely engaging the correct target prior to clearing the aircraft.
15. Ensure attack aircraft is lined up on proper target before, "Cleared hot."
16. Knows the proper method to abort an attack, "Abort, abort, abort."
17. Maintain positive control of the aircraft at all times.
18. Use covered communications with attack aircraft.
19. Ensure radio transmissions are short, concise, and to the point.
20. Demonstrate the ability to assign new targets to the aircraft while in-flight.
21. If working 2 aircraft in a section, transmit a correction to the second aircraft based on the ordnance impact of the first aircraft's ordnance.
22. Transmit effects of the strike to the aircraft and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC), as appropriate.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-20-40 Fire Support For Brigade Operations (Heavy)
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 439

RFS:

Transmit a Casualty Report (CasRep)

Condition: Given a map, a casualty, and a radio, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By including each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Transmit casualty's name, initials, and last 4 digits of social security number.
2. Transmit date and time of incident.
3. Transmit 6 digit grid location of casualty.
4. Transmit type of wound.
5. Transmit portion of body effected.
6. Transmit seriousness of the wound.
7. Transmit requirement for MEDEVAC, if appropriate.
8. Transmit the activity in which the casualty was engaged.
9. Transmit the cause of the wound.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: IULC - A - 453

RFS:

Direct the MEDEVAC of a casualty

Condition: Given a unit in a tactical environment that has sustained casualty/casualties.

Standard: To evacuate casualty/casualties with minimal impact on unit mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Direct the application of medical treatment.
2. Direct the movement of casualty/casualties to an established casualty collection point.
3. Identify precedence assigned to the casualty.
4. Identify casualty/casualties requiring evacuation.
5. Submit a casualty report to higher headquarters.
6. Make arrangement/request for evacuation by most appropriate and available means.
7. Direct preparation of casualty/casualties for movement.
8. Move casualty to designated evacuation point.
9. Conduct link-up and turnover casualties.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-02G First Aid
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 474

RFS:

Transmit Helicopter Landing Zone (HLZ) brief

Condition: Given a map, radio, and a landing zone, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By including each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine frequency.
2. Transmit mission number.
3. Transmit location of landing zone.
4. Transmit unit call sign.
5. Transmit method of HLZ marking.
6. Transmit wind direction and velocity.
7. Transmit the elevation, size, and shape of the HLZ.
8. Transmit the location, size, and type of any obstacles.
9. Transmit friendly positions.
10. Transmit known and suspected enemy positions.
11. Transmit time, direction, and distance last enemy fire was received

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

12. Transmit clearance to fire, if authorized.
13. Transmit approach and retirement directions.
14. Transmit quantity of personnel and equipment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Helicopter landing zone

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 7-40 Helicopter Insertion and Extraction
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 475

RFS:

Lead a unit in helicopterborne operations

Condition: Given a unit, a supporting helicopter unit, and an order with a mission to conduct helicopterborne operations.

Standard: To ensure unit completes movement to landing zone and is prepared to continue mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct planning to include development of ground tactical plan, landing plan, air movement plan, loading plan, and staging plan.
2. Coordinate with helicopter unit(s).
3. Confirm load and bump plan.
4. Select and prepare zones for extract.
5. Supervise the enplaning of personnel and supplies aboard helicopter
6. Employ available fire support at insert landing zone, if situation dictates.
7. Supervise the deplaning of personnel and supplies from helicopters.
8. If there are multiple waves, secure landing zone for follow-on forces.
9. Conduct assigned mission

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-21 Tactical Fundamentals of Helicopterborne Operations
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 3. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 4. MCWP 3-24 Assault Air
 5. FMFM 6-21 Tactical Fundamentals of Helicopterborne Operations
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 500

RFS:

Lead a unit in preparations for combat

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct combat operations.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: To ensure unit is prepared to accomplish the mission in accordance with higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct Mission, Enemy, Troops, Terrain-Time (METT-T) analysis.
2. Issue warning order.
3. Task organize the unit for preparation.
4. Make a tentative plan.
5. Arrange reconnaissance.
6. Make reconnaissance.
7. Establish control measures.
8. Coordinate fire support.
9. Complete the plan.
10. Issue the order.
11. Forecast resupply requirements for sustainment of combat operation
12. Supervise inspections and weapons tests.
13. Conduct and supervise rehearsals.
14. Conduct communication checks.
15. Communicate plan to higher headquarters.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task applies to all combat operations.
2. Operational Risk Management (ORM) should be incorporated into the planning process.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCDP 5 Planning
 4. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 5. FMFRP 0-6 Marine Troop Leader's Guide
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 504

RFS:

Lead a unit in patrolling operations

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct patrolling operations.

Standard: To achieve intent of higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct map reconnaissance of assigned area and objective.
2. Request additional required assets and/or support from higher headquarters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

3. Submit patrol plan, overlay, and fire support plan to higher headquarters.
4. Conduct forward unit coordination prior to departure.
5. Conduct passage of friendly lines/insertion.
6. Execute patrol.
7. Submit appropriate reports, as required.
8. Conduct passage of friendly lines/extract.
9. Debrief the patrol.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Includes reconnaissance patrols and combat patrols.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 507

RFS:

Lead a unit in a convoy

Condition: Given a unit and an order to conduct a convoy.

Standard: To ensure the convoy moves at the stated speed, time, interval, and order, and arrives at the objective location at the time prescribed in the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine number of vehicles, type of convoy, and formation.
2. Assign assistant convoy commander and security commander.
3. Develop and disseminate plan for communications, disabled vehicles, bump plan, actions at halts, and security enroute.
4. Direct hardening of vehicles.
5. Stage vehicles for movement.
6. Conduct movement following prescribed route and designated speeds.
7. Report progress to higher headquarters using tactical control measures.
8. Maintain security during movement and at halts.
9. Respond appropriately to contact.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 4-9 Motor Transport
2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
3. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

EVENT: IULC - A - 510

RFS:

Lead a unit in an infiltration

Condition: Given a unit and an order with a mission to conduct an infiltration.

Standard: To move through an enemy area without disclosing the size, composition, or intentions of the unit to the enemy and to accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct map reconnaissance of the area and gather pertinent intelligence.
2. Identify control measures, to include infiltration lanes, check points for reporting, and link-up point(s).
3. Task organize the unit into infiltrating elements.
4. Release separate infiltration elements in order to avoid friendly encounters and to minimize exposure to the enemy.
5. Conduct infiltration.
6. Conduct link-up.
7. Debrief infiltration elements.
8. Report enemy positions to higher headquarters
9. Continue with assigned mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Task also applies to exfiltration.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 513

RFS:

Lead a unit in an attack

Condition: Given a unit, an objective, and an order with a mission to conduct an attack.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
3. Initiate prearranged fires.
4. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
5. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
7. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attack
8. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
9. Avoid committing units in a piecemeal fashion.
10. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
11. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance before transitioning into the consolidation.
12. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
13. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. Task can be performed as a deliberate or a hasty attack.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 514

RFS:

Lead a unit in an attack on a fortified strong point

Condition: Given a unit, a fortified enemy strong point, and an order with a mission to conduct an attack on a fortified strongpoint.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Task organize the unit to include assault element, security element and support element.
3. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
4. Initiate prearranged fires, to include suppression and obscuration fires on enemy observation posts.
5. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
6. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attack
7. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
8. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
9. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
10. Breach obstacles without committing additional forces.
11. Avoid committing units in a piecemeal fashion.
12. Maintain momentum of the attack by rotating lead unit and supplies

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
14. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance, before transitioning into the consolidation.
15. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
16. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 515

RFS:

Lead a unit in a mechanized attack

Condition: Given a unit, an attached mechanized unit, an objective, and an order with a mission to conduct a mechanized attack.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Coordinate with mechanized unit.
3. Incorporate mechanized assets, firepower, and mobility into plan an order.
4. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
5. Ensure vehicles remain dispersed in covered and concealed positions
6. Ensure all vehicles start engines together to disguise the size of the force.
7. Initiate prearranged fires.
8. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
9. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
10. Overcome enemy forces enroute to objective, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
11. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires, to support successes.
12. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attac
13. Avoid committing units in a piecemeal fashion.
14. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
15. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance, before transitioning into the consolidation.
16. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
17. Issue fragmentary orders to units, in preparation for follow-on missions.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-7J Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 3. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 4. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 517

RFS:

Lead a unit in an attack in an urban environment

Condition: Given a unit, an objective within urban environment, and an order with a mission to conduct operations in urbanized terrain.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack, to gain and maintain observation of enemy.
2. Task organize the unit to include assault element, security element and support element.
3. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
4. Isolate the object through direct and indirect fires.
5. Initiate prearranged fires, to include suppression and obscuration fires on enemy observation posts.
6. Cross line of departure at the specified time.
7. Gain a foothold in limited objectives.
8. Maintain communications with subordinate units.
9. Report crossing of tactical control measures and securing interim objectives to higher headquarters.
10. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
11. Breach obstacles, create friendly building accesses, and close off unnecessary accesses, without committing additional forces.
12. Maintain momentum of the attack by rotating lead unit and supplies
13. Seize the assigned objective.
14. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
15. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. MOUT Facility / MOUT training area

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 3. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 519

RFS:

Lead a unit in a night attack

Condition: Given a platoon, an objective, and an order with a specified or implied mission to conduct an attack at night.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan ahead of attack to gain and maintain observation of enemy and to provide guides for main body.
2. Identify level of support and type of night attack (supported/non supported, illuminated/nonilluminated).
3. Execute tactical deception, if planned.
4. Cross line of departure at the specified time.
5. Maintain light and noise discipline during movement phase.
6. Report crossing of tactical control measures to higher headquarters
7. Initiate attack with appropriate illumination and direct fire weapons
8. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
9. Breach obstacles without committing additional forces.
10. Commit reserve, only when necessary, and only to exploit success.
11. Pursue beyond objective to the limit of advance, before transitioning into the consolidation.
12. Report status of the attack to higher headquarters.
13. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 520

RFS:

Direct the employment of medium machineguns in offensive operations

Condition: Given a medium machinegun unit and an order with a mission to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective medium machinegun fires in support of

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support for machinegun units.
2. Provide appropriate signals for commence, shift, and cease.
3. Direct positioning of machinegun units to best observe and support scheme of maneuver.
4. Provide infantry security for machinegun unit.
5. Ensure fires commence, shift, and cease on signal to support the attack.
6. Anticipate displacement requirements to ensure continuous support.
7. Direct positioning of machinegun units in preparation for counterattack.
8. Reposition machinegun units for defense.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If weapons platoon assets are attached, employment is directed by attached unit commander.
2. This includes all offensive operations to include MOUT/mechanized/fortified strong point.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
 3. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 5. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 6. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 521

RFS:

Lead a heavy machinegun platoon in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given a mounted or dismounted heavy machinegun platoon and an order with a task to support offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective heavy machinegun fire in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Advise commander on employment of machineguns in the offense.
2. Attach/detach units, per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the attack.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Displace, as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all offensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 523

RFS:

Lead an anti-armor platoon in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given an anti-armor platoon and an order with a task to support offensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/detach units, per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the assault.
5. Displace, as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack and exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all offensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies, and Battalions
 2. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 526

RFS:

Lead a unit in defensive operations

Condition: Given a unit, an assigned area or sector from which to defend, and an order with a mission to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct map and physical reconnaissance of assigned area to determine the general lay of the defense, natural obstacles, likely enemy avenues of approach, and adjacent units.
2. Establish local security beyond proposed defensive area.
3. Coordinate with adjacent units.
4. Develop counterattack plan.
5. Establish crew served positions, ensuring mutual supporting fires. Identify final protective lines.
6. Identify subordinate unit primary positions. Ensure units tie in, at least by fire.
7. Identify dead space and cover by indirect fire.
8. Register final protective fires.
9. Ensure communications are established between units and to listenin post/observation posts (LP/OP).
10. Designate alternate and supplementary positions.
11. Collect subordinate unit fire plan sketches. Submit consolidated fire plan sketch to higher headquarters.
12. Ensure positions are being improved and noise and light discipline is enforced. Ensure the sleep plan is implemented.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all defensive operations, to include MOUT and countermechanized.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
 2. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 527

RFS:

Direct the employment of medium machineguns in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given a medium machinegun unit and an order with a mission to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective medium machinegun fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support and tentative primary defensive positions.
2. Determine type of fires to be employed, target precedence, and engagement criteria.
3. Emplace machineguns to best support defense.
4. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Ensure coordination is conducted with adjacent units.
6. Compile completed range cards, and ensure integration of fires, in accordance with defensive plan.
7. Supervise registration of fires.
8. Supervise delivery of fires for the defense and counterattack.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If weapons platoon assets are attached, employment is directed by attached unit commander.
2. This includes all defensive operations, to include MOUT and counter mechanized strong point.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 528

RFS:

Lead a heavy machinegun platoon in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given a heavy machinegun platoon and an order with a task to support defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/Detach units, per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the defensive operation.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
5. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This includes all defensive operations.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

EVENT: IULC - A - 530

RFS:

Lead an anti-armor platoon in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given an anti-armor platoon and an order with a task to support defensive operations.

Standard: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters' order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/Detach units per higher headquarters' order.
3. Position to support the defense.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
5. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 532

RFS:

Direct the resupply of a unit

Condition: Given a unit and an order with an implied or specified task requiring the resupply of the unit.

Standard: To ensure the unit can logistically support the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Begin detailed logistics planning upon receipt of higher headquarters order.
2. Identify actual, forecasted, and potential shortages in supplies and operational equipment.
3. Consolidate subordinate unit resupply requests.
4. Submit requests early in planning in order to not impair current or future operations.
5. Coordinate link-up point, resupply point(s), distribution point(s), and storage point(s) for equipment and ammunition.
6. Designate a security element and a recovery and distribution element.
7. Ensure supplies are tactically distributed, while maintaining security.
8. Continue with assigned mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FM 17-98 Scout Platoon
 2. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Reconnaissance Battalion
 3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 533

RFS:

Direct the employment of assault units in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given an assault unit and an order to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the assault unit in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method and type of support for the assault unit.
2. Request additional assets (demolitions, rockets, etc.).
3. Position assault unit with infantry security.
4. Direct the employment of rocket assets.
5. Direct the employment of demolitions.
6. Position assault unit to best support consolidation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 534

RFS:

Direct the employment of assault units in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given an assault unit and an order to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the assault unit in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support and tentative primary defensive positions.
2. Determine type of fires to be employed, target precedence, and engagement criteria.
3. Consider employment of assault unit to assist in construction of obstacles.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Emplace assault units to best support the defense.
5. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
6. Ensure coordination is conducted with adjacent units.
7. Compile completed range cards and ensure integration of fires, in accordance with defensive plan.
8. Supervise delivery of fires for the defense and counterattack.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 2. FM 5-102 Countermobility
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 535

RFS:

Direct the employment of 60mm mortars in support of offensive operations

Condition: Given a 60mm mortar section and an order to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the 60mm mortar section in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of employment, priority targets, priority of fires method of displacement, signals, and logistics.
2. Integrate employment plan with external fire support assets.
3. Designate initial and subsequent firing positions.
4. Anticipate and plan resupply requirements.
5. Anticipate displacement requirements, in order to maintain support.
6. Monitor Calls For Fire (CFF).
7. Deconflict requests for 60mm mortar fires.
8. Position 60mm mortar section to support consolidation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 536

RFS:

Direct the employment of 60mm mortars in support of defensive operations

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given a 60mm mortar section and an order to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective support from the 60mm mortar section in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of employment, priority targets, priority of fires tentative primary firing position, signals, and logistics.
2. Integrate employment plan with external fire support assets.
3. Position mortars to best support defense and counterattack plan.
4. Designate alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Ensure mortars sink base plates prior to registration fires.
6. Identify Final Protective Fire (FPF) location.
7. Register FPF.
8. Register additional planned targets, time and ammunition permitting
9. Ensure data for FPF is maintained on guns, when not firing on other targets.
10. Anticipate and plan resupply requirements.
11. Monitor Call For Fire (CFF).
12. Deconflict requests for 60mm mortar fires.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars

EVENT: IULC - A - 576

RFS:

Construct an Operational Risk Management (ORM) assessment

Condition: Given a training event.

Standard: To develop controls which reduce or eliminate risk hazards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct an operational analysis by listing the major steps of the operation.
2. Conduct a preliminary hazard analysis by listing the hazards associated with each step.
3. List the possible causes of the hazards.
4. Determine the degree of risk for each hazard in terms of severity and probability.
5. Develop controls for each hazard to eliminate the hazard or reduce the risk until the benefit is greater than the risk.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

6. Determine residual risk.
7. Make a risk decision.
8. Incorporate the selected controls into SOPs, Letters of Instruction (LOIs), orders, briefs, training, and rehearsals.
9. Communicate selected controls to the lowest level.
10. Enforce standards and controls.
11. Remain alert for changes and unexpected developments that require time critical or deliberate ORM.
12. Take corrective action, when necessary.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 5-12.1C Risk Management
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 577

RFS:

Develop preliminary training exercise

Condition: Given unit mission requirements, training standards, range orders, and appropriate doctrinal publications.

Standard: To meet unit combat readiness training requirements and unit mission requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive training requirements.
2. Identify training deficiencies, and determine requirements for preliminary training.
3. Develop preliminary exercise plan.
4. Review requirements in range orders and pertinent FMs, and arrange for reconnaissance.

REFERENCES

1. U.S. Marine Corps Weapons Drill Guide
 2. FM 25-7 Training Ranges
 3. MCRP 3-01A Rifle Marksmanship
 4. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 5. MCO 3574.2 Marksmanship Training with Individual Small Arms
 6. MCO 3591.2J Small Arms Marksmanship Competition
 7. MCO P3570.1A Safety Policies and Procedures for Firing Ammunition for Training
-

EVENT: IULC - A - 590

RFS:

Conduct small unit training

Condition: Given a unit, required external support and equipment, and a mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: By ensuring each Marine or team achieves the training standard, and to prepare unit for future combat operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the task to be trained from the platoon training schedule
2. Review the training standard to determine required resources and the most appropriate method(s) for delivering instruction.
3. Request the required resources from higher headquarters.
4. Prepare a training outline which explains how the training will be conducted.
5. Prepare the training area.
6. Assemble the student Marines.
7. Explain the training standard to the students.
8. Conduct a safety brief.
9. Conduct the instruction, in accordance with the training outline.
10. Evaluate the performance of the student Marines or teams, in accordance with the training standard.
11. Remediate student Marines or teams that do not master the training standard.
12. Submit a training after action report to higher headquarters.
13. Update individual training records.

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX J

CAREER LEVEL PROFESSIONAL MILITARY EDUCATION (PME)

Description

Career Level Professional Military Education (PME) consists of any number of courses completed through residence, seminar, and correspondence. Amphibious Warfare School (AWS) is included at this level.

Purpose

Career Level PME is intended for Captains. The purpose varies for each course and can be found in its respective Program of Instruction.

Administrative Notes

Curriculum for a particular course can be found in its respective Program of Instruction.

Prerequisites

Prerequisites are defined by each course.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX K

INFANTRY SQUAD LEADERS COURSE

Description

The Infantry Squad Leaders Course is located at Advanced Infantry Training Company (AITC), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA.

Purpose

The course is designed to train the Infantry Squad Leader in the common infantry knowledge and skills required to perform as a Section Leader /Squad Leader in a Infantry Rifle Platoon, Assault Section, Machinegun Section, Anti-armor Section, and Mortar Section/Platoon (60mm & 81mm).

Administrative Notes

This course focuses on the specifics of an 0311 Infantry Squad Leader, but is available to other Infantry MOSSs.

Prerequisites

Marines sent to this course must be a Corporal or Sergeant and currently be serving in the billet of a Infantry Squad Leader/Section Leader.

EVENT: ISLC - B - 311

RFS:

Write a warning order

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order from higher headquarters, paper, and pen.

Standard: In accordance with FMFM 6-5.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct initial estimate of the situation.
2. Determine how the mission will be organized, which attachments will be needed, and the time line. Identify implied missions will have to be accomplished if the mission is to succeed.
3. Write the situation paragraph as a brief statement of the friendly and enemy situation.
4. Write the mission, exactly as it was received from higher headquarters.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Write general instructions to include general and special organization, uniform and equipment common to all, weapons ammunition and equipment, chain of command, and the time schedule.
6. Write special instructions to subordinate leaders, special purpose teams, and key individuals.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 315

RFS:

Write a five paragraph order

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order from higher headquarters, paper, and pen.

Standard: By developing an order which supports achievement of higher headquarters' mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the mission from higher headquarters' mission, commander' intent, and specified tasks.
2. Analyze the enemy situation to determine the effect on the unit.
3. Analyze the friendly situation to determine the effect on the unit.
4. Analyze the effect of attachments and/or detachments on the unit.
5. Analyze the higher scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
6. Determine the unit scheme of maneuver.
7. Determine the unit fire support plan.
8. Task organize the unit.
9. Analyze higher administration and logistics to determine the effect on the unit.
10. Determine unit administrative and logistic requirements.
11. Analyze higher command and signal plan.
12. Determine the unit command and signal plan.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 318

RFS:

Issue an order

Condition: Given a completed 5 paragraph order and a terrain model, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with FMFM 6-5.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the unit around the terrain model.
2. Take role to ensure all members are present.
3. If issuing a mission order, receive a status report for the unit and Team Leaders on the preparatory tasks assigned to them when the warning order was issued.
4. Precede the issuance of the order with the orientation.
5. Issue the entire order before taking questions.
6. Conduct a question and answer session.
7. Conclude the issue process with a time check, and announce the next event to be accomplished.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 319

RFS:

Prepare a patrol warning order

Condition: Given a 5 paragraph order to conduct a patrol from higher headquarters, paper and pen, and assigned patrol members.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-11.3.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare brief statements on the enemy and friendly situations and capabilities.
2. Clearly state the mission of the patrol.
3. List all members of the patrol.
4. Establish the chain of command.
5. Assign positions and duties in elements and teams to all patrol members, as required.
6. Cover all necessary individual requirements in the assignment of positions and duties.
7. Follow established principles in organizing the patrol into element and teams.
8. Assign a weapon for each patrol member, to include the provision for a suppressed weapon capability.
9. List all special equipment required to accomplish the mission.
10. Designate the proper element to carry the special equipment.
11. Select a common uniform and equipment, based on weather, terrain, and mission.
12. Publish a time schedule which includes the date and time of the issuance of the patrol order; the rehearsal; the inspection schedule; and the issuance of supplies, equipment, and weapons.
13. Ensure all designated patrol members initial the patrol warning order.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. Issue specific instructions to key individuals, to include duties and responsibilities.
15. Issue warning order within 30 minutes of receiving a warning order from supported unit.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 320

RFS:

Issue a patrol order

Condition: Given a completed patrol order and a terrain model, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: In accordance with MCWP 3-11.3.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure all patrol members are present prior to issuing the order.
2. Conduct an orientation briefing for all members prior to issuing the patrol order.
3. Use a terrain model, map sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan.
4. Use as a map supplement, if feasible, an aerial photographic which has the scale determined and has a grid superimposed.
5. Provide a weather forecast for the patrol period.
6. Describe the terrain over which the patrol is to operate.
7. Identify the size, type, capabilities, suspected locations, and recent activities of enemy units known or suspected to be in the area of operations.
8. Provide planned routes of other patrols operating in the immediate area.
9. Brief the fire support plan, which includes all available fire support and the location of prearranged targets.
10. Identify any attachments to the patrol.
11. Specify the patrol mission.
12. Provide a complete concept of the patrol's operation.
13. Specify the task of each element and all key individuals.
14. Include all coordinating instructions to include: time of departure and return, primary and alternate routes, organization for movement, procedures for crossing danger areas while en route, actions on enemy contact, actions at rallying points, actions at the objective area, actions at obstacles, emergency extractions, and rules of engagement.
15. Brief the patrol in the event of enemy prisoner of war capture, injury to personnel, and inadvertent compromise.
16. Brief plan for insertion in detail.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

17. Specify times and places of rehearsals and inspections.
18. Brief those administrative and logistics items, requiring highlighting, not covered in the warning order or not previously mentioned.
19. Review all signals to be used within the patrol.
20. Brief communications as a separate annex to the patrol order.
21. Identify time and frequency of required reports to higher command element.
22. Cover patrol and unit challenge and passwords.
23. Specify the locations of the patrol leader, assistant patrol leader, and element leaders during all stages of the patrol.
24. Ensure all personnel understand the order and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 324

RFS:

Prepare a squad fire plan sketch

Condition: Given an operations order, a squad sector of fire, and a squad fighting position organized on the ground, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By depicting each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Illustrate the squad's fighting position.
2. Illustrate the Squad Leader's fighting position.
3. Illustrate the squad's sector of fire.
4. Illustrate the fire team's fighting positions.
5. Illustrate the fire team's sectors of fire.
6. Illustrate principle direction of fire for the squad automatic weapons.
7. Illustrate dead space.
8. Illustrate M203 grenade launcher targets.
9. Illustrate mines, booby traps, and obstacles.
10. Illustrate terrain.
11. Annotate magnetic north.
12. Annotate unit designation.
13. Annotate time and date of preparation.
14. Illustrate crew-served weapon positions within the squad's fighting position.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 379

RFS:

Transmit a Position Report (PosRep)

Condition: Given a map and a radio, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By reporting location.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine six or eight-digit grid of location.
2. Transmit location.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 388

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the grid method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine target description.
2. Determine/Estimate the location of the target, using grid coordinates.
3. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
4. Determine/Estimate the distance to the target from the observer's position in meters.
5. Establish an observer to target factor.
6. Determine the method of engagement.
7. Determine the method of fire and control.
8. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the fire direction center.
9. Transmit a target location using an eight-digit grid coordinate to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
10. Transmit a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
11. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
12. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
13. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

14. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
15. Observe the impact of the round.
16. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
17. Using the height of burst (HOB) spotting, determine the height of burst correction in meters.
18. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
19. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor (The mil relation formula or WERM rule), determine the deviation correction in meters.
20. Transmit the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils grid.
21. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
22. Repeat performance steps 13 through 21 until the target is within the effective casualty radius/HOB of the round.
23. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
24. Receive, "Rounds complete, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Transmit, "Rounds complete, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Determine the effect on target.
27. Determine refinement corrections.
28. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 389 RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the polar method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the grid coordinates of your location.
2. Transmit your location coded to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
3. Determine target description.
4. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
5. Determine the vertical interval between the observer and the target in meters.
6. Establish an observer to target factor.
7. Determine the method of engagement.
8. Determine the method of fire and control.
9. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
10. Transmit a target location using the direction, distance, and vertical shift to the target from the observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
11. Transmit a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
12. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
13. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
14. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
15. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
16. Observe the impact of the round.
17. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
18. Using the height of burst spotting, determine the height of burst correction in meters.
19. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
20. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor, determine the deviation correction in meters.
21. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
22. Repeat performance steps 14 through 21 until the target is within the effective casualty radius of the round.
23. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
24. Receive "Rounds complete" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Transmit "Rounds complete" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Determine the effect on target.
27. Determine refinement corrections.
28. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 390

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the shift from a known point method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the grid coordinates of your location.
2. Transmit your location coded to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
3. Determine target description.
4. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
5. Determine/Estimate the distance to the target from the observer's position in meters.
6. Determine the vertical interval between the observer and the target in meters.
7. Establish an observer to target factor.
8. Determine the method of engagement.
9. Determine the method of fire and control.
10. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the Fire Direction Center (FDC). The warning order consists of FDC call sign, observer ID, and the target shifted from. (FDC this is FO, shift from AB-1001, over.)
11. Send the second transmission. It consists of observer to target (OT) direction, and corrections from a known target. (Direction 2850, left/right____, add/drop____, up/down____, over.)
12. Send the third transmission. It consists of a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC). (Dismounted infantry and APCs in the open, HE/RP mix, fire when ready, over.)
13. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
14. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
16. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
17. Observe the impact of the round.
18. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
19. Using the height of burst spotting, determine the height of burst (HOB) correction in meters.
20. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
21. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor, determine the deviation correction in meters.
22. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
23. Repeat performance steps 15 through 22 until the target is within the effective casualty radius/HOB of the round.
24. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Receive "Rounds complete" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Transmit "Rounds complete" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
27. Determine the effect on target.
28. Determine refinement corrections.
29. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 391 RFS:

Conduct an immediate suppression mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target that needs to be immediately suppressed.

Standard: Correctly transmitting a Call For Fire (CFF) within 60 seconds of target identification and ensuring initial target location is within 300 meters of the actual target location.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Locate the target.
2. Prepare and transmit the Call For Fire (CFF).
3. If required, transmit subsequent corrections within 15 seconds of H round impact. (Make bold subsequent corrections to get rounds immediately on target.)
4. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 421

RFS:

Assemble a radio set

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete disassembled radio.

Standard: Which allows clear communication with a distant station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Visually inspect battery box for dirt and damage. If battery has been previously used, note battery life condition number.
2. Stand RT on front panel guards; place battery box on RT. Secure using latches.
3. Check battery life condition (written on battery if battery is new)
4. Write down number (for later entry into radio).
5. Place battery box cover, and secure using latches.
6. Return radio to upright position.
7. If used battery was installed, enter the battery life condition into the radio by performing the following:
 - a. Set FCTN to LD.
 - b. Press BATT; then CLR.
 - c. Enter number recorded on side of battery.
 - d. Press STO.
 - e. Set FCTN to SQ ON.
8. Screw whip into antenna base; hand tighten only.
9. Carefully mate antenna base with RT ANT connector; hand tighten only
10. Position antenna, as needed, by bending goose neck.
11. Secure handset connector to AUD/DATA connector. Then push handset connector onto AUD/DATA connector and twist right (clockwise) to lock in place.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 422

RFS:

Maintain radio sets

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete radio.

Standard: Which allows clear communication with a distant station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Make sure antennas are clean.
2. Check antenna elements for damage.
3. If a vehicular antenna base, make sure the braided strap (ground strap) is securely installed to the vehicle and antenna base.
4. Check cables, where visible, for cuts, cracks, and breaks.
5. Make sure cable connectors are secure.
6. Make sure cable connectors are securely attached to cables.
7. Make sure each control moves smoothly while you operate your radio.
8. Make sure pull-and-turn switches cannot move to a guarded position without first being pulled out.
9. Make sure all knobs are secure on their shafts.
10. Check for loose nuts, bolts, and screws.
11. Check for corrosion, rust, and deterioration of all metal parts.
12. If the radio gives a strange, unexplained message which does not automatically clear:

a. Set FCTN to STBY. Then return to SQ ON. This action may clear the problem.

b. If it does not, and the situation permits, set FCTN to Z-FH and wait for GOOD. Then turn to OFF and wait 10 seconds. Turn back to Z-F and again wait for GOOD.

c. Run self-test. If GOOD results, reload radio and re-enter net. If problem still exists, contact unit maintenance.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 424

RFS:

Communicate using a AN/PRC-119 field radio in frequency hopping mode

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PRC-119 field radio, a loaded ECCM fill device, and a distant station, while wearing a fighting load.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: By loading a frequency hopping fill into the radio and conducting a radio check with the distant station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the field radio for operation.
2. Turn on the field radio.
3. Make sure that the ECCM fill device is loaded.
4. Connect ECCM fill device to RT connector AUD/FILL using fill cable.
5. Set RT FCTN to LD.
6. Set RT MODE to FH.
7. Set CHAN to position where data is to be loaded (NCS will direct you).
8. Set ECCM fill device select switch to position containing the desired data.
9. Set ECCM fill device function switch to ON.
10. Press LOAD. Display will cycle as shown, and a beep is heard.
11. Press STO. Display will blink and show STOL followed by the first digit of the data.
12. Change ECCM fill device select switch to position containing data desired next.
13. Press LOAD. Display will cycle as shown, and a beep is heard.
14. Press STO. Then press the number button of the channel in which the data is to be stored. Display will blink and show STO followed by the channel number in which the data was stored.
15. Set ECCM fill device function switch to OFF.
16. Disconnect ECCM fill device.
17. Set RT switches, as needed, for normal operation.
18. Conduct a radio check with distant station in frequency hopping mode to verify proper operation of the radio.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-6 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radios Pocket Guide
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 425

RFS:

Waterproof communication gear

Condition: Given a radio, tape, water-proof bag, and scissors.

Standard: To enable radio operations regardless of weather conditions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place waterproofing tape over all sharp edges that may punch holes in the waterproof cover on the radio.
2. Take 4 units of desiccant and tape them to the sides of the radio.
3. Cut the corners off of the sealed end of the waterproof bag.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Place radio inside of waterproof bag. Cut off corners should match where the antenna and handset are placed on the radio.
5. Attach antenna and hand set to radio. Cut four 12 inch strips of waterproof tape. Where the antenna and handset pass through the holes in the waterproof bag, bunch the excess material around the base of the connectors and use the 12 inch strips of tape to seal them.
6. Cut a flap in the top of the waterproof bag to allow access to the controls on the face of the radio. Cover the edges of the flap with waterproof tape (1 inch wide strips). Cover the top of the flap's edge with waterproof tape so it will make contact with the bottom edges of the waterproof material.
7. Pull the waterproof bag straight down and seal the bottom with tape. Use the excess end of the waterproof bag as a flap. This will allow access to the radio battery.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM
-

EVENT: ISLC - B - 439

RFS:

Transmit a Casualty Report (CasRep)

Condition: Given a map, a casualty, and a radio, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By including each of the required items.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Transmit casualty's name, initials, and last 4 digits of social security number.
2. Transmit date and time of incident.
3. Transmit 6 digit grid location of casualty.
4. Transmit type of wound.
5. Transmit portion of body effected.
6. Transmit seriousness of the wound.
7. Transmit requirement for MEDEVAC, if appropriate.
8. Transmit the activity in which the casualty was engaged.
9. Transmit the cause of the wound.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX L

ADVANCED MACHINE GUN LEADERS COURSE

Description

The Advanced Machine Gun Leaders Course is in development and will be located at Advanced Infantry Training Company (AITC), School Of Infantry (SOI), Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA.

Purpose

The course is designed to train Marine Machine gunners in knowledge and skills required to perform as a Machinegun Squad Leader/Section Leader in a Infantry Machinegun Section/Weapons Platoon/Weapons Company.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

Marine sent to this course must be a 0331 and currently hold the rank of Sergeant.

EVENT: AMGC - B - 073

RFS:

Select a machinegun firing position

Condition: Given a machinegun squad mission order.

Standard: By satisfying higher headquarters' mission requirements in accordance with the mission order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the team's/squad's mission from higher headquarter's mission, commander's intent, and team/squad tasks.
2. Analyze the assigned sector of fire, ensuring effective coverage of the sector of fire.
3. Analyze the position for good fields of fire.
4. Analyze the effectiveness of available cover and concealment.
5. Ensure the firing position facilitates the exercise of fire control
6. Ensure machineguns are located and employed so that they can mutually support one another.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

7. Designate the exact firing (primary) position on the ground prior to entrenching.
8. Designate an alternate firing position, which can continue to accomplish the original mission.
9. Designate a supplementary firing position.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

EVENT: AMGC - B - 079

RFS:

Lay a machinegun utilizing a M-2 compass

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete machinegun, firing tables, M2 compass, and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By engaging targets accurately without adjusting onto the target and revealing the position of the gun.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure the compass has been declinated prior to use.
2. Locate the gun position and target on a map and draw a line between the 2 points.
3. Orient the map to the terrain and place the line of sight of the compass along the gun-target line drawn on the map.
4. The Squad Leader announces the magnetic azimuth indicated by the compass index to the guns as the direction of lay.
5. In order to measure the angle of site hold the opened compass in a vertical plane with the rear sight toward the body and the angle of sight level lever to the right.
6. Open the cover to an angle of 45 degrees to the face of the compass
7. Fold the rear sight holder out parallel to the face of the compass with the rear sight perpendicular to the holder.
8. Look through the rear sight and raise or lower the instrument until the center line of the window bisects the opening in the rear sight and the object sighted; then level the tubular level reflected in the mirror, by means of the lever.
9. Read the angle of sight opposite the index. Care must be exercised to maintain the compass in a vertical plane to obtain accurate readings
10. To measure the angle of elevation open the cover and rear sight holder so they are parallel with the face of the compass.
11. Place the left side of the opened compass on the leveling plates of the breech ring or on a level portion of the piece which is parallel to the bore.
12. Center the bubble of the elevation level and read the angle of elevation.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

13. Once readings have been taken use these readings with the firing tables for the correct weapon system.

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 2. TM 9-1290-333-15 Compass, Magnetic, Un-mounted: M2
-

EVENT: AMGC - B - 080

RFS:

Set the elevation of a machinegun utilizing the M1A2 gunner's quadrant

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete machinegun, firing tables, M1A2 gunner's quadrant, and ammunition, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By engaging targets accurately without adjusting onto the target and revealing the position of the gun.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Ensure elevation quadrant seats on the weapon.
2. Inspect quadrant shoes.
3. Zero the micrometer by turning micrometer knob.
4. Set index at 0 mils.
5. Position quadrant on weapon pointing toward muzzle end.
6. Depress/elevate tube to center bubble in level vial.
7. Reverse direction of quadrant and bubble should center. If bubble centers the quadrant is zeroed for end to end correction. If bubble does not center, center the bubble with micrometer knob.
8. Divide micrometer reading by 2 to obtain the positive correction.
9. Put the positive correction on micrometer.
10. Point quadrant toward muzzle end of weapon and depress/elevate tube to center the bubble.
11. Reverse direction of quadrant and bubble should center.
12. Record end for end correction on the carrying case.
13. Add the end for end correction to the desired elevation and place new elevation on quadrant using both the index pointer on the elevation scale and the micrometer.
14. Point quadrant toward muzzle end of the weapon.
15. Depress/elevate the weapon until the bubble centers in the level vial.

REFERENCES

1. TM 02193C-14&P Quadrant, Fire Control Gunner's, M1A2
-

EVENT: AMGC - B - 520

RFS:

Direct the employment of medium machineguns in offensive operations

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given a medium machinegun unit and an order with a mission to conduct offensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective medium machinegun fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support for machinegun units.
2. Provide appropriate signals for commence, shift, and cease.
3. Direct positioning of machinegun units to best observe and support scheme of maneuver.
4. Provide infantry security for machinegun unit.
5. Ensure fires commence, shift, and cease on signal to support the attack.
6. Anticipate displacement requirements to ensure continuous support.
7. Direct positioning of machinegun units in preparation for counterattack.
8. Reposition machinegun units for defense.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If weapons platoon assets are attached, employment is directed by attached unit commander.
2. This includes all offensive operations to include MOUT/mechanized/fortified strong point.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
 3. FMFM 2-11 Anti-armor Operations
 4. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 5. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
 6. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

EVENT: AMGC - B - 527

RFS:

Direct the employment of medium machineguns in support of defensive operations

Condition: Given a medium machinegun unit and an order with a mission to conduct defensive operations.

Standard: To provide effective medium machinegun fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine method of support and tentative primary defensive positions.
2. Determine type of fires to be employed, target precedence, and engagement criteria.
3. Emplace machineguns to best support defense.
4. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
5. Ensure coordination is conducted with adjacent units.
6. Compile completed range cards, and ensure integration of fires, in accordance with defensive plan.
7. Supervise registration of fires.
8. Supervise delivery of fires for the defense and counterattack.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If weapons platoon assets are attached, employment is directed by attached unit commander.
2. This includes all defensive operations, to include MOUT and counter mechanized strong point.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX M

ADVANCED MORTAR LEADERS COURSE

Description

The Advanced Mortar Leaders Course is in development and will be located at School Of Infantry (SOI), Advanced Infantry Training Company, (AITC) Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA.

Purpose

The course is designed to train the Marine Mortarman in knowledge and skills required to perform as a Mortar Squad Leader/Section Leader in a Infantry Mortar Section/Weapons Platoon/Weapons Company.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

Marine sent to this course must be a 0331 and currently hold the rank of Sergeant.

EVENT: AMLC - B - 147

RFS:

Select a mortar position

Condition: Given a topographical map, compass, binoculars, a mission, and an order.

Standard: By supporting higher headquarters' mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct a reconnaissance of the area.
2. Determine if the position supports the assigned mission.
3. Analyze the tactical range situation.
4. Establish range criteria.
5. Ensure maximum target area coverage.
6. Determine survivability.
7. Analyze overhead and mask clearance.
8. Inspect surface conditions.
9. Assess communication supportability.
10. Assess ingress/egress routes.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

11. Mark individual mortar positions.

REFERENCES

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 149

RFS:

Issue fire commands for a mortar

Condition: Given a Call For Fire (CFF), while operating in the Fire Direction Center (FDC).

Standard: In accordance with the firing data without error.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Formulate the initial fire command.
2. Designate the mortars to follow.
3. Specify the type of ammunition and fuze to be used.
4. Designate the specific mortar(s) to fire.
5. Specify the method of fire and issue control measures, if desired.
6. Specify the deflection.
7. Specify the charge from the firing tables, based on the range.
8. Indicate the time setting, if required, for ammunition.
9. Specify the elevation from the firing tables, based on the range and charge setting.
10. Issue commands to "Half load" and "Fire" if applicable.
11. Issue subsequent fire commands, which will include only those elements that have changed from the previous fire command, with the exception of elevation. Elevation is always announced.
12. When mission is over announce "End of Mission."

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 151

RFS:

Declinate an M2 compass

Condition: Given an M2 compass, a surveyed point with level platform, an azimuth marker, map pen, paper, and a topographical map

Standard: To within 10 mils.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place the compass over the surveyed point and level the compass, as required.
2. Remove all magnetic attractions from the area, as required.
3. Sight in on the azimuth marker.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

4. Rotate the adjusting screw to index the azimuth.
5. Recheck the sight picture and verify the known azimuth.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 153

RFS:

Compute firing data manually

Condition: Given a plotting board, map pen, topographical map, observer's call for fire, and firing tables.

Standard: By computing firing data and issuing a fire command within two minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare the plotting board.
2. Receive the Call For Fire (CFF).
3. Transfer Call For Fire (CFF) data to the plotting board.
4. Determine chart data.
5. Convert range to charge and elevation.
6. Record information on DA Form 2399 (Computers record).
7. Apply appropriate corrections for special missions.
8. Calculate observer to target direction.
9. Calculate gun target line.
10. Subtract the smaller angle from the larger. (OT=1450, GTL=0800 WRITTEN OUT AS 1450 - 0800 = Angle T=650 mils)
11. Alert FO if the angle T is greater than 500 mils.
12. Compute data for referring the sights and realigning the aiming posts, as required.
13. Compute data for subsequent corrections.
14. Compute data for traversing and searching missions.

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 154

RFS:

Respond to an untrained observer

Condition: Given a map, a compass, and an untrained forward observer.

Standard: By talking the observer through a call for fire sequence in order to issue fire commands.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Identify observer as friendly.
2. Assist the observer in finding his location.
3. Assist the observer in target location using the shift, grid, or polar method or terrain association.
4. Ask the observer for the target description.
5. Ask the observer for the direction to the target.
6. Assist the observer in adjusting impact of rounds using the finger method of adjusting.
7. Adjust fire.
8. Request Fire For Effect (FFE).
9. End mission.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 388

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the grid method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine target description.
2. Determine/Estimate the location of the target, using grid coordinates.
3. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
4. Determine/Estimate the distance to the target from the observer's position in meters.
5. Establish an observer to target factor.
6. Determine the method of engagement.
7. Determine the method of fire and control.
8. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the fire direction center.
9. Transmit a target location using an eight-digit grid coordinate to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
10. Transmit a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
11. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
12. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
13. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
14. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Observe the impact of the round.
16. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
17. Using the height of burst (HOB) spotting, determine the height of burst correction in meters.
18. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
19. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor (The mil relation formula or WERM rule), determine the deviation correction in meters.
20. Transmit the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils grid.
21. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
22. Repeat performance steps 13 through 21 until the target is within the effective casualty radius/HOB of the round.
23. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
24. Receive, "Rounds complete, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Transmit, "Rounds complete, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Determine the effect on target.
27. Determine refinement corrections.
28. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller

EVENT: AMLC - B - 389 RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the polar method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the grid coordinates of your location.
2. Transmit your location coded to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
3. Determine target description.
4. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
5. Determine the vertical interval between the observer and the target in meters.
6. Establish an observer to target factor.
7. Determine the method of engagement.
8. Determine the method of fire and control.
9. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
10. Transmit a target location using the direction, distance, and vertical shift to the target from the observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
11. Transmit a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
12. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
13. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
14. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
15. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
16. Observe the impact of the round.
17. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
18. Using the height of burst spotting, determine the height of burst correction in meters.
19. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
20. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor, determine the deviation correction in meters.
21. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
22. Repeat performance steps 14 through 21 until the target is within the effective casualty radius of the round.
23. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
24. Receive "Rounds complete" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Transmit "Rounds complete" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Determine the effect on target.
27. Determine refinement corrections.
28. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 390

RFS:

Call for indirect fire using the shift from a known point method

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, target, and binoculars.

Standard: By achieving effective fire on target within 3 adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the grid coordinates of your location.
2. Transmit your location coded to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
3. Determine target description.
4. Determine the direction to the target from the observer's position in mils.
5. Determine/Estimate the distance to the target from the observer's position in meters.
6. Determine the vertical interval between the observer and the target in meters.
7. Establish an observer to target factor.
8. Determine the method of engagement.
9. Determine the method of fire and control.
10. Initiate a Call For Fire (CFF) by transmitting observer identification and warning order to the Fire Direction Center (FDC). The warning order consists of FDC call sign, observer ID, and the target shifted from. (FDC this is FO, shift from AB-1001, over.)
11. Send the second transmission. It consists of observer to target (OT) direction, and corrections from a known target. (Direction 2850, left/right____, add/drop____, up/down____, over.)
12. Send the third transmission. It consists of a target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control to the Fire Direction Center (FDC). (Dismounted infantry and APCs in the open, HE/RP mix, fire when ready, over.)
13. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
14. Transmit the message to observer to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

15. Receive "Shot, over" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
16. Transmit "Shot, out" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
17. Observe the impact of the round.
18. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
19. Using the height of burst spotting, determine the height of burst (HOB) correction in meters.
20. Using the range spotting, determine the range correction in meters using successive or hasty bracketing.
21. Using the deviation spotting and the OT factor, determine the deviation correction in meters.
22. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
23. Repeat performance steps 15 through 22 until the target is within the effective casualty radius/HOB of the round.
24. Transmit a request to Fire For Effect (FFE) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
25. Receive "Rounds complete" from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
26. Transmit "Rounds complete" to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
27. Determine the effect on target.
28. Determine refinement corrections.
29. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M224	60mm lightweight mortar	
	<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
	B643	CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935	12 each

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 391

RFS:

Conduct an immediate suppression mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target that needs to be immediately suppressed.

Standard: Correctly transmitting a Call For Fire (CFF) within 60 seconds of target identification and ensuring initial target location is within 300 meters of the actual target location.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Locate the target.
2. Prepare and transmit the Call For Fire (CFF).
3. If required, transmit subsequent corrections within 15 seconds of H round impact. (Make bold subsequent corrections to get rounds immediately on target.)
4. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 392

RFS:

Conduct an immediate smoke mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: Totally obscuring the target, and ensuring the initial target location is within 300 meters of the actual target location and the Call For Fire (CFF) is transmitted within 30 seconds of target location.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the placement point of immediate smoke.
2. Transmit the complete Call For Fire (CFF) in the proper sequence.
3. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections, as required.
4. Spot initial rounds and determine and transmit deviation and range corrections to provide effective coverage. Minimum deviation and range corrections are 50 and 100 meters, respectively.
5. Determine height of burst corrections, as necessary.
6. End mission when desired results are achieved.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 393

RFS:

Conduct a quick smoke mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: Successfully denying enemy observation and ensuring initial target location is within 200 meters of the actual target location. The Call For Fire (CFF) must be transmitted within 90 seconds of target identification, and subsequent corrects made within 15 seconds of the previous burst.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the size of the area to be obscured or screened.
2. Determine the wind direction in relation to the maneuver-target line.
3. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections, as required.
4. Spot initial rounds and determine and transmit deviation and range corrections to provide effective coverage. Minimum deviation and range corrections are 50 and 100 meters, respectively.
5. Determine height-of-burst corrections, as necessary.
6. End mission when desired results are achieved.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 394

RFS:

Conduct a Fire For Effect (FFE) mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: Locating a target within +/-50 meters of the actual location and transmitting the Call For Fire (CFF) within 2 minutes of target identification.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the target location.
2. Prepare and transmit the Call For Fire (CFF).
3. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: AMLC - B - 395

RFS:

Conduct an illumination mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: Ensuring the illumination Call For Fire (CFF) is transmitted within 2 minutes and the target is adequately illuminated.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Locate the target.
2. Transmit the complete illumination Call For Fire (CFF), in proper sequence.
3. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections.
4. Complete the mission.
5. Transmit refinement correction; record as target, if required; an end of mission request; and battle damage assessment.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 396

RFS:

Adjust mortar illumination

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: By ensuring the illumination is within 200 meters of the adjusting point and strikes the deck just as it stops burning.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Call for indirect fire, giving "illumination" as the type of projectile, and the appropriate range or lateral spread as the distribution.
2. Observe the impact of the round.
3. Spot the round for height of burst, range, and deviation from the target.
4. Determine the height of burst correction to the nearest 50 meters.
5. Determine the range correction to within 200 meters.
6. Determine the deviation correction to within 200 meters.
7. Transmit a correction for deviation, range, and height of burst.
8. Repeat performance steps 2 through 7 until the round is within 200 meters of the adjusting point and strikes the deck just as it stops burning.
9. Transmit a request to "Mark illumination" when target is illuminate
10. Determine the refinement corrections.
11. Transmit an end of mission request.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 397 RFS:

Conduct a coordinated illumination mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, a target, and suspected enemy activity detected during the hours of darkness.

Standard: Illumination call for fire is transmitted within 60 seconds of detecting suspected enemy activity; illumination is adjusted to illuminate the suspected target; the suspected target is positively identified as enemy; HE call for fire is transmitted within 60 seconds of identifying the target as enemy; initial HE round is within 200 meters of the actual target; and, the HE FFE is within +/- 50 meters of the actual target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Transmit the complete illumination Call For Fire (CFF), in proper sequence.
2. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections to include HOB, if required.
3. Once target is illuminated, determine target location.
4. Transmit coordinated illumination Call For Fire (CFF), in proper sequence.
5. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections within 15 seconds of High Explosive (HE) round impact.
6. Request Fire For Effect (FFE).
7. Transmit refinement data (if any), Record as Target (if desired), End of Mission (required), and surveillance (required).

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 398 RFS:

Conduct a mission on a moving target

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: Per the references, successfully engaging a moving target using the special techniques required for the situation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Identify a moving target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

2. Select an Intercept Point (IP) along the target's likely route of march as the target location.
3. Prepare a Call For Fire (CFF).
4. State "The target is moving" in the target description portion of the call for fire.
5. State "At my command" in the "Method of Fire" portion of the call for fire.
6. Receive a message to observer from the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
7. Based on the time of flight provided by the Fire Direct Center and the rate of speed of the target and time of flight, determine a trigger point on the ground.
8. Conduct the mission.
9. Transmit refinement data (if any), Record as Target (if desired), End of Mission (required), and surveillance (required).

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area with moving targets (movement may be simulated)

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 399

RFS:

Conduct 2 fire missions simultaneously

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: Transmitting both Calls For Fire (CFF) within 2 minutes of identification of the last target. Initial target locations must be within 200 meters of the actual location of the target. Fire For Effect (FFE) must be within 50 meters of each target, with no more than 3 subsequent rounds used in adjustment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine location of targets.
2. Prepare and transmit both Calls For Fire (CFFs), in the proper sequence.
3. Precede corrections with, "target number."
4. Complete missions using normal procedures.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: AMLC - B - 400

RFS:

Conduct a danger close fire mission

Condition: Given a topographic map, compass, protractor, and a target.

Standard: Per the references, using creeping fire procedures properly.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Determine the target location.
2. Prepare and submit the Call For Fire (CFF).
3. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections within 15 seconds of burst.
4. Adjust fires using creeping fire techniques.
5. Request Fire For Effect (FFE).
6. Transmit refinement data (if any), Record as Target, End of Mission (required), and surveillance (required).

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Supporting indirect fire
2. Impact area

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-30 Observed Fire Procedures
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 403

RFS:

Adjust mortar fire without a Fire Direction Center (FDC)

Condition: Given a grid location of a mortar section, principal direction of lay, map, compass, and protractor.

Standard: By issuing corrections within 30 seconds and achieving Fire For Effect (FFE) on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Engage target when the FO is within 100 meters of the gun target line.
2. Apply mil relation formula. Impact to target error, in mils, multiplied by the value of 1 per 1000 meters of range.
3. Apply the Left Add, Right Subtract (LARS) rule.
4. Transmit correction to the gun.
5. Adjust fire by bracketing or creeping methods.

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M224 60mm lightweight mortar

DODIC

B643 CTG, 60mm, HE, W/FZ PD M935

Quantity

12 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Weapon: M252	81mm medium extended range mortar	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
C869	CTG, 81mm, HE W/FZ PD	12 each

REFERENCES

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 404 RFS:

Develop a quick fire support plan

Condition: Given a tactical situation where time limits preclude formal fire planning, communications with the Fire Direction Center (FDC) and Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC), the commander's guidance, DA Form 5368-R (Quick Fire Plan), priority of fires, a minimum of 5 targets, knowledge of available fire support assets, order and timing of target engagement, duration of fires, references, H-hour, and a pencil.

Standard: Per the references and within 20 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Obtain the commander's guidance.
2. Complete DA Form 5368-R.
3. Issue situation report and warning order to the appropriate Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) and firing units.
4. Collect information on the availability and status of mortars, Field Artillery (FA), Naval Gunfire (NGF), and Close Air Support (CAS) to support the mission.
5. Select targets.
6. Obtain the commander's approval of the targets.
7. Complete and transmit the target list portion of DA Form 5368-R.
8. Schedule targets on DA Form 5368-R, per commander's guidance.
9. Transmit the schedules to the firing units.
10. Brief the observers.
11. Report to the commander when the firing units are ready.
12. Amend the plan, as necessary, based on the situation and the commander's desires.

REFERENCES

1. FM 6-20-40 Fire Support For Brigade Operations (Heavy)
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 423 RFS:

Communicate using a AN/PRC-119 field radio in single channel mode

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PRC-119 field radio and a distant site, while wearing a fighting load.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Standard: By transmitting a properly formatted message.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Place battery in battery box, and mate connectors.
2. Close battery box cover, and secure using latches.
3. Screw the whip antenna into the antenna base, and hand tighten.
4. Mate the antenna base with the RT ANT connector and hand tighten.
5. Connect the handset connector to the AUD/DATA connector, by ensuring the keys of the handset connector and the AUD/DATA connector are aligned. Then push the handset connector onto the AUD/DATA connector and twist clockwise to lock into place.
6. Obtain an authorized operating frequency.
7. Set the Function switch to LD.
8. Set the Mode switch to SC.
9. Set the COMSEC switch to PT.
10. Set CHAN switch to MAN, CUE, or desired channel where frequency is to be stored.
11. Press the FREQ button on the keyboard.
12. Press the CLR button on the keyboard.
13. Enter the numbers of the new frequency, using the keyboard buttons
14. Press the STO button on the keyboard.
15. Repeat steps 1 through 8 for additional frequencies that are required.
16. Set FCTN switch SQ ON for normal operating procedures.
17. Adjust the VOL control to set the loudness of the received signal.
18. Transmit a properly formatted message.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator's manual, SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM
-

EVENT: AMLC - B - 424

RFS:

Communicate using a AN/PRC-119 field radio in frequency hopping mode

Condition: Given an SL-3 complete AN/PRC-119 field radio, a loaded ECCM fill device, and a distant station, while wearing a fighting load.

Standard: By loading a frequency hopping fill into the radio and conducting a radio check with the distant station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Assemble the field radio for operation.
2. Turn on the field radio.
3. Make sure that the ECCM fill device is loaded.
4. Connect ECCM fill device to RT connector AUD/FILL using fill cable.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

5. Set RT FCTN to LD.
6. Set RT MODE to FH.
7. Set CHAN to position where data is to be loaded (NCS will direct you).
8. Set ECCM fill device select switch to position containing the desired data.
9. Set ECCM fill device function switch to ON.
10. Press LOAD. Display will cycle as shown, and a beep is heard.
11. Press STO. Display will blink and show STOL followed by the first digit of the data.
12. Change ECCM fill device select switch to position containing data desired next.
13. Press LOAD. Display will cycle as shown, and a beep is heard.
14. Press STO. Then press the number button of the channel in which the data is to be stored. Display will blink and show STO followed by the channel number in which the data was stored.
15. Set ECCM fill device function switch to OFF.
16. Disconnect ECCM fill device.
17. Set RT switches, as needed, for normal operation.
18. Conduct a radio check with distant station in frequency hopping mode to verify proper operation of the radio.

REFERENCES

1. TM 11-5820-890-10-6 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radios Pocket Guide
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX N

ADVANCED ANTI-ARMOR LEADERS COURSE

Description

The Advanced Anti-armor Leaders Course is in development and will be located at School Of Infantry (SOI), Advanced Infantry Training Company, (AITC) Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA.

Purpose

The course is designed to train the Marine Assault Man/Anti-armor Man in knowledge and skills required to perform as a Squad Leader/Section Leader in a Infantry Assault/Anti-armor Section/Weapons Platoon/Weapons Company.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

Marines sent to this course must be a 0351 or 0352 and currently hold the rank of Sergeant.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX O

SCOUT SNIPER ADVANCED COURSE

Description

The Scout Sniper Advanced Course is in development and will be located at Weapons Training Battalion, Quantico, VA.

Purpose

The course is designed to train 8541 Marines in the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Scout Sniper Platoon Sergeant and a Chief Scout Sniper in a Scout Sniper Platoon of an Infantry Battalion.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

The Marine will have completed the Scout Sniper Basic Course.

EVENT: SSAC - B - 236

RFS:

Qualify with the M40A1 sniper rifle at known distances

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, observer, 35 rounds of ammunition, M49 spotting scope, and targets.

Standard: To engage 35 designated targets at various known ranges with a 80 percent accuracy (28 of 35 on target).

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume the firing position.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Engage a stationary target at 300 yards with 5 rounds to confirm zero.
5. Engage 3 stationary targets at 300, 500, 600, 700, and 800 yards and 5 stationary targets at 900 and 1,000 yards at the sustained rate of fire.
6. Determine method of engagement.
7. Engage moving target based on observer's commands.
8. Engage targets of limited exposure.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

9. Engage multiple targets.
10. Assess the situation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The sustained rate of fire for the M40A1 is 1 round per minute.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range (minimum of 1000 meters) with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	70 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 237 RFS:

Qualify with the M40A1 sniper rifle at unknown distances

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, observer, 10 rounds of ammunition, M49 spotting scope, binoculars, and target.

Standard: To engage 10 designated targets at various ranges with 80 percent accuracy (8 of 10 targets hit).

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume the firing position.
3. Prepare a range card.
4. Prepare a field sketch.
5. Estimate range to all targets.
6. Prepare for firing.
7. Engage 10 stationary targets at various ranges with 2 rounds per target.
8. Assess the situation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Live fire range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	20 each

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 238

RFS:

Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M40A1 sniper rifle

Condition: Given an M40A1 sniper rifle, observer, 10 rounds of ammunition, M49 spotting scope, targets and artificial illumination, during periods of low light and darkness.

Standard: To engage targets in low light without illumination and in darkness with illumination, while compensating for the effects of weather to achieve point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Acquire night vision.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Detect the target.
5. Present the rifle to the target while assuming the firing position.
6. Engage target based on observer's commands.
7. Assume the ready position.
8. Assess the situation.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M40A1	7.62mm Sniper Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A171	CTG, 7.62MM, BALL, MATCH, M852	20 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 247

RFS:

Engage stationary targets with the M82A1A special application scoped rifle at known distances

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle, observer, ammunition, M49 spotting scope, and stationary targets at known distances out to the maximum effective range of the rifle.

Standard: To achieve point of aim/point of impact on target.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume the firing position.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Engage target based on observer's commands.
5. Assess the situation.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The sustained rate of fire for the M82A1A is 1 round per minute.
2. The rapid rate of fire for the M82A1A is 10 rounds per minute.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon: M82A1A .50 cal Special Application Scoped Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A602 CTG, CAL .50, SRTA	10 each

REFERENCES

1. MCRP 3-01A Rifle Marksmanship
 2. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 3. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 249

RFS:

Engage targets during low light and darkness with the M82A1A special application scoped rifle

Condition: Given an M82A1A special application scoped rifle, observer, ammunition, M49 spotting scope, targets, and artificial illumination, during periods of low light and darkness.

Standard: To engage targets in low light without illumination and in darkness with illumination, while compensating for the effects of weather to achieve point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Acquire night vision.
3. Prepare for firing.
4. Detect the target.
5. Present the rifle to the target, while assuming the firing position
6. Engage target based on observer's commands.
7. Assume the ready position.
8. Assess the situation.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Known distance range with appropriate targets

WEAPON AND AMMUNITION

Weapon:	M82A1A .50 cal Special Application Scoped Rifle	
<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
A602	CTG, CAL .50, SRTA	5 each

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 299

RFS:

Perform operator maintenance for M49 spotting scope, binoculars, Unertl 10X scope, and Leupold 6X scope

Condition: Given an M49 spotting scope, binoculars, Unertl 10X scope, Leupold 6X scope, and approved cleaning equipment.

Standard: To ensure that optics function.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Inspect the optics for defects and serviceability.
2. Clean the optics.
3. Lubricate appropriate parts.
4. Demonstrate proper placement of the objective lens cap to prevent cross-threading (M49 spotting scope only).
5. Demonstrate authorized assembly/disassembly of all optical equipment

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. If spotting scope body is camouflaged with paint, there is no requirement to lubricate body of the scope.
2. The use of adhesive material, such as tape, is not authorized for use on the surface of the binoculars for masking shine. A chemical reaction will take place which will cause the rubber coating to deteriorate.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. TM 05539C-10/1 Sniper Rifle, 7.62mm, M40A1
 3. TM 09629A-10/1 Special Application Scoped Rifle, .50 CAL, M82A1A
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 326

RFS:

Prepare a field sketch

Condition: Given a mission, a military map, pen or pencil, straight

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

edge ruler, M49 spotting scope, binoculars, an objective, and an final firing point.

Standard: To sketch all pertinent information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Identify terrain features in objective area.
2. Measure any personnel or equipment in the objective area.
3. Determine scale to be used on the sketch.
4. Place a reference point on the sketch.
5. Draw features on the sketch.
6. Place marginal information on the sketch.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 331

RFS:

Describe foreign weapons and equipment

Condition: Given an assigned mission, an assigned objective, and operating from a concealed position with the proper equipment and optics.

Standard: To ensure accurate report is submitted to accomplish the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Describe foreign vehicles.
2. Describe foreign weapons and equipment.
3. Describe foreign small arms.
4. Describe foreign crew-served weapons.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. The scout-sniper must also know the NATO weapons, vehicles, and aircraft.

REFERENCES

1. Janes Book Of Armored Vehicles (Current Year)
 2. FM 100-2-3 The Soviet Army
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 356

RFS:

Operate in support of actions in a built up area

Condition: Given an operations order for a mission in a built-up area, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position the scout sniper team in the built-up area, where it can best support the mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's concept of operations.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 375

RFS:

Navigate using aerial photographs

Condition: Given an operation order from higher authority, an area of operation, an aerial photo of the area, a 1:50,000 scale military map, compass, protractor, and a metric ruler.

Standard: To navigate utilizing aerial photograph to accomplish higher headquarters' mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Orient aerial photo.
2. Determine the six-digit grid coordinate of the objective.
3. Select routes to and from the objective area.
4. Determine checkpoints.
5. Determine azimuths between checkpoints.
6. Determine the distance between checkpoints.
7. Navigate to and from the objective area.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. Photo of maneuver / training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 376

RFS:

Navigate using relief sketch

Condition: Given a sketch of a military map, a lensatic compass, a starting point, and an objective.

Standard: To navigate to a given objective.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Prepare a relief sketch from a military map.
2. Identify objective on relief sketch.
3. Identify landmarks and limiting features (streams, structures, distinct terrain features).
4. Identify north.
5. Identify sun rise location or sun set location.
6. Identify areas to avoid, such as potential enemy locations.
7. Navigate from starting point to objective.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. Maneuver/Training area

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 408

RFS:

Adjust naval gunfire

Condition: Given binoculars, radio, call signs/frequencies, map, compass, coordinate scale, a Fire Direction Center (FDC), and a direct support ship prepared to fire in response to the Call For Fire (CFF).

Standard: To achieve the desired effect on target within 6 rounds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Locate target.
2. Determine magnetic direction to target.
3. Prepare and transmit Call For Fire (CFF).
4. Adjust rounds onto target.
5. Assess target damage.
6. Terminate mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. This task will be trained on TSFO.

EXTERNAL SUPPORT

1. TSFO - Trainer Support Forward Observer

REFERENCES

1. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: SSAC - B - 432

RFS:

Operate satellite communication equipment

Condition: Given a satellite communication set, all accessories, frequencies, and call signs.

Standard: To assemble the radio set and conduct a communication check.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Install the battery.
2. Attach handset.
3. Attach antenna.
4. Select manual frequency.
5. Set in operating mode.
6. Turn on power.
7. Adjust volume.
8. Troubleshoot problems, if required.

REFERENCES

1. TM 5895-10-1 Operator's Manual, Radio Set AN/PSC-3
 2. TM 5895-34-12 Radio Set AN/PSC-3
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 483

RFS:

Conduct route reconnaissance

Condition: Given an assigned mission, a military map, compass, and standard sniper team equipment.

Standard: To control the team and direct the collection of information without compromising the team.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
2. Issue a patrol order or fragmentary order.
3. Direct actions in the objective area.
4. Satisfy information requirements.
5. Report information on route.

REFERENCES

1. FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier
 2. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
 3. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 484

RFS:

Execute surveillance of an objective

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

Condition: Given an assigned mission, an observation log, NATO report formats, an M49 spotting scope, Unertl 10-power scope, binoculars, AN/PVS-7B night vision goggles, a sketching kit, radio, and communications log.

Standard: To report information, without being compromised.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Select a Final Firing Position (FFP).
2. Establish security.
3. Employ observation techniques appropriate to the equipment on hand.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 486

RFS:

Move to and from a target location

Condition: Given the appropriate weapons, ammunition, equipment, camouflage material, and an area of operation.

Standard: To accomplish higher headquarters' mission and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Camouflage self.
2. Camouflage weapons and equipment.
3. Move to within the designated range of the target.
4. Select and occupy final firing positions.
5. Prepare range card.
6. Engage target.
7. Withdraw from objective.
8. Participate in a debrief.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 487

RFS:

Conduct a link-up

Condition: Given the necessary equipment and a mission to link-up with a stationary force.

Standard: To ensure team leader links-up with a stationary force.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Establish communications with the maneuver unit.
2. Coordinate routes, checkpoints, and link-up point with the supporte unit.
3. Coordinate link-up procedures with the supported unit.
4. Establish a no-communication plan.
5. Move to link-up point.
6. Ensure security is established at the link-up point.
7. Establish communications with the supported unit.
8. Execute the signal plan.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 488 RFS:

Select key targets in support of scout sniper mission

Condition: Provided a higher headquarters' operation order, an area of operation, a scout sniper team, required weapons, ammunition, optics, equipment, Rules Of Engagement (ROE), and a priority of targets.

Standard: To accomplish higher headquarters' mission and commander's intent by selecting only those targets for engagement that meet the established rules of engagement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Observe area.
2. Identify targets.
3. Prioritize targets.
4. Engage targets.
5. Make a report, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 489 RFS:

Plan a scout sniper team mission

Condition: Given an operations order, a tactical radio set, a communications plan, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To prepare and issue an operations order for a scout-sniper mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Study the mission.
2. Begin planning.
3. Issue a warning order.
4. Coordinate with friendly units.
5. Make reconnaissance and complete the estimate of the situation.
6. Develop a course of action.
7. Determine what type of fire support will be required.
8. Prepare a map overlay showing planned routes, fire support plan, and tactical control measures.
9. Issue a scout sniper patrol order using the 5 paragraph order form.
10. Supervise preparations and rehearsals.
11. Make final adjustments to the plan, as required.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 490

RFS:

Lead a scout sniper team mission

Condition: Given an operations order, a tactical radio set, a communications plan, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To accomplish higher headquarters' mission and commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Depart friendly lines.
2. Navigate to and from the objective.
3. Maintain communications.
4. Control team actions.
5. Conduct assigned actions in the objective area.
6. Observe, select, and engage targets.
7. Depart objective area.
8. Make reports, as appropriate.
9. Re-enter friendly lines.
10. Debrief mission.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
 2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 494

RFS:

Establish a sniper control center

Condition: Given the required communications equipment, report formats, and other necessary equipment.

Standard: To receive, process, and disseminate reports from the scout sniper teams.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Select location.
2. Establish security.
3. Set up communications assets.
4. Perform operations checks on communications equipment.
5. Setup briefing/situation boards.
6. Open communications log.
7. Open situation log.
8. Process reports.
9. Perform situation update/brief at the ORP/SCC with the supported unit commander, as required.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 496

RFS:

Conduct a debrief

Condition: Given the necessary equipment, a debriefing format, and a representative from the applicable staff section.

Standard: To relay all information during the course of the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Move to designated area for debrief.
2. Lay out and account for all team and individual equipment.
3. Discuss observation logbook.
4. Conduct debrief following debriefing format.
5. Provide changes to original overlays.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Platoon/Squad
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 623 RFS:

Operate in support of offensive actions

Condition: Given an operation order for an offensive action, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position the scout sniper team so it can best accomplish the mission of support in the area of the planned offensive action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's concept of operations.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander, as required.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as necessary.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

EVENT: SSAC - B - 624 RFS:

Operate in support of defensive actions

Condition: Given an operation order for a defensive action, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position a scout sniper team in an area of planned defensive action, where it can support, collect, and report information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's scheme of maneuver and fire support.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander, as required.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

EVENT: SSAC - B - 626

RFS:

Operate in support of a Maritime Special Purpose Force (MSPF) Operation

Condition: Given an operations order for an MSPF mission, required weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

Standard: To position the scout sniper team where it can best support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS

1. Receive the commander's concept of operations.
2. Suggest recommendations/modifications of proposed actions to the commander, as required.
3. Coordinate with appropriate agencies.
4. Execute mission.
5. Make reports, as required.
6. Debrief mission.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS

1. All possible MEU(SOC) missions supportable by scout snipers must be covered.

REFERENCES

1. FMFM 1-3B Sniping
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX P

INFANTRY OPERATIONS CHIEF COURSE

Description

The Infantry Operations Chief Course is located at School Of Infantry (SOI), Advanced Infantry Training Company, (AITC) Camp Lejeune, NC and Camp Pendleton, CA.

Purpose

The Infantry Operations Chief Course is in development and will provide the 0369 Master Sergeant and Master Gunnery Sergeant the knowledge and skills to perform as a Operations Chief, Weapons Company and Operations Chief, Operations Section, Infantry Battalion/Regiment.

Administrative Notes

None.

Prerequisites

The Marine will be a Gunnery Sergeant, Master Sergeant, or Master Gunnery Sergeant and selected to fill the billet of Operations Chief, Weapons Company or Operations Chief, Operations Section, Infantry Battalion/Regiment.

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 11

APPENDIX Q

INTERMEDIATE / TOP LEVEL PME

Description

Intermediate and Top Level Professional Military Education (PME) consists of any number of courses completed through residence, seminar, and correspondence. Marine Corps Command and Staff College (MCCSC) is an intermediate level school and Marine Corps War College (MCWAR) is a top level school.

Purpose

Intermediate Level PME is intended for Majors. Top Level School is intended for Lieutenant Colonels. The purpose varies for each course and can be found in its respective Program of Instruction.

Administrative Notes

Curriculum for a particular course can be found in its respective Program of Instruction.

Prerequisites

Prerequisites are defined by each course.
